



THE
Famous and Delectable
HISTORY
OF
Don Bellianis of Greece,
OR, THE
HONOUR
OF
CHIVALRY:

Containing
His Valiant Exploits strange and dangerous
Adventures, with his admirable love to
the Princess *FLORISBELLA*, Daughter
to the SOULDAN of *BABILON*.

Now newly written, by *Francis Kirkman*.

L O N D O N,
Printed for *Francis Kirkman*, and are to be Sold by most
Book-sellers. 1673.

To the **READER.**

READER,



Thou hast now in thy hand a History, both Ancient Famous, Pleasant, and Delightful, and in one-Word, it is equal too, if not exceeds all, or any of the Books of this Nature; that were ever Written in the *English* Tongue: It being properly called, *The Honour of Chivalry*: As indeed it is an Honour to all the other Books of this Quality, and now you have it Compleat in three Parts; without any expectation of any Alteration or Addition. I my self have been so great a Lover of Books of this Nature, that I have long since read them all; and therefore shall give thee some Account of my experience, that may be both Pleasant and Profitable to thee. As first, I tell thee be thou of what Age, or Sex soever, it is convenient for thee to read these sorts of Histories; if thou art Young, begin now, or else when thou comest to be Old and hast any leisure; and if one of these Books chanceth into thy hand, thou wilt be so pleased with it, that read them thou must, and be in danger to be laughed at by those of the Younger sort, who having already read them, and being past that Knowledge, Laugh at thy Ignorance. For I have known several grave Citizens, who having formerly minded the many matters of the World, hath not only forbore reading themselves, but forbid their Children so to do, as being a vain and Idle matter, and loss of time; yet these very men in their latter dayes, having met with a Part of this History, or that of the Famous *Parisius*, have fallen so much in love with them, that they have become conceitedly Young and Amorous, and so highly pleased that they have run through all the Books of this Nature and Quality. This is a certain Truth, therefore I say, begin to Read, and that presently, and to the end, thou mayest Read with the more Profit and Delight. I will set down some of my Observations, and give thee some Order and Method that thou mayest proceed in. First, I recommend to thee a Book called, *The Seven Wise Masters*; which is a very pleasant Collection of variety of that Witty History, and for the more Pleasure of the Young Reader, there is Pictures fitted to every particular History. This Book is of so great esteem in *Ireland*, that next to the *Horn-Book*, and Knowledge of Letters, Children are in general put to Read in this; and I know that only by this Book several have learned to Read well, so great is the pleasure that Young and Old take in Reading thereof. Next to that, I recommend an other Book called, *Fortunatus*, which is one entire Story, both Pleasant and Profitable; and also well fitted with Pictures; after thou hast read these, proceed to this Famous History of *Don Bellianis of Greece*; which I am sure will highly content thee, for I have purposely fitted the second and third Parts, with Storyes acted and done in *England* and *Ireland*. Next to this, Read the Historyes of *Parisius* and *Parismenos*. Mountelion Knight of the Oracle: And *Ornatus* and *Artesia*, these I place together, being all three written originally in *English*, by one Person, who indeed composed them very Ingeniously. After these proceed to *Valentine* and *Orson*, which is a Famous History, Of the Famous King *Pippin* of *France* and his twelve Peers; and of the Emperor of *Constantinople* his Brother and their Children, who were Renowned Knights of their times. Next read the Seven Champions of Christendome, which tells you who those Famous Champions, *St. George*, *St. David*, *St. Andrew*, and *St. Patrick* and the rest.

rest of them were, and much of their lives, Renowned Actions and Deaths. Then read the History of the Destruction of Troy, which acquaints you with the Original & nature of all the Heathen Gods, & Goddesses, as *Saturn, Jupiter, Pluto, Mars, Neptune, Ceres, Juno, Proserpine, Venus*; and the Renowned Heroes, *Hercules, Hector*, and the rest; With an Account of the Building ten years Siege and Destruction, of the ever Famous City of Troy, and by reading of this Book, you will be enabled to understand any peece of Poetry wherein all sorts of Poets so often name the old Gods and Goddesses, and their numerous off Spring. There are not many more Books of this nature Written originally *English*, therefore you may for variety sake read them also, as *Frugos*, and his three Sons; *Bevis of Southampton, Tom of Lincolne*, with the *Red Rose Knight, Dorastus and Fawnia*, and a few others.

There are more of these sorts of Histories, which I also advise you to read, as *The Mirrour of Knight hood*, in nine Parts. Many having read these are so well pleased, that they are desirous of more, and importunate to have them, but I can assure them and you, that there are no more in *English*, nor any other Language as I could ever see or hear off, although I have been curious in my search and enquiry. Besides these there are *Palmerin D' Oliva*, in three Parts. *Primalcon of Greece* in three Parts, *Palmerin of England* in three Parts. *Palmendos* in one. All these are one continued History of an Emperour of *Constantinople*. *Palmerin D' Oliva*, his Son *Primalcon* and Grandson *Palmerin of England* and others, and therefore to be read in this order I have named them. Then you may read the Famous History of *Amadis de Gaule*, which is in six Parts in *English*, a History so Famous and in its time so well accepted off, that I have seen about thirty Parts thereof in *French, Spanish, Italian, Dutch*, and other Languages; we have but six Parts in *English*, and you are beholding to me for one of them with the sixth, which I above twenty years since translated out of *French* meerly out of my love to that History, but I thereby gained the knowledge of the *French* Tongue, which I learned only by that means. All these with *The Mirrour of Knight hood, Palmenus and Amadis's*, and several others; as the four Sons of *Aymon, Arthur of Great Brittain, Arthur of Little Brittain*, and the History of *Mervine*, are translations, and are now grown so scarce that you can hardly purchase them, and yet they are not worth the Printing agen, being now out of use and esteem by an other sort of Histories, which are called *Romances*, some whereof are written originally in *English*, as namely, that Incomparable Book of its time called, *The Countess of Pembrokes Arcadia, Gods Revinge against Marther, Beutevolio and Vrania*. The Princess *Clavia, Parthenissa*, and a few others, the rest which indeed are both many in number, and exceed all but the last named *Parthenissa*, in worth and quality; are translations out of *French* and other Languages, as namely, *Astrea, Polexander, Eromena, The Banished Virgin, Corallo, Ariana, The Illustrious Bassa, Grand Cyrus, Clelia, Cassandra, Cleopatra, Pharamend*, and *Grand Scipio*, and some others, (for I pretend not to be exact in this Catalogue.) All which although they are excellent Peeces and were not long since in great esteem with the *French* and *English* Nobility and Gentry, yet they are also thrust out of use, by the present slighting and neglect of all Books in general, by the particular esteem of our late *English* Stage Plays. I could and would give you some particular Character and Account, of all these several last mentioned *Romances*, but that I have not conveniency at present, wherefore agen, recommending to you Histories in general, and this of *Don Bellianis* in Particular. I rest your Friend,

FRANCIS KIRKMAN.

THE
Famous and Delectable
HISTORY
OF
DON BELLIANIS
of Greece,
OR THE
Honour of Chivalry.

PART THE FIRST.

CHAP. I.

How Don Bellianes Emperour of Constantinople was married to the Princess Clarinda, Daughter to the King of Spain, of the birth of Don Bellianis, and how being a hunting he perished from his Father by a strange adventure, and how the Emperour went in search of his Son.

THE great City of Constantinople, whose Foundation was laid, and stately buildings erected by the Emperour Constantine, who made it the Metropolis of the Grecian Empire, had not enjoyed many Emperours before that

that Imperial Crown and Scepter was conveyed by one named Don Bellaneo, and such an Emperor he was, both for strength of body, and all other Princely Endowments as was hardly equalled by any of his Predecessors, and was excelled by none. The death of his Parents had put him into possession of his Empire when but young, and he being desirous of novelty, left the Government thereof to travel about the World, and seek out strange and hard Adventures, and in this employment he exercised himself so long, that he thereby gained a most Renown, and being thus full fraughted with the Honor of his Mighty and Heroical Achievements, he at length returned to his own City of Constantinople. He was so well and dearly beloved by his Subjects, that their joy for his return was Universally great, and that they might still enjoy the blessing of his presence, they propounded a Marriage to him, which he so well approved of, that in short time after, the King of Hungaria and the Prince of Macedon (both were Relations to the Emperor) with many other Princely Personages were sent Ambassadors to Colojn King of Spain to desire the beautiful Princess Clarinda his Daughter in Marriage with the Emperor; And so good success they had in their Embassy, that they were not only royally welcomed by the Spanish King in his City of Hispalis, but by a full and free consent of him and his Parliament, had the fair Princess delivered to them, who being conducted by them to the Emperor, was joyfully and lovingly received of him, and solemnly married to him.

By this Marriage was produced three Valiant Princes, who were thus called, Don Bellianis of Greece, Don Clarineo of Spain, and Don Lucidmore of Thessaly, Sons to the Emperor who were educated in his Court, in the Company of Don Brianse Son to the Prince of Macedon, and Don Arsileo Son to the King of Hungaria, all these Princes were bred up in the exercise of Arms, and in the knowledge of Arts, especially that of Music, in which the Prince Don Bellianis was excellent, but when this Prince arrived to the Age of twelve years, he wholly applied himself to his Sword and Lance, that he became an excellent proficient in all feats of Chivalry,

and

as Jagen, rectm.
Bellianis in Particular. I rest

FRANCIS KIRK

and he had not practised Arms above two years, before he had occasion to make use of them in an Adventure that then befel him: For one day attending his Father and Mother and being accompanied by the Princes Arsileo, and Don Brianse his Cousins, with many other Knights and Ladies, they rode some Miles from the City on hunting, but their intended sport was spoiled, by the arrival of a furious Lynx and an angry Bear. The Lynx run straight to Don Bellianis, who drawing his Sword defended himself but not so well but that the Lynx severely wounded him, but in the end was vanquished by the Prince, who weary as he was, looked after the Bear, who he saw had not only overthrow his Cousin the Prince Arsileo, but did then drag him over the adjacent Mountains. Our Courageous Prince was so concerned in this spectacle that notwithstanding his Mothers cryes, his own Wounds, and the persuasions of all he pursued the bear, not only over the Mountains but through a most dismal Cave, where for some time he lost the sight of the Bear and his Cousin, and thereupon being possessed with a deep Melancholly, he sat him down, but long had he not rested, before he again saw both the Bear and his Cousin; the Bear did then leave his Cousin to assault him, but he being sensible of the Devilish fury of that monstrous Creature, let him pass by and saw him enter into an adjoining Cave. Although the Prince was joyful at the sight of his Cousin, yet he could not be persuaded from entering into the Cave to see what became of the Bear, and therefore being accompanied by his Cousin Arsileo, he entered the same but although he with much difficulty entered, his Cousin was in spite of all his strength violently cast out, and our Valiant Prince met with mighty opposition in his passage, but at length passing through that dark Cave, he arrived at a fair Hall, where he saw a large Pillar with some Arabian Characters, which he going to read, was hindered by a most furious and monstrous Giant, who was accompanied by the forementioned Bear, who both at once assaulted him, and although he drawing his Sword gave them both many and mighty blows, yet he was not at all advantaged, for he could not wound or hurt them, but was so wounded by them, that he fled to the Pillar

far to defend and rescue himself, and there by good fortune he saw an excellent Sword fixed, which he laying hands to, soon drew out, and thereupon was a most horrible noise, and great Earthquake, and now being Master of so good a Sword, he again assaulted the Giant and Bear, but with better success then before, for he soon overcame and slew them both, and now his Cousin attempting to enter the Cave did it with much ease, and coming into the Hall and finding him, was very joyful for his Victory, and so they both going to the Pillar, read as followeth.

A Prophecie.

The fearful Keepers of my Cave being slain by the courageous Lyons, and the Sword won shall occasion the loss of the living and finding of the dead, who shall be then restored.

Both the Princes were amazed at what they had read and seen, but the Prince Arsileo was much troubled at his Cousins wounds which were many, great and, dangerous, however he supported them with much cheerfulness and whilst he and his Cousin were in discourse about the wonders of the place, they beheld coming towards them a most beautiful Lady, who was supported by two grave Knights, and attended by twelve Dam-sels, who all coming near the Prince kneeled on the ground: he seeing that action did the like, and desired them to rise; but the Lady refused so to do, untill he granted her demand: the which he soon agreed to do; and then she arising took him by the hand, and conducted him into the Chamber from whence she came, which when he was entered, he found it to be one of the fairest and most magnificent Chamber in the world; some time being spent in discoursing about the rarities thereof, the Lady desired the Prince to permit one of the Ladies who was well skilled in surgery to dress his wounds, he at first refused her offer, but in the end being importuned by her and the Prince his Cousin he consented, and being undressed, he was laid in a most sumptuous Bed, and his wounds being dressed most skilfully, he was left to his rest, where we will leave him, and return to the Emperess.

At

At the departure of Don Bellianis after the Bear, the Emperess made so many outcries, that caused many Knights to follow in pursuit of him, but although they could trace him by the blood he lost, especially where he had late down: yet none of them could discover the mouth of the Cave, and thereby find which way he had taken, so that much doubting and fearing his loss they returned, to the great sorrow of the Emperess his Mother, but her sorrow was much more augmented when she understood that the Emperour her Husband had armed himself at all points, and being attended and accompanied by none but a Squire, and Don Brianeil had likewise left her to seek her Son, fully determined not to see her till he had found him; the understanding of this his resolution, caused all the Knights present, not only to spend all the day time in seeking for them both, but night being come and they returned, she commanded them with lighted Torches to renew their search, but all in vain, so that as sorrowfull as she was, she was forced to be content and with much sorrow to return to the City without them.

CHAP. II.

How the Emperour in search of his Son happened on a strange and dangerous adventure. How Don Bellianis and his Cousin Arsileo left the Cave and went with the Lady, and how they were both Knighted, and of a brave and dangerous fight between the Knights of the Castle and the two Princes.

The Emperour in the mean time took much pains to find the lost Princes, so that riding hard all the day Don Brianeil was at night so weary that he was glad to disarm and rest himself in the fields, where he had not lain long, but he was disturbed by a noise which he heard at some distance, whereupon he again armed himself, and mounting on Horseback rode on towards the place, from whence he supposed the noise came, till at length he arrived near to a Castle, and going to the gate he perceived the noise came from thence: whereupon he knocked loudly, but none answered, so that

that he searched round about the Castle, but found no place to enter in, only he saw a Rope hanging from the Castle walls, and hearing the voice of people and fighting within, and considering that he might ascend the Castle by the Rope, he disarmed himself, and although Don Brianel did all he could to dissuade him, yet he soon by help of that Rope climbed to the Castle walls, and that without any other arms but his Sword and Shield, he intended to have drawn up his armour to him, but was prevented, for he saw ten Knights pursued by two fierce and mighty Gyants, and therefore calling to the Knights to force about and leave him, he opposed himself to both the Gyants, who seeing a single Knight unarmed oppose them, were mightily enraged, and fell both upon him, so that they cut his Shield in two, and wounded him in the head: he understanding of the danger he was in, gave one of the Gyants so great a blow that he cleave his head to his eyes, and soon after closing and struggling with the other he threw him over the Castle wall to Don Brianel, who by his command cut off his head: The second Gyant being dispatched, he looked for the Knights who were still engaged in fight, and were wounded by the valour of one Knight, which he seeing took one of the dead Gyants Shields, and went to oppose him, where although he was wounded in the Thigh by that Knight, yet in the end he vanquished him, as the other Knights had also overcome the rest of their enemies, and now they all received him with great joy and thanks desiring him to take care of his wounds, but he would not permit them to be dressed, untill his Squire and Don Brianel were let into the Castle, who were joyfull to see him in so good condition. His wounds being dressed, and he laid in bed, the Knights desired Don Brianel to acquaint them who the Emperour was, but he made them no other answer, but that he was called the Unknown Knight. So soon as he had rested and taken some ease, the Emperour enquired of the Knights the occasion of this fight in the Castle, to which they replied, that being desired by these Knights their enemies to entertain them that night as strangers in their Castle, they consented thereto but they were no sooner entered, but they so let upon them as he had found them: The Emperour being

dissatisfied with this answer, enquired for the Knight with Assurance and understanding that he was alive, but wounded and in Prison. he ordered him to be looked to, and his wounds dressed, which was done accordingly, and in ten dayes the Emperour being cured, went to this Knight, and enquired of him who he was, to this he would not answer, unless the Emperour would also agree to tell him who he was. to this the Emperour consenting told him that he was named Don Bellian Emperour of Greece, and that an adventure extraordinary had brought him thither, the other Knight hearing this, much wondering cryed out that then he found his attempts would be in vain, and that the Souldan who had employed him would be disappointed. for said he, Most Mighty Sir know that I came into this Country at the instigation of the Souldan of Persia, who is your very great enemy, and does so much abhor and hate you, that he is willing to purchase your head at the price of half his Empire: and therefore that he might accomplish his purpose, he did declare that if any would undertake your death and perform it, that he should as a reward have his fair Daughter to wife with half of his dominions; now know Sir (said the Knight to the Emperour) that I Don Gallanes who am Prince of Antioch, and have great love to the Princess, did undertake this exploit, and therefore being accompanied with five hundred Knights, and thirty Gyants am purposely come into these parts to perform our enterprize, and by taking you at some advantage, to carry you dead or alive to our Lord the Souldan; and to the end that I might the more easily accomplish my design, we attempted to surprize this Castle. But (continued he) I now believe it much harder to perform our enterprize then I expected, since I find you possessed with so great valour. The Emperour at this recitall was much surprized, and blaming Don Gallanes for his wicked undertaking, only ordered him to be secured in the Castle; but he told the Emperour, that although he were secured, yet he were best to take care of his own safety: for that the forces which he had brought with him would endeavour to endanger him; to this the Emperour replied he would provide against them, and so departed in Company of Don Brianel, who desiring the Emperour to dub him a Knight

was put off till another time more convenient.

And now leaving them, we return to Don Bellianis, who remaining ten days in the Damselfs Cave, and being cured of his wounds was desirous of departing, and therefore he requested the Lady to let him know what service she would command him, he finding the time convenient thus related her story: I was Daughter to Pompeians King of Antioch named Aurora, but being nere kin to the most beautifull Princess Floribilla Daughter to the Souldan of Babylon, I was in that Court bred up with her, and there I continued so long, that a very valiant Knight arrived there, who was called the Knight of the three Images: This Knight was not only very courageous but he was also very amorous of the Princess my Cousin, and seeing me to be very familiar with her, he courted me to intercede with her in his behalf, I thus became his confident, and acted for him with all integrity, but to little purpose, for the Princess Floribilla would not accept him, but he still importuning her and me, she was desired to acquaint the Souldan her Father with his suit, who not only disallowed of it, but caused him to depart his Empire, which action so angered the Knight, that he departing, went unto the King my Fathers Country, and resolving to be revenged on me, slew my Father, gained possession of the Kingdom, and gave it to a Prince of his Kindred, named Don Gallaneo; And I intending to return to my own Country, was dissuaded therefrom, by a wise woman, named Bellona, who caused me and these my companions to be brought hither, telling me that ere long I should be delivered by the Prince of Greece, and the Hungarian Prince his Cousin, whose words I have found true hitherto, and therefore said she, I am in good hopes of recovering my Kingdom by your hands. To this Discourse Don Bellianis replied that he was ready in all things to obey and serve her and not only in person but with a sufficient Army to execute so great an enterprize. The Princess answered that only his Company and his Cousins would be sufficient, and that in order to their business, there was Armour left by the Sage Bellona for them both, which being brought forth, that for Don Bellianis was of an Orange Tawny colour with a large Sleeve of the Sea, and on the

Shoulders

Shield was painted a Knight kneeling to a beautifull Lady, who turned away her face, with this inscription For your discourteous leaving me when I first saw you, now be gone, despair and dye. On the Prince Arileo's Shield was painted a Dragon and Griffon fighting, parted by a Damsel. These armes did not only please, but very well fit the Princes, who putting them on and mounting their Horses they left the Cave, being thus accompanied with the Princess and her Damsels, who put on their Masks, and thus rode on, but not far had they gone when they perceived two Knights to come out of a Castle, and with them a third unarmed like a Prisoner, one of the Knights was armed in an azure armor with imperial Crowns, and on his Shield the God Mars was figured; the other had a white armor: our Knights were desirous of knowing who these were that they met, and would gladly have forced them to have delivered him, whom they supposed was a Prisoner, but could not, because they had not as yet received the order of Knighthood; On the other side the Knight in white armor, was desirous to try their vallozs, by breaking of a Lance, and to that end he sent his Squire to invite one of them to that exercise, but they returned their sufficient answer that they were not Knighted, but wished they were for his sake: and that, to that end they intended to travel to the Emperour Don Bellaneo, to receive that order from his hands. The white Knight returned this answer, that the Emperour was not in his Court at present, and therefore if they intended to travell thither they would lose their labour, but if they were fitly accomplished for, and desirous of that order, the Knight his Companion would give them that honour, and he assured them that he was such a Person, as was not for Rebellity, or Promises, excused by the Emperour himself. Our Knights being very desirous of Knighthood, especially that they might try their vallozs against this new Knight, sent one of the Damsels to the Knight in the azure armor, with their request, who being satisfied of their Rebellity by taking their Oaths did presently admit them into the order of Knighthood; the Princess Aurora girding on the Sword of Don Bellianis, and the white Knight doing the same to Arileo; and thus the

Knights

Knight in the Azure armor having given them his benediction they returning him many thanks again, mounted on Horses, back.

And now being in a Capacity to try their valloz, the white Knight desired Arfileo to perform his promise, who being as ready as the other, soon consented, and thereupon putting their Lances in their Rests, they ran against one another with such fury, that their Lances were broken into shivers, and they both dismounted, thereupon drawing both their Swords, they began a doubtful and furious Combate, whereupon Arfileo as being the best armed had the better of it, sorely wounding his adversary, but so, that they were in short time both reduced to a low condition, which Don Bellianis seeing, and he being desirous to assist his Cousin Arfileo, having obtained leave of the Princess Aurora, he invited the Knight in the Azure armor, to break a Lance, the Knight of the Castle consented thereto, and accordingly they began their Course with very great fury, but although their Lances were flown up into the air in severall pieces, yet their bodies were immoveable; at which the Knight of the Castle wondered, having been used to unhorse all whom he encountered but having foyled with his Lance, he drawing his Sword gave Don Bellianis so mighty a blow on the Shield that he lost it and was forced to lean on his horses neck, but recovering himself he returned the Knight of the Castle so weighty a stroke on the Helm, as astonished him, and forced the horse to let his knees on the ground, never was seen so fierce a Combate as was between these Knights, who strived to exceed one another, so that they were also very much Wounded. At the same time thirty Knights and four Gyants entered the Field, and seeing the Knight in the Azure Armor in danger, they all pressed on towards Don Bellianis to assault him, but the Knight that was Prisoner cryed out to them to forbear, telling them they were mistaken, and that he was the party that they took the other for, they then coming to him, knew him to be Don Gallaneo, and he acquainted them that the other who was in the Azure Armor which had been his, was the Emperor Don Bellaneo as indeed it was, and the new Knight was Don Brianel, who were travelling with Don Gallaneo

laneo their Prisoner towards Constantinople, but were thus met with as you have heard, and now Don Gallaneo's Knights and Gyants understanding the whole matter from him, & that their chief enemy the Emperor was before them, they all set upon him; and Don Bellianis understanding that it was his Father with whom he had fought & so Wounded, was much troubled, but however resolved to assist him against his Enemies to the last gasp, and the Emperor seeing the danger he was in, drawing his Signet from his finger delivered it to one of those that came from the Castle with him, commanding him to hasten to the Court and deliver it to the King of Hungaria and let him know the condition he was in, and that he should immediately send him aid, and then seeing all the Troop ready to assail him, he prepared to defend himself, and was assisted by Don Brianel, his Son Don Bellianis, and Don Arfileo, and the two Old Knights who attended the Princess Aurora, and thus did this unequal Battle begin wherein we will leave them, and follow the Messenger, who made such hast that in short time he arrived at Constantinople, and finding the King of Hungaria delivered the Signet, and related the Case, at which the King immediately assembled the Guards, which was two thousand Knights, and with them departed towards the place of Combate, commanding all the City to Arm, and with all expedition to follow him, which command was in short time executed accordingly.

CHAP. III.

The end of the fight between Don Gallaneo and his Forces, and the Emperor and Princes, and how the Princes departed without discovery, and what befel them and the Lady in the dangerous Grove, and how the Emperor after their departure knew who they were.

Very bloody was the fight between the Emperor and his small party (being only those whom we have told you, and eight more, who came out of the Castle) and that band of Don Gallaneo's Knights and Gyants, who all made it their cheifest aim to kill the Emperor, but he so well defended him-

self, being also powerfully assisted by his Son Don Bellianis, that although Don Gallaneo himself getting Armoz, and assaulting him, yet all that party was in the end vanquished; and Gallaneo very much Wounded, but scarcely had the good Emperor time enough to return thanks for his deliverance, but he found himself in greater danger then ever, for he beheld all the rest of Don Gallaneo's Knights and Gyants to enter the Field and ride furiously towards them: all that the Emperor could do was to bradden himself and encourage his Companions who were all resolved to do their utmost, and if they must dye to sell their lives at the best rate they could, and therefore taking the body of Don Gallaneo and placing it before them, they provided to receive their enemies with great courage, who now coming on conducted by one Don Galseo Cousin to Don Gallaneo he seeing the body of his Cousin would not suffer those of his party to ride over him, but to alight, which was some comfort to the Defendants, who received their enemies with admirable courage, and kept them so long in play, that they saw the King of Hungaria coming with his Forces, and then being in hopes of the Victory, they laid about them like Lyons, and as if they had but then freshly entered the Fight, although the Emperor himself acted Wonders, yet he saw himself out-done by his Son, at which he greatly marvelled; for he sometimes saw him kill two Knights with one blow, and when it was to rescue his Father from danger he made nothing of cleaving one Gyant to the Mast, and of cutting another in two at the middle so prodigious were his blows, and he was very well seconded by Don Arilio and Don Brianel, who that day performed Wonders, so that in short time the Field was indifferent clear from their enemies, which Don Galseo seeing, and also that more Forces were coming from the City he privately causing the body of Don Gallaneo to be laid on a Horse before him, left the Field and fled to his Ships: where he with all speed embarked.

And now was the Battle soon after finished by the Death of all these Knights and monstrous Gyants, who were pursued and slain by the other Forces, that were now come from the City and now did the Emperor give great thanks to Don Bellianis

Bellianis and Don Arilio for their assistance, desiring them by all means to tell who they were, and to disarm themselves that their Wounds which were many and dangerous might be dressed, but they disguising their Voices refused to do either, desiring by all means leave to depart, which the Emperor refused to grant. And search being made for Don Gallaneo, they understood that he was carried away by Don Galseo, at which they were all troubled, especially the Princess Aurora who told Don Bellianis that in his Death hall of her business would be finished, but since he was escaped, Don Bellianis told the Emperor, that the first time he saw him, although in the presence of the Souldan his Lord he would rid him of an Enemy by giving him his Death. The Emperor was still desirous of detaining and knowing them, telling them that next to the search of his Son and Kinsman he most desired to know them; to this Don Bellianis replied, that he needed not further to trouble himself in searching for the two Princes, for that they were both well, and were not long since before that Castle, and that there they had been acquainted with them, although this did somewhat please and satisfy the Emperor, yet he was still displeased at the departure of Don Bellianis and his Company, who carried the two pieces of his painted Shield with him, and so they rode on three miles to the top of a hill, where they were disarmed to have their Wounds dressed, but they were found to be so many and dangerous, that the Damseles who were well skilled in Surgery were very much dismayed and troubled, which caused great grief to their Lady the Princess, while they were thus lamenting, they saw a Chariot in the Air, coming towards them, which seemed to be of Chrysal, and was drawn by sixty Griffons, in it was only two Dwarfs, who told the Princess that they were sent by the Sage Bellona, to fetch the two Princes, who were in great danger without her assistance, wherefore at their request the two Princes were laid in the Chariot and the Princess and her Damseles likewise mounted therein.

Thus left the Emperor troubled at the departure of the Princess, joyful that he heard of his Son and Kinsman, but withall very dangerously Wounded, for being retired into the Castle,

and his Wounds dressed, he was light headed by reason of one large Wound he had received in his Head; very much grieved were all there present, but most of all the King of Hungaria, but he was much comforted by the arrival of a Damsel, who told him she could cure the Emperor, and therefore desired to be brought to his presence, the King accordingly conducted her to the place where the Emperor lay in great danger, but she by applying some Ointments to his Wounds, first refreshed him, and then causing him to drink off a Glass which she gave him, fully restored him to his former health and strength, she having thus done departed, telling the King of Hungaria that the Emperor was aided by the nearest of kin to them both. They both wondered at these passages, and the Emperor and the King did then conclude that the two that fought so valiantly were the lost Princes their Sons; but considering they were very much Wounded and could not be gone far, they sent abroad to find them, and in the mean time they went to see Don Brianel who was also very much Wounded, but when they came to the Chamber where they had left him, they found he was gone, and on his beds head a Letter to this effect.

The Grecian Lyon shall be much endangered by the Unknown, which shall be the greatest Tryal of my Skill. And now great Emperor leave off the search of thy Son, and guard thy Dominions which will be in danger; And further know that thy Fame will be exceeded by that of the new Knight, which will be for thy greater glory.

They were both satisfied with this Letter, and resolved to return to the City, but they were first visited by the old Prince of Macedon, and the Empress with thirty thousand Men, who came from the City; and now nothing but Joy was heard, only they still doubted what was become of the Princes, but the Emperor remembered there were two old Knights with the Ladies and Knights who were killed or Wounded, these Knights were sought for and found, but were very much Wounded, wherefore the Empress went to them, and they supposing her to be their Princess answered her all questions she proposed so that

that she not only understood from them that the two Knights that assisted the Emperor were her Son and Cousin, but discovered all their designs, so that she acquainting the Emperor with the certainty of these matters it caused a Universal Joy, and the Emperor understanding that they were gone towards Antioch, was resolved to assist them with a sufficient Army whereby they might perform their Enterprize, and now the two Old Knights being cured of their Wounds they all departed to Constantinople, where they began many Triumphs, the Emperor making several Knights, among the rest Don Castidel of the Rose, and Don Sabrian of Trebento, Sons to the Duke of Trebento, Don Persiano the Courteous, Son to the Duke of Pontus, and Don Briamore Son to the King of Argos, all which put themselves in search of the valiant and redoubted Prince Don Bellianis travelling in Poorish Habits to the City of Antioch.

CHAP. IV.

How the Princes being drawn in the Chariot with Griffons were cured of their wounds by the Sage Bellona, and then travelled towards Antioch, how they happened into the Company of Duke Alfron the Courteous, and of the adventure of the Unhappy Bridge, and of a combat between Don Bellianis and the Knights of the Bridge.

The Princess Aurora with her Attendants being entered the Chrystalline Chariot were drawn so swiftly through the Air; that in short time they arrived in Persia, near to the famous City of Persepolis, where on the top of a Mountain the Griffons descended hard by a dark Cave, out of which there issued a Woman, who seemed to be above two hundred years old, but she was quickly known by the Princess to be the Sage Bellona, who soon told Don Bellianis and Don Arfileo who he was, and that now they were out of all danger being so near her greatest friend. The Sage Bellona saluted them very all courteously, telling them how she had healed the Emperor (who she had left at home) and also Don Brianel, who was within her house,

house, Don Bellianis was joyful at his Fathers healing and at her request entered her house which was so excellent within that it resembled the most stately Pallace, he and his Cousin being laid on rich beds had their wounds cured dressed but not healed so soon as those of the Emperoz and Don Brianell who being healed was walking in his Chamber much wondering at what had happened and whilest he was in serious meditation of what had passed, the Sage Bellona led the Princess Aurora into his Chamber, he soon remembered her and their ordinary salutations being passed the Princess acquainted him with all things that had happened at which he was mightily astonished wondering at the great valor of his Cousin Don Bellianis whom he earnestly desired to see, wherefore the Sage Bellona gave him that satisfaction, leading him to the Chamber where the Princess lay. Great was the content they all received in this interview and conference in which they spent some time, so that in fifteen days they being all able to travell, the Sage Bellona told Don Bellianis that it would be necessary for his safety for him to conceal his Religion being to travel to the Souldan of Babilons Court where he should be in very great perill, but she would always be his friend, he kindly thanked her and thus they all spending some more time with the Sage Bellona and being ready to depart she furnished them with several suits of Armour, the richest and fairest that could be seen. These of Don Bellianis were of a Tawny colour imbossed with many Pearls, and on his shield was pictured the same face and motto he had in the former which face was known by the Princess Aurora to be the lively portrature of Florisbella daughter to the Souldan of Babilon, she also gave him a Rich Scabbard to his enchanted Sword. The two others Armours were also rich and glorious and now the Knights being so well accounted the Princess Aurora was also presented with a garment of cloth of Gold, and the Knights with very little Dwarves to attend them, that of Don Bellianis named Odisio being very small but witty, and now being fitted at all points and having taken their leaves of Bellona they merrily began their journey.

They intended their journey for Antioch but by the way they

they met twenty thousand Knights sumptuously armed, all belonging to a J conducted by a Knight called Duke Alfron the Courteous, who was travelling to Persepolis to assist at the Jousts and Triumphs there to be held, in honor of the Wedding to be solemnized between Don Gallaneo of Antioch, and the Princess Persiana Daughter to the Souldan of Persia. Don Bellianis understood thus much from one of the Train, and that although it was not certainly known that the Emperoz of Greece were dead, yet the Souldan was content that the Marriage should proceed because the Emperoz had been left sorely Wounded as hath been already related, and he was further told, that although the Duke Alfron went to this Wedding, yet he was very much dissatisfied therein because he was himself in love with the same Princess, and beloved of her, though her Father enforced her to this Marriage, and therefore the Duke rode on very melancholly, but however some of his Train having shewn our Knights and Ladies to him he courteously saluted them inviting them into his company, to which gentle proposition of his they consented, and accordingly rode along with him till they came to a Bridge which was difficult to pass over, for that it was defended by four very Valiant Knights, and two Gyants, who were upon unequal terms to combat with all Passengers, and from them that were vanquished to take their Horses and Armour. The Duke doubting that by reason of the Malice of the Defendants and unequallity of the fight, they should not there have passage, would have persuaded our Knights to pass another way, but they by no means would agree thereto, all three striving who should first try the Adventure, at this time they saw on the other side of the Bridge the Souldan, his Daughter and Don Gallaneo with their Attendants, who came to see the Adventure of the Bridge, and because of the contest, who should be first in the Adventure, they agreed to stand to the ordering of the Princess Aurora who appointed that Don Brianell should first try his fortune, and next him Don Arilleo, and if they failed in the Enterprize, then Don Bellianis should succeed them, according to this agreement they began, and Don Brianell met one of the Brothers Defenders of the Bridge with such violence that he was overthrown, and he himself hardly escaped from bearing

bearing him company. It had not been known that any of the Brothers had been thus unhorsed, so that all people wondered at what had happened, till the other three knights and two Gyants came all out armed and mounted and one of the knights soon ran against Don Brianel, who met him with equal fury, so they both meeting in the Encounter were both dismounted, whereupon the Men of the Bridge came to unarm him, and another of the Brothers advanced to meet Don Arfileo who readily encountered him, and that with such fierceness that he overthrew him dead to the ground, a peice of his Lance being in his body, this action caused great admiration in the Spectators, who till then thought the Defenders of the Bridge to be invincible, soon after one other of the Brothers now came against Don Arfileo, but to his cost, for he was thrown from his horse in the encounter, but not so but that Arfileo was likewise enforced to leap from his, which caused those of the Bridge to come to disarm him, but he not thinking it to be Justice caused him to lose his Head for his attempt. The other Brothers and Gyants seeing this drew their Swords and came to assail him, and Don Bellianis and others to defend him, so that there began a confused Battle, which was stopped by command of the Souldan, who ordered that Don Arfileo should not be disarmed, nor yet permitted to Foul: or fight any more. To this he agreed and all was content, except one Proud Knight who was near the Souldan who gave out very haughty and arrogant speeches against our knights so that Don Bellianis being angry desired him to mortal battle, the other as proudly accepted it on condition that after battle with the Proud Knight Don Bellianis if Vanquished, must fight with the Defenders of the Bridge, and if Vanquished lose his Horse and Armour. In this time the Princess Persiana not knowing Duke Alfron asked him who these knights were, he instead of answering, took the opportunity of renewing his Love-suit to her, complaining of his ill Fortune, and she courteously answered him, telling him that it was her Fathers violent commands, and not her inclination that occasioned the breach, and that she still loved him, and further she would have proceeded, but that she was hindered by the Battle that was then beginning between Don Bellianis and the Proud Knight.

Great

Great was the anger and Rage that possessed Don Bellianis against the Proud Knight, so that being resolved to dispatch him at the first blow, they encountered with great fury, but Don Bellianis mist of his intent, for being blinded with Rage and anger he clearly pass'd by him, who breaking his Lance on the Shield of Don Bellianis pass on, which Don Bellianis seeing turned about, and disdaining to use his Sword caught hold of him, and drawing him out of his Saddle with much ease, rode to the River side, and threw him into the Water where he was soon drowned to the great Wonder and admiration of the Souldan and the rest of the Spectators, but greater was their amazement at what they saw him perform soon after, for he encountered the two Gyants and three knights without any Lance, scorning to use any, having mis'd of his first attempt against the Proud Knight, but as these knights and Gyants ran against him, he either cut their Lances in sunder, or pulling them out of their hands by force made them instruments of mischief to their owners, and then when they all did set upon him in Combate, he laid so lustily about him, that he cut off Legs and Arms from the Gyants, and cleft the head of one of the knights in two, and so wounded the other two knights that they begged their lives at his hands, which at the request of the Souldan he granted to them, and thus did he finish the Adventure of the Unhappy Bridge, the Souldan greatly wondered who he should be, but Don Gallaneo knowing him as well by his Shields as by the Lady, and Damfels his Companions, told the Souldan that it was the very same Knight that had been knighted by, and fought with the Emperoz of Greece, this answer gave the Souldan some satisfaction, but he was resolved to know more if he might, and to that purpose he and his Train rode towards them, which Duke Alfron seeing, he moved forwards to meet them.

CHAP. V.

How the Knights were received by the Souldan and his daughter Persiana, and of her discourse with Duke Alfiron, and the Knight of the Golden Image, of a confederacy between Don Gallaneo and Don Galfeo to kill the Knight of the Golden Image, and his Companions.

The Souldan coming near to Duke Alfiron he dismounted and went to kiss his hands, but he was raised and welcomed by the Souldan, as was also Don Bellianis and his Companions, and then the Sophy praising his Valour to the highest, desired a boon of him, which he courteously granted, but when he told him that it was for him and his Companions to pull off their Helms and tell him their Names and Qualities, as also that of the Ladies, he was somewhat troubled, however he obeyed the Souldan, and told him that his Name was the Knight of the Golden Image, the other pointing to Don Brianel the Venturous Knight, and the other, Arsileo Prince, and sole Heir of the Kingdom of Rasia, and that the Lady was the King of Carcasias Daughter whom they were attending home, and then he and his Companions did unlace and pull off their Helms, whereby Don Bellianis did discover one of the loveliest, but withall the most magnanimous Countenance that ever was beheld, the Souldan embracing him with great affection, and now they having joyned Companies, they travelled together towards the City of Persepolis. Don Gallaneo out of Courtesy and respect, leading the Balfrey of the Princess Aurora by the Reins, which Don Brianel seeing he performed the same Office for the Princess Persiana, and thus did they Travel, spending their time in pleasant and familiar conversation till they arrived at the City of Persepolis, where they attended the Sophy to his Pallace, but although he requested Don Bellianis and his Companions to remain there with him, yet they made their excuses resolving during their stay in that place to continue with Duke Alfiron, who retiring to his Pallace gladly received and welcomed them and then Don Bellianis Wounds being

being dressed and he laid in bed, Supper was served to them all with as great magnificence as if they had been entertained at home in the City of Constantinople.

Don Bellianis being weak with the loss of blood and Wounds he had received against the Knights and Cyants at the Bridge, the next day kept his Bed where he was not only visited by Duke Alfiron and his friends, but also by the Sophy and Princess Persiana, and most of the principal of the Court except Don Gallaneo, who was otherwise employed as you shall know by and by. Don Bellianis being resolved to serve the Duke Alfiron against Don Gallaneo, after the Duke had acquainted him with his Love to the Princess and other private affairs, Don Bellianis told him that if he would be ruled by him, he would find a Way to destroy his Rival Don Gallaneo, and put him in possession of the Princess, the Duke joyfully received the proposition, and thereupon Don Bellianis advised the manner to be thus. That it should be given out that he being sorely Wounded could not be the next day at the Fights and Tournaments that were to be held at the intended Wedding of Gallaneo and the Princess, but that he would keep his Bed, but that however he was resolved to be there to kill Don Gallaneo, and to bring the Princess to such place as the Duke should appoint, and to the end they might accomplish their design the better, the Duke should cause a party of his Knights to advance before on the Way whether they intended, that they might be freshly ready to assist them upon occasion. Although the Duke doubted much to come off well in this attempt, yet he was resolved to try his fortune, and in all things to obey Don Bellianis. Whilst they were in this conference, the Sophy and his Daughter entered, who kindly saluted the wounded Prince, and there the Duke had the opportunity to confer with the Princess Persiana, and receive fresh assurances of her good Will and affection, he giving her a Scarf of her own making as a favour, and wishing that the day of her Nuptials had been with him, he finding her so amiable, acquainted her with the design of himself and Don Bellianis for gaining her, which she well approved of, and having the conveniency of speaking with Don Bellianis alone, she discovered her mind to him, and he also acquainted her with his intention, and resolution to serve her, but she seeing him so Wounded,

doubtless

doubted of his performance, however he assured her that he was able enough and would not be wanting in executing what he had promised, and in this assurance he left him to attend the Sophy her Father who now having performed his visits to all departed.

Whilst this design was contriving and concluding on at the Pallace of the Duke against Don Gallaneo he was not idle, but was also contriving mischief against Don Bellianis, for consulting with his Cousin Don Gafleo the unknown, and believing that the Knight of the Golden Image was one of those that fought against him at Constantinople, they therefore concluded him to be their Enemy, and that he came thither for their harm and damage, wherefore it was agreed that Don Bellianis being sick of his Wounds, Don Gafleo should the next day (when all the Dukes Knights were at the Tousts and he left in Bed alone) with five hundred Knights search the Dukes Pallace and kill him, whilst that Don Gallaneo himself should in the time of the Tousts destroy and kill his Companions, and thus they resolved to rid themselves of their supposed Enemies, and to this purpose they that Night put things in order to execute their intention the next day.

CHAP. VI.

How the Tourney being begun, of the danger the *Adventurous Knight* and *Arfileo* were in by *Don Gallaneo's* Knights, how *Don Bellianis* defended himself in the Dukes Pallace from *Gafleo*, and saw him there, and how he going out of *Persepolis* relieved two Damsels from certain Knights, and how he slew the Dragon of the *Riphean Wood*.

The next day which was the appointed time for the solemnizing the Nuptials between Don Gallaneo and the Princess Persiana being come, all these great and Royal Personages dressed themselves in their richest habiliments, but the Princess exceeded them all, not only in gorgeous and Rich apparel but in the multitude of Jewels that adorned her which were although very rich and numerous, yet

did

did her fair beautiful eyes exceed them all in brightness and lustre, and being attended by many Kings and Queens, Dukes and Dutcheses, and other Royal Personages, she was conducted to the Temple, where according to the custome of her Countrey she was married to Don Gallaneo. The good Duke Alfron was much troubled hereat, but he was in great hopes before that day was spent by the assistance of his good friends Don Bellianis and his Companions to have her in his Possession, and to that end he had put all things in the best order he could, being accompanied with the two Kings of Armenia and Tessanty; who were his Friends and were attended by twenty five thousand Knights, yet were these and all his own but a small number in comparison of those that were of the *Souldans* Court, and did belong unto Don Gallaneo, but however not only the Duke but also the Princess Persiana put great confidence in the promise of Don Bellianis. And now Dinner being ended, and the Tilting begun Don Brianel who led one of the Dukes Squadrons encountered with a Gyantlike Knight called *Fidako* the Cruel, who was one of those that Don Gallaneo had charged to kill him and *Arfileo*, but he missed of his aim, for he was himself not only overthrown in the Encounter but also wounded in the Head. Many came to his rescue and to fall upon Don Brianel, but he was relieved by *Arfileo* and several of Duke Alfrons Knights, so that in short time the Tilt and Tournament was turned into a bloody fight, and all parties engaged in it, where we will leave them to speak of Don Bellianis.

The Tournament being begun in the place appointed, Don Gafleo with five hundred Knights, went to the Dukes lodging, with intent to murder Don Bellianis, but he was up and ready to receive them, for being armed in one of the Dukes armours, he was prepared to go to the Tournament, when Don Gafleo entered the Pallace, Don Bellianis seeing so many Knights enter, wondering asked their business, Don Gafleo answered, to see the Knight of the Golden Image, he is not to be spoke with said Don Bellianis; but Gafleo advancing forwards up stairs, was hindered from entering, by Don Bellianis, who drawing forth his Sword, defended the passage in such manner, that in short time,

he

he had killd Gálleo, and severall of his followers, and forced the others back again into the Court yard, where he pursued them, and severall other people saw many fight against one Knight came and assisted him, so that all the rest were vanquished and fled, only Don Bellianis taking one of them Prisoner, forced him to confess the intended treason against him. He having discovered thus much, taking a lusty Curser and a big Lance, rode to the Tournaments. Where finding his friends engaged in bloody fight, and endangered by Don Gallaneo's practice, he was so enraged, that he overthrew thirty Knights ere his Lance did break, and then drawing his Sword, he laid to about him, that he mightily encouraged the Duke's Knights, who before that time were woꝛsed by their adversaries, and seeing his Cousin Prince Arfileo dismounted, he made way to him and again mounted him on a dead Knights Horse. Don Gallaneo was by this time informed of the ill success of his Cousin Gálleo, by one who had escaped and flewed him the Knight that had disappointed them, wherefore he in great wrath and anger, was resolved to be revenged, and therefore made towards Don Bellianis, who was then fighting with a Gyant, and in few strokes slew him to the amazement of the Sophy, who wondering cryed out, what Knight may this be, that performeth such incredible deeds, with the Knight of the Golden Image were now here to behold it. At this time was Don Gallaneo come near to Don Bellianis, whereupon they quickly made way to meet and encounter each other but to the great harm of Don Gallaneo, who received such a blow from Don Bellianis, that he fell from his horse sorely wounded, our Knight being resolved to dispatch him alighted, and wounded him again, but was hindered of his purpose by some of Gallaneo's Knights, but Duke Alifron arriving at that time with a Troop of Knights, and seeing how matters passed rode over him, and so caused him to breath his last to the great grief and sorrow of the Sophy, who commanded them to spare him but to no purpose, wherefore he commanded all to fall upon and kill those that had killed his Son which caused a cruel slaughter. The Kings of Armenia and Assyry with much persuasions, caused the Sophy to command the fight to cease but he rested much troubled, resolving to be revenged on Duke Alifron, and his Daughter

Daughter the Princess to disguise her joy did seem to be grieved for the Death of her Husband, but her Father believing he assembled and that he was slain by her consent, caused her to be imprisoned in a Tower, and to be surely guarded.

And now the Battle being ended, and every one returning to their quarters, Don Bellianis that he might not be known left the City and went into the Fields, where he was not able to travel by reason of the great loss of blood which he sustained from his many wounds, so that he was forced to alight and sit on the ground, but it was not long ere he was disturbed by the arrival of two Damfels who came in great hast and fear towards him, he asking the cause of their feare and flight, they told him they were pursued by a terrible Dragon, and they had no sooner finished their Discourse, but he saw the Dragon approach, whereupon he drew his Sword and assaulted the furious beast, who spring against him threw him down, and he being under him was cruelly wounded with his Talons, so that he was in great danger, but he whose heart was never possessed with fear, in short time drawing his Dagger, mortally wounded the Dragon in several places to the heart, so that he left our Knight and expired, for which forbearance our Knight returned thanks, and the two Damfels who beheld the sight were greatly amazed, and seeing him very much wounded, they disarmed him and dressed his wounds, and leaving his Armor there, they travelled towards the City; by the way he discoursed with them, and by enquiry found that they belonged to the Princess Florisbella, who had sent them to hear tidings of her Cousin the Princess Aurora, and that if their Travels they were met by a Gyant named Fellstone, who having twenty Knights in his Company would have seized them, but that they seeing twenty other Knights caused them to oppose the Gyants, and that in the mean time they had fled from them, in this discourse they continued till they again met with some of the Gyants Knights, who seeing the Damfels would have again forced them but were again hindered by Don Bellianis, who unarmed as he was encountered all the Knights, and combating with them all, clove one of them from the Head to the Throat that he fell down in two pieces, and the other two he also vanquished, but withall he was very much wounded with a Lance, which being

run into his Thigh fastned him so to his Saddle, that he could not stir it, and now without any more Adventures he arrived at the Dukes Pallace, where he was joyfully received and welcomed by all, but when they saw him so Wounded they were very much grieved, for he could not without help alight from his Horse, and he was forced to be carried to his Bed, where his Wounds were carefully dressed, but that in his Thigh was so large and painful that he roared like a Bull. And now he being provided with all things necessary, the whole discourse was about his marvellous and indeed prodigious Adventures, which were so admirable, especially those of that day that they exceeded belief, and then the two Damselfs who came with him upon sight of the Princess Aurora knew her, and that Evening they having the conveniency of being private together, discovered themselves to her, and the cause of their journey, and how they fortunately met with Don Bellianis, and the Princess also acquainted them with the good success of her affairs by his means, and how that she was in part revenged for the Death of King Pompejano her Father by the Death of Don Gallaneo who had usurped her Kingdom.

CHAP. VII.

How the Sophy was grieved after the battel, and how Don Bellianis Armor was brought to the City. How the Kings of Armenia and Tesslany conferred with the Sophy; and how the Duke presented himself to the Sophy, and what hapned to him there; and how the Knight of the Golden Image, and Persiana were challenged, by the fearful Felsione, and his brethren, for the death of Don Gallaneo, and Don Galfeo, and how the challenge was accepted.

The grief of the Souldan was very great for the loss of his Son and very desirous he was to know who that Knight was that had performed such marvails in the Battle, somewhat suspecting it to be the Knight of the Golden Image, but that he supposed he kept his Bed by reason of his Wounds, and withall he understood that the Knight went not home with the Duke but left the City, wherefore he sent several Knights to

seek

seek him, who coming to the place where the monstrous Dragon was slain, they were more fearful of his dead Carcass then our Knight had been to encounter and kill him; there they found the Knights Armor, by which they understood that it was he that had performed that marvellous Combate, also at a little distance, they found the Gyants slain Knights, where seeing one of them so cloven in twain, they admired at the prodigious strength of the Knight, who had done those marvails, and thus being laden with his Armor, they returned to the Souldan, acquainting him with all they knew, who marvelled thereat, and was joyful for the Death of that mighty Dragon of the Ryphean Woods whom none durst encounter but all fled from, as from their Deutches; and now the Souldan being resolved to be revenged on the Duke Alhron, he provided to assault him, and the Duke also provided for his own defence.

The Sophy continuing his resolution of being revenged on Duke Alhron, caused a Proclamation to be issued out that none should aid or assist him but to proceed against him as against a Traytor. But by the Mediation of the two Kings of Armenia and Tesslany, the indignation of the Sophy was appeased on condition the Duke would submit himself to Justice, to which they on his behalf engaged.

And thereupon the two Kings going to the Dukes Pallace spake with him in the presence of Don Bellianis to whom the Duke referred them for answer, wherefore Don Bellianis acknowledging that he had slain Don Galfeo and Don Gallaneo, told the Kings how that they had determined in that manner to murder him in his bed, and Traitorously kill his two friends in the Tournament, and therefore he had done what he ought in causing them to fall by his hand, but he concluded that in his opinion it would not be amiss for the Duke to present himself to the Souldan and abide by his Justice, to which he consented, the two Kings engaging on the Sophys behalf, and they being now determined to go to the Souldans Pallace, Don Bellianis desired his two friends Don Brianel and Don Arles to accompany them thither, and if occasion were to undertake the Combate against any Challengers on behalf of him and the Princess Persiana, which they promising to do departed, leading him in Company of

the Princess Aurora, and the Princess Florisbella's Damself, who being very skilful in Surgery, very much assisted him in the healing of his Wounds which as you have heard were many and great.

The Duke accompanied by the two Kings and Knights was hardly arrived at the Souldans Palace, when also there entered this great ugly and furious Gyant attended on by thirty Knights. He who appeared to be the chief being named Pallistone the Fierce King of Cyprus, advanced to the Souldan, and told him that he came to demand Justice against Duke Alfron, the Knight of the Golden Image, and his Daughter Persiana, for contriving and aiding the Death of his Minstrel Don Gallaneo, and Don Galeso his Cousin, and he said he had reason to demand it being next of kin to him, and hoped to have Justice against them, because he understood the Sophy had already imprisoned his Daughter as guilty of the fact, and therefore he termed the Duke and his Partakers Traytors, and so he said he would prove against them all himself in person, although there were a hundred of them at once. The Duke hearing these haughty and presumptuous speeches, and viewing the Gyant made as resolute a reply, telling him that he was the Duke, and that what he had said was false, and that he lyes most falsely, as he would prove against him, and Don Arfileo hearing his Cousin Don Bellianis abused, told the Gyant that what he had spoken of the Knight of the Golden Image was false, and that he lyes in his Throat as he was ready to prove and justify. Don Brianel said as much in the behalf of the Princess Persiana, and that for her behalf he would enter the Lists either against the Gyant himself, or against any of the other two Gyants who were his Brothers, and came thither for that purpose. The fierce Gyant hearing himself so slighted by these three Knights could hardly contain his anger, spring into outrageous expressions, offered to fight with them all himself, but the Sophy would not consent to that inequality in the Combat, but consulting with his Court what was fittest to be done, it was at length agreed on that Arfileo should fight on the behalf of Don Bellianis, Don Brianel on behalf of the Princess Persiana, and that Duke Alfron should provide him a Champion in the space of twelve days, when the Combat

Combat was to be fought with them three, and the King of Cyprus and his two Brothers, to this the Princess Persiana was called, who did at length consent that Don Brianel should be her Champion, and thereupon Wages were delivered on both sides. The Princess was again committed to Prison, and so was Duke Alfron. The King of Cyprus being invited to remain in the Souldans Palace consented, determining after the Combat, to demand the Princess for his Wife, and being of kin next to Don Gallaneo to have the Kingdom of Antioch with her. The Princes Don Arfileo, and Don Brianel, with the Kings and others returned to the Dukes Palace, where they acquainted Don Bellianis with what had passed at the Souldans Palace, and he thereby understanding that the Combat was concluded on without his being a party therein, he believed himself to be very much wronged, and resolving to have it otherwise if possible, he arose left his Bed and the Dukes Palace, and being only led by the Princess Aurora, who supported him, and attended by Florisbella's Damself, in this manner he went to the Palace, being gaped at by all as he passed with the Eyes of Wonder. And being arrived at the Sophys presence, he being accompanied by the King of Cyprus and his Brothers, the Sophy shewed him to the King, telling him of his great strength and Valour, but the King made so light of the Souldans Words that he again offered to fight with him and all the other Combatants at once, and could hardly be dissuaded there from by the Souldans persuasions.

CHAP. VIII.

How *Don Bellianis* coming to demand Justice of the Souldan was imprisoned till the end of the Combate, how he being disguised went out of Prison and met with *Don Contumeliano* of *Phenicia*, and then returned to the City, and being armed with his Armour, he was admitted to fight, his Discourse with the Princess *Persiana* before the Battle and what happened therein.

DOn Bellianis all this while looked as earnestly on the King of Cyprus, and seeing the Discourse between him and the Sophy to be ended, he thus began. Most Mighty Lord, I understand that I have been accused of Treason, against *Don Galfes* and *Don Gallanes*, if it be a Treason for a Man to defend his Life against those that come traiterously to assail him, then I must confess my self guilty, for I do not deny but *Don Galfes* fell by my Sword, but it was when he like a Traytor as he was came to murder me in my bed, and I do not deny but that *Don Gallanes* fell also by my Sword, but it was in rescuing my friends from him whom he had also determined to slay. If to do these just actions for defence of my self and friends be treasonable, then I must confess my self to be guilty, but I hardly think that any person who loves Justice, will now believe me guilty. However I understand that I am accused of Treason and so accused that I am not permitted in my own person to defend my self, I understanding hereof am come hither to demand Justice at your

your hands, and that I wounded as I am may be permitted to fight my own battell, which I promise to do ten days hence, and I question not the Justice of my cause assisting me to prove up on any Knight or Gyant that I am no Traitor nor guilty of any Treason whereof I am accused. He having thus finished the Souldan replied that he was accused of Treason, and according to custome no Man that was so accused was to defend his own cause, for if so it would be unequal, especially with him whom he thought did not fight like other Knights, but that he was assisted by enchantment. Such other Language passed between them wherein *Don Bellianis* endeavoured to anger and provoke the King of Cyprus to Challenge him the Combat, but although many hot words passed between them yet the Souldan still so took up the matter that *Don Bellianis* was frustrate in his design being forced to yield to what the Souldan had already determined, and withall he was by the Souldans command carryed to a strong Tower, there to be strictly guarded until the day of Combat came, wherefore he was forced to stay only accompanied by the two Damels of the Princess *Florisdella* who were left to cure his wounds. *Artico* and *Brianell* were both present at this Communication with the Souldan but said little wishing for the day of Combat that they might justifie their friends that were thus wrongfully accused.

Ten days of the twelve (whereon the Combat was intended to be fought) were already passed, to the great grief of Duke *Alfiron*, because he could not find any that would undertake the Combat in his behalf so dreadful was these three Gyants unto all that beheld them. The Princess *Persiana* was also very sorrowful on the same account. But when *Don Bellianis* understood so much, he was marvelously afflicted and could not receive any comfort although both the Damels that attended him did all they could to please him, till at length one of the two Damels, whose name was *Floriana* bethought of a remedy for all their sorrow, which was thus, it was agreed to give out that he was very ill of his wounds, so that he continually kept his bed, and that sitting in the bed in his stead, he being disguised in her Apparell might pass the Guards, and so getting Armour might make one of the Combatants, this advice he very well approved of, and the

the next night put in execution, but when he was Apparrelled in a womans habit he appeared marvelously beautiful, so that the two Damsels said they had never seen any so beautiful except it were their Lady the Princess Florisbella who they told him was exceeding fair, and to confirm their words they shewed him the Picture of their Lady which they still carried with them, he receiving the Picture and earnestly considering it found that it was the very same he had pictured on his Shield, which being so fair as it was he supposed it to be a piece made by fancy and not truth, but now viewing of this other and they assuring him that it was the true and lively Picture of their Lady he was so surpris'd therewith that he became instantly in Love with a very violent passion which had like to have brought him into a Trance, but he being again recovered and desiring to have the keeping of the Picture departed leaving the Damsel Floriana in bed in his stead, and just as he went out the Kings of Armenia and Tessancy were entering to see him, but he telling them that the Knight of the Golden Image was in bed and weak with his wounds desiring to take rest they returned commanding that the Guards should let none to enter there to disturb him, and he pretending to go to the Tower where the Duke was imprisoned, went another way, and leaving all company, went out of the City into the adjoining fields where he laid himself under a fair spreading Beech Tree the Moon shining he drew out the beloved Picture viewing it with very great affection, and falling into as great a passion considering the great difficulties that he must overcome in his love to the Princess Florisbella whose Father being a Pagan would never admit of him who was a Christian to be his Son in Law, and many other difficulties he considered of, yet however he was resolved so soon as this adventure was ended, to leave all other concerns and go to her, and this passion held him so long, and became so violent, that viewing of the Picture he fell into a Trance, in which he continued until a Knight who travelled that way by the light of the Moon saw him in that condition and supposing him to be a Lady in a Trance he dismounted and used such remedies as again restored his senses and he being come to himself, & finding that he was in the arms of a Knight he wondered but

But considering what had lately hapned, he rested content; but so did not the Knight, who beholding his beautiful face was as much surpris'd and taken in love therewith, as he had bin with the Picture of the Princess Florisbella, and to that purpose he used many amorous expressions, offering his service in all obsequious manner. Don Bellianis smile^d at the Knights mistake, but however was resolved to continue him therein, & thereby make some use of it; wherefore he presently desired him to pull off his Helmet, and to declare his name and quality: To this the Knight agreed, and unarming his head discovered a very lovely face, and that young (not being above twenty five years of age,) and in order to the Ladies request, he told her that his name was Don Contumeliano of Phœnicia; being Son and Heir to the King of that Country. Don Bellianis who now further desired a boon of him, the Knight granted it: and then Don Bellianis told him that he lately left a Knight (a friend of his) in great distress, for want of a Horse and Armes, (being the next day to use them upon an urgent occasion; therefore the request he made, was, that he would so far pleasure him, as to furnish him with his. Don Contumeliano readily consented, and having delibered the Armes, helped the supposed Lady to mount, and would have kissed her hand: but Don Bellianis would not permit it, but embracing him very lovingly, told him that if he would the next day come into the City, he might see his Armes used, and that she would not fail to come again in the Evening to the place, and restore them; and thereupon he departed, leaving the Prince of Phœnicia, who not knowing what to do, lay down there to sleep till it should be time to enter the City.

In the mean time Don Bellianis traveling through the Wood, and coming to a Cave entered thereinto, and putting off his womans Apparel, armed himself as well as he could, and hid his Clothes by cutting down some boughs and spread them thereon: And the day-light approaching, he mounted his Horse and entered the City, where he had not ridden long before he saw the Prince of Phœnicia, who awaiting his coming, and knowing him by the Armour, soon mounting on

his Squire Horse, rode along with him till they arrived at the Palace; where when they came, and Don Billianis was dismounted he knew not to whom to deliver his Horse: which the Prince of Phenicia seeing, told him that his Squire should do him that service, as being bound to do him any (though unknown.) Don Billianis well enough understanding what he meant, kindly thanked him, and taking him by the hand, they passed on towards the Souldan, whom was accompanied by the King of Cyprus and his two Brothers, who were then arming themselves for the intended Combat. After the usual reverence made to the Souldan; Don Billianis told him that he had some business to impart to him, but could not do it until Duke Alfrion were present: Wherefore he was presently sent for, and brought thither by the Guards: He being come, Don Billianis acquainted the Souldan that he was to be his Champion: The Duke hearing this, did in all obliging manner render him many thanks, and freely put his Cause and Life into his hands. The Knight having proceeded thus far in his designe, desired to see who was the Dukes Enemy and accuser: That am I, said the King of Cyprus fiercely, (thinking to affright him) and now you have seen me do you still continue your resolution of fighting? Yes, replied Don Billianis, I shall now do it to chuse; for by your outward appearance I cannot imagine one so monstrous as you are, can be Master of no virtues, and therefore I beleive your accusation false. You may judge if this speech of Don Billianis did not enrage the furious Gyant, who now called out that they might presently begin the Combat: whereupon the Prisoners were sent for into the field; the Duke was there already, the Princess was soon after brought: But Don Billianis being sent for, and the Guards seeing him (as they supposed) lye sick in his Bed, they at the request of the Damosel that attended, went to the Souldan and acquainted him with the low condition of the Knight; he was contented that he might be excused from coming into the field: And all things being in readiness for the Combat; and the Princess Don Brianel and Arselio

un-

understanding that the Duke was provided of a Champion, they were glad thereof, and entered the field; their Shields were borne by the two Kings of Armenia and Tessifanta, and their Helms by Duke Gerirano & the Prince of Brandalia; Don Contumeliano carried both Lance and Shield of the Golden Image; these Knights meeting saluted one another courtously, and Don Billianis caused his Armour to be closer buckled on; and now did Don Billianis mount his Horse with his usual dexterity, but he strained himself so much that his wounds bled afresh through his Armour. The two Princess Aurora and Persiana (who sat on a Scaffold together) seeing that, and beleiving it was Don Billianis, called to him, and so perswaded him that he discovered himself to them. The Cerimonies of the field being performed, they all fir ran one against another: Don Billianis undertooke the Gyant, and two Princes the two Brothers; the last four were by the fury of their Encounter forced to leave their Saddles, all were wounded; but Don Brianel was in the worst condition, having one foot so intangled in his Stirrop that he could not rise. Most furious was the Encounter of Don Billianis and the Gyant, for Don Billianis his arme was run through and fastned to his body with a piece of the Gyants lance that stuck in it: and the Gyant was thrown to the ground with great fury; Don Billianis was forced to dismount to encounter the Gyant, who made up to him; but before he dismounted, seeing Don Brianel's foot ingaged in his Stirrop, and the Gyant (his adversary) ready to mischief him, he threw down the King of Cyprus while he was on Horse-back, and then leaping off; he went to assist Don Brianel, but was hindered by the Gyant his adversary; and in short time the King of Cyprus being agen on his feet, being as much enraged as any Tyger, came all and assaulted him so that he was forced to defend himself against two, who both gave him many weighty strokes, which did so enrage him that he gave the Kings brother (who had annoyed him) so puissant a stroke on the Helm that it was cut in two, and wounded him on the head so that he was astonished, but withall his Sword flew in

pieces, and he thereby left without a weapon. Great was the fear and sorrow of the two Princesses, of Duke Alfrian, and of the Damsels of the Tower, who looked from thence to behold the Combat, and of the Prince of Poenicia, by the badness of whose Sword the life of the valliantest Knight in the World was in great danger : in fine all his friends lamented, and his foes rejoiced. The King of Cyprus advanced to finish the Combat with one blow he intended to give him, but he was mistaken, for Don Billianis seeing his intent, threw the piece of his Sword that was in his hand at the Gyant with such fury that it again felled him to the ground, and then considering what he had to do, and seeing a Symiter on the ground, which the Gyants brother had let fall when he was so wounded on the head, he soon took it up, and leaving the fight, went to Don Brianel's horse and cut the girths, and thereby enabled him to stand on his feet. The Prince Arfilco had endeavoured to assist Don Billianis when he was in that extremity, but he found enough to do with the Gyant he had engaged. And now Don Billianis again engaged with the King of Cyprus, and they wounded each other in marvelous manner ; but the Gyant had the worst, losing his left arme with a blow Don Billianis gave him. Don Brianel being at liberty undertook the other Gyant, who having lost his Symiter (which Don Billianis had recovered) fought with a mighty Mace, they wounded one another very pitteously ; and now the Combat was equally maintained one to one ; they had now fought five hours, when the King of Cyprus being out of breath, and retiring to breath, Don Billianis took the opportunity to draw out the piece of Lance from his arm that had all the time remained there ; then they engaged again, and Don Billianis begining to be faint, and determining to finish the Combat, was resolved to venture one blow from the Gyant, so he ran in upon him, and when his arm was lifted up (he seeing the unarmed place) ran his Sword into his very heart, so that he fell down dead ; and he himself was so wounded with the blow the Gyant had given him, that he fell down in a trance, but he soon after arose, and saw

Arfilio

Arfilco with one blow cut off one of Gyants Legs, and with the next his head ; and the like did Don Brianello to the other, though the Souldan commanded the contrary, and the Gyant yielded himself vanquished, but he died as well as his Brothers, and now great joy was made over all the field for this great Victory.

CHAP. IX.

How the Souldan would not release the Prisoners, and how Don Billianis departed the City undiscovered, and how the Kings of Armenia and Tessifanty devised a means to see them at liberty, and he revenged on the Souldan. The strange adventure of the burning Piller finished by Don Billianis, and of Contumeleano's Love passions, and the strange Cure, and Don Billianis's return to Prison undiscovered.

The Battle being ended, the Princess Persiana descended the Scaffold, to give thanks to the Knights that had taken so much pains on her behalf, and the more particularly applyed her self to the Knight of the Gilden Image, and so did Duke Alfiron, for that it was on his behalf that he undertook the Combat ; Don Bellianis replied that he had done no more then he ought, being bound to relieve all distressed persons by order of Knighthood. And now he knowing that as the Combat was finished, it was necessary to desire the enlargement of all the Prisoners ; he therefore went to the Souldan to demand it ; But the Souldan being displeased with what had passed, had commanded that his Daughter and the Duke should be both returned to Prison, although Don Bellianis cryed to him for their deliverie yet he would not yield thereto ; Don Bellianis seeing this and being discontent thereat, refused to go with his Companions Don Brianel and Arfilco to have his wounds cured as they desired, but left them all and the City, being only followed by Don Contumeliano. The Knights and the Princess Aurora returned to their Lodgings, and there their main discourse was

was about the ballour of their Companion, whom they supposed to be the Prince of Phœnicia, talking of several particulars of his mighty Encounters with the Giant. And now there being great need, they were disarmed and laid in Beds to have their wounds dressed. The Princess Aurora having seen that done, went to the Pallace to the Princess Persiana, who at the request of Don Billianis had received her liberty, but the Souldan continued his anger against Duke Alfron, and was so highly displeased with Don Brianel the adventurous Knight, because he would not spare the life of the King of Cyprus brother, when the Souldan requested it, that he commanded him to depart his Kingdom on peril of life. He consented to obey him in dute days, but resolved to return and be revenged on him for his injustice. The Souldan being attended on by a Guard of 10000. men reckoned himself secure, and although the Kings of Armenia and Tessiancy desired him to keep his promise yet he refused it; they seeing themselves slighted, went to the Dukes Pallace to visit the wounded Knights, where they contrived a way for the Dukes delivery, which was soon after put in execution, to the great loss and effusion of much blood that was shed in the effecting thereof.

Don Billianis having left his Companions and the City travelled through the fields, where supposing himself alone he again renewed his thoughts of the Princess Florisbella, and he was in so deep a study and contemplation about her, that he forgot he was followed by Don Contumeliano, who seeing him enter a Wood, asked him his reason why he so soon wounded left the City for that Desert place, and also to see a fair Damsel that he had the evening before met withal; Don Billianis in short time discovered himself to the party he enquired after, which Contumeliano understanding and being astonished and confounded at his mistake, he several times founded, out of which he could not be recovered by all the remedies that Don Billianis or Contumeliano's Page could use, so that he lay as if he had been dead. This grief and the loss of much blood that Don Billianis had lost by his wounds, brought

brought him into a very low condition, and he made complaints against his ill fortunes, whilst he was in this condition, he heard and saw a beast, the most deformed that could be imagined, who approaching him he arose, taking his Cartelar in his hand to assail him, but at his approach the beast vanished, and a Pillar with a Letter thereon, compassed with fire appeared in his place, he stepped to the Pillar and taking the Letter and opening it, read these lines:

The Sage Bellona greeteth the Prince of Greece. I knowing by my Art the trouble thou wouldest be in for the Solitary Knight, therefore sent this remedy, which thou shalt find in this Pillar of wonders, therefore try the adventure, and thou shalt have remedy fit for the cure of thy friend.

Don Billianis was glad that a remedy was to be had, and therefore was casting himself into the fire to attain it, but was hindered by the assault of four Knights and as many Lyons, who all at once seized on him, so that he could not use his Cartelar, wherefore intending to make use of his Dagger which was at his back, he reached his hand thither, but his arm was held fast by a most beautiful Lady, at whose appearance the Knights and Lyons vanished, he wondered at the strangeness of the Adventure, but the Lady bid him not marvel, because that was called the Pillar of Wonders, where the remedy may be found for despair in love, the effects of which she causes him to see, for taking a Coal from the Pillar, and laying it on the breast of the Phœnician Prince, he straight recovered his senses and arose, giving thanks to Don Billianis for his recovery, nay that is due to this Lady only said he, and then they going to salute her, she suddenly went through the fire and vanished. They both stranged at what was past, and Don Contumeliano told the Prince that so soon as the Coal of fire was laid on his breast, he was without any pain, but he should never forget the deceit he found in that place, he then desired to know who Don Billianis was, he told him that he was called the Knight of the Golden Image, and that being prisoner, he came out in that disguise to

undertake the Combat; the Phœnician had heard of him and his adventure at the unhappy Bridge, wherefore glad he was of his acquaintance, and they then began a friendship which lasted till death. And now Don Billianis being unarmed and cloathed in Florianas garments, put the Prince of Phœnicia to the blush to remember his mistake, but they being intended to part company, Don Bellianis desired the other to go to a City about fourty miles of, called Bollera, which belonged to Duke Alfiron, and stay for him there, but before they parted they again went to the Pillar where they read as followed :

Every one now that will adventure, may have remedy for dispair in love as they shall deserve. Those that have never been overcome in Love or Arms, the sage *Medea* forbids them to make any tryal hereof.

They having read this, after a little further conference they parted, Don Contumeliano being armed and mounted rode to the place appointed, where he was highly welcomed by the Inhabitants, because he brought them news that the Duke their Lord was at liberty.

Don Bellianis after midnight arrived in the City, he went to the Souldans Pallace, which he found guarded by 10000 men, but he passing for a woman was permitted to go through them all, even to the Tower and Chamber where the two Damsels expected him, they expressed great joy for his presence, and causing him to go to bed, they dressed his wounds, and gave him some victuals, he not having eaten any since he went from thence, at their request he acquainted them with all that had happened to him since he left them, but when he told them of the passages between him and the Prince of Phœnicia, they could not stand for laughter, by the strange effects of his beauty, they came to speak of that of their Ladies the Princess Florisbella, and desired him to restore that Picture, but he made excuse still to retain it. They then discoursed of the Prince Perianeo, and he being jealous that

that he was not only a powerful Rival but doubting he might be beloved by the Princess Florisbella, asked several Questions to that purpose, which they answered with much prudence, telling him that the Princess did not love him nor did not know his Name or Quality: he only passing for the Knight of the Images, and she knew not that he was so great a Prince as to be Son to the Emperour of Persia; until he had conquered the Kingdom of Antioch and thereby dispossessed the Princess Aurora of her Kingdom, and slain her Father who was our Princess's Uncle, being her Mothers own Brother, and that for this cause she hated him. This News pleased Don Billianis very well, and now pretending he was desirous to sleep, he desired the Damsels to go to Bed, they did so, but doubting and hoping that the Knight was in love with their Lady the Princess Florisbella; and believing they might hear him utter some speeches that might clear their suspicion, they therefore arose and listened to what he should say, neither did they lose their labour, for they found him wholly taken up with discourses that discovered his love to their Princess: and being his friends they resolved at their return to their Lady, to assist him in his love with all their power, this was the nature of their discourse: so they fell asleep, and the next morning visiting his Wounds which they found in so good Condition that they assured him in ten days to be in Capacity to Travel; he was not a little glad of it, hoping in that time to travel to Babylon, there to be blessed with the sight of his Princess.

undertake the Combat; the Phœnician had heard of him and his adventure at the unhappy Bridge, wherefore glad he was of his acquaintance, and they then began a friendship which lasted till death. And now Don Billianis being unarmed and clothed in Florianas garments, put the Prince of Phœnicia to the blush to remember his mistake, but they being intended to part company, Don Bellianis desired the other to go to a City about forty miles off, called Bollera, which belonged to Duke Alfiron, and stay for him there, but before they parted they again went to the Miller where they read as followed :

Every one now that will adventure, may have remedy for despair in love as they shall deserve. Those that have never been overcome in Love or Arms, the sage *Medea* forbids them to make any trial hereof.

They having read this, after a little further conference they parted, Don Contumeliano being armed and mounted rode to the place appointed, where he was highly welcomed by the Inhabitants, because he brought them news that the Duke their Lord was at liberty.

Don Bellianis after midnight arrived in the City, he went to the Souldans Pallace, which he found guarded by 10000. men, but he passing for a woman was permitted to go through them all, even to the Tower and Chamber where the two Damsels expected him, they expressed great joy for his presence, and causing him to go to bed, they dressed his wounds, and gave him some victuals, he not having eaten any since he went from thence, at their request he acquainted them with all that had happened to him since he left them, but when he told them of the passages between him and the Prince of Phœnicia, they could not stand for laughter, by the strange effects of his beauty, they came to speak of that of their Ladies the Princess Florisbella, and desired him to restore that Picture, but he made excuse still to retain it. They then discoursed of the Prince Periano, and he being jealous that

that he was not only a powerful Rival but doubting he might be beloved by the Princess Florisbella, asked several Questions to that purpose, which they answered with much prudence, telling him that the Princess did not love him nor did not know his Name or Quality: he only passing for the Knight of the Images, and she knew not that he was so great a Prince as to be Son to the Emperour of Persia; until he had conquered the Kingdom of Antioch and thereby dispossessed the Princess Aurora of her Kingdom, and slain her father who was our Princess's Uncle, being her Mother's own Brother, and that for this cause he hated him. This News pleased Don Billianis very well, and now pretending he was desirous to sleep, he desired the Damsels to go to Bed, they did so, but doubting and hoping that the Knight was in love with their Lady the Princess Florisbella; and believing they might hear him utter some speeches that might clear their suspicion, they therefore arose and listened to what he should say, neither did they lose their labour, for they found him wholly taken up with discourses that discovered his love to their Princess: and being his friends they resolved at their return to their Lady, to assist him in his love with all their power, this was the nature of their discourse: so they fell asleep, and the next morning visiting his Wounds which they found in so good Condition that they assured him in ten days to be in Capacity to Travel; he was not a little glad of it, hoping in that time to travel to Babylon, there to be blessed with the sight of his Princess.

CHAP. X.

How Prince *Arselio* and the two Kings of *Armenia* and *Tessifan* in the night set upon the *Souldan* in his Palace and released the Prisoners, and of the great valour of the Princes, and *Don Billianis*, and of the great slaughter they made of the *Souldans* Guard, and how the *Souldan* commanded his Cousin *Caroli* and to raise a very great Army to pursue them, and bring back his Daughter. And of the dangerous fight that was between the two Armies, and how by the assistance of *Don Contumeliano*, they obtained a great Victory.

Prince *Arselio* and the two Kings of *Armenia*, *Tessifan* understanding that the *Souldan* continued obstinately willful in his determination of keeping the Duke & Knight of the Golden Image Prisoners; resolved to release them by force, and that *Don Billianis* might be acquainted with their resolves, they sent the Princess *Aurora* to him. He hearing of their determination, gave her great thanks, and with further instructions and advice, that six days hence they should assault the *Souldan's* Palace, and set the Duke at liberty; and take with him the Princess *Persiana*, that the Prince's *Arselio* and *Don Brianel*, should wholly employ themselves in that affair, and as for him being Master of his good Sword he would not fail to be with them at their first assault. That it would be necessary for her to take leave of the *Souldan*, and travel towards the Duke's Country; where she might stay till they came to her, and that she would take the two Damosels with her, and also that she would advise the Princess *Persiana* of all their resolves, that she might be ready to go with them at the time appointed, as he knew she would. The Princess *Aurora* having these instructions, went to the Princess *Persiana*, who consented to all that had been proposed, being very desirous that their attempts might have the success they all desired. And now all things being agreed on, they put themselves in readiness

diness for execution, and many motions were made to the *Souldan*, for delibering the Knight of the Golden Image, and the Duke, but he would not hear of any such matters resolving to keep the Duke Prisoner, till the return of his Son *Perianeo*, whom he daily expected, and then to put him to death; so that he would not yield to his delivery. The Princess *Aurora*, being in readiness to depart would however take leave of the *Souldan*, and therefore going to his Palace, and being in his presence she boldly told him, That instead of Courtesies which she expected from so mighty a Prince she had received injuries. He answered her very courteously but withal, as obstinately as before refusing to do any thing but what was his own will; which *Don Arselio* who was present hearing, he could not forbear some threatening Language: but the *Souldan* replied, he nothing esteemed him nor his Companions nor their power, but commanded him to speak no more, but instantly to be gone out of his Dominions. He would have replied but the Princess would not permit: and so taking leave, they left the City, being accompanied six Miles of their way by the chiefest Nobility of the place, who then returned and that Evening the Prince *Arselio* did so likewise, where he put things in a posture to be executed the next Evening: commanding all the men for the more commodious execution of their design to keep their Rendezvous at the King of *Armenias* Palace. The *Souldan* though he was thus resolute, yet was he not without his great care, fear and troubles, hardly trusting any person with his Watch and Centinels: whom he in person often visited. His Daughter the Princess was likewise much troubled at her father's willfulness, but she was in hopes to be redeemed out of his Power, by the Knight of the Golden Image, and his Companions.

The next day, was all the Knights Mustered by *Arselio*, *Don Brianel*, and the two Kings who caused them all to be mounted expecting further Order.

Don Billianis his Armor was by his Dwarf, carried to the place where the Princess *Aurora* stayed. And now these

these Troops, having the word; Phœnicia given to them marched to the Palace, there they began their assault most resolutely; but were by the Souldan's forces, resisted as stoutly: it was the beginning of the night, and they could not see one another, but they had also their Word, whereby they distinguished one another. The entrance into the Palace was so strongly Guarded, that although Don Brianel, Arselio, did their best, yet could not they force their passage. Don Billianis in the mean time was not idle, for he having heard the Alarm, only armed with his good Sword: descended the stairs to go out, but he was set upon by the Guard; the Captain intended him a great blow, but he received it on his Sword, and cut off one of the Captains Legs, and pulled his Shield from his Arm, which he having fastned to his own, now was so bold with his Enemies, that he ran upon them, and in short time had killed thirty of the boldest: The rest running away, he them plucking the Armour of one of the dead Knights, Armed himself therewith, and issuing out of the Prison entered the Palace, where he saw the Souldan by the light of many torches: who with a Troop of Knights, was going to defend the entrance of the Palace. Don Billianis, seeing him, made up towards him; and with a loud cry, cryed out, Behold, false Souldan, your greatest Enemy, it is I, *The Knight of the Golden Image*: who am come to take Vengeance on you for your injustice towards me.

Great was the amazements and fear of the Souldan and his Knights; who put themselves in order to defend their Lord: But Don Billianis mangle their multitudes flew amongst them like a Wolfe amongst a flock of Sheep, and made them flee away as fast: and the Souldan himself, breaching the danger made his escape out at a Window into a back Garden, but he was much bruised with the fall, as also, were the rest that followed him. Don Billianis left them to see how his Companions fared, but that the Souldans men defended the Stairs, he thereto assaulted them behind with such violence, that they thinking themselves encompassed

on

on both sides with numerous Enemies some fled, and others lost their lives, in their defence. Don Billianis and Arselio, went to the Princess Persiana's Quarters, and seized on her and some of her Damosels forcing them away with them, but they were met by Don Brianel, and Duke Alfrian, who had been delibered by him and was now come to see the Princess, who was very joyful at his sight; and now all being finished that was intended; the Retreat was sounded, but they could hardly be obliged, the Souldiers being engaged in plundering the Palace: but they were drawn off, and by Don Billianis's Command, Marched away towards the Dukes Country, he and all the rest of the Company marching the next day to the place where they were stayed for by the Princess Aurora. And now great was the joy of the two Princess, Persiana and Aurora, and of Duke Alfrian and indeed all the rest that their project had so well taken, and that they were so far out of the Souldans power: and many thanks was returned to Don Billianis for the great service he had done them, the two Kings were also with them, and resolved to continue their assistance in all things.

If the Knights and Ladies were pleased with their Victory, the Souldan was as much displeased at his loss, and his grief was increased when he understood, that Duke Alfrian was released, and that his Daughter the Princess Persiana was taken away: He was carried out of the Garden into his Bed, where he was almost distracted with grief and anger. He called for a Cousin of his who was named Caroliano; and who indeed was a very valiant Knight, him he commanded to raise all the forces he could in the City, and pursue his enemies, and bring back his Daughter. Caroliano in obedience to his Commands, did all that he could upon so sudden a warning, and soon mustered together forty thousand men, who being armed, he led out of the City: They kept no Order in their March but made all possible haste to overtake their enemies, before they should get into their own City and there be fortified and Relieved. They made a halt at one City by the way,

and

and intended to stay there all night, but being informed that the Duke and his party intended by the next day at Dawn, to be within his own City of Bollera, they altered their intention and Marched on all night, hoping to prevent them; and by break of day he espied them, at which sight he caused Trumpets to be sounded. Don Billianis hearing this, and looking behind: seeing so great a Company, supposed them to be (what they were) Enemies, and although their Troop was far less, yet he resolved to oppose them. In an instant the Princes's were set apart with a Guard of five hundred valiant Knights; and he having encouraged his men, went in Company of Duke Alfran, the two Kings and his two Companions, to meet his Enemies. Caroliano had in this time put some order to his disordered Forces disposing them into two bands: one he Commanded himself, and the other he left to be Conducted by his Brother Boraldo. They were now near one another, and therefore soon met, but with such fury, that many Knights were discomfited at the first Encounter. Don Billianis and his Company performed Wonders in the fight, killing multitudes, but so great was the number of their Enemies Forces above their's, that the dead nothing discouraged the living; and their two Commanders Caroliano and Boraldo, were such valiant Knights, that they much encouraged their Forces by their Example. They several times met with Don Billianis and his Companions: and being assisted by their great numbers, much endangered and wounded them. Boraldo giving Don Billianis two wounds and two blows together, one on the side and another on his head: cutting the Buckles of his Helmet and leaving his head unarmed; but Boraldo was with one other from Don Billianis thrown wounded down to the ground: Caroliano seeing that, killed Don Billianis's Horse, and did him some more mischief, so that he was at that time in great danger, but by his great force and valour, he escaped with the loss of the lives of many of his enemies who opposed him. The Kings of Armenia, and Tessifany performed valiantly, but were in

in danger to be taken Prisoners in this mean time; a party that was appointed by Caroliano, wheeled about a little and came to the place where the Princes were Guarded, they assaulted their Guards who defended them with much valour, but not so but that the Princes were in great danger to be taken, had they not been relieved by a fresh Troop of well appointed Knights, who were friends, and Commanded by the valiant Prince Don Contumeliano of Phoenicia who being known by his Armour brought great joy to Duke Alfran and his forces, who were then in low Condition. He first relieved the Ladies and put them out of fear of their Enemies, and then with great courage assisted the Duke and his Forces, he ranged about the field aiding those that were in greatest need, and at length he came to the place where Don Billianis was engaged with a multitude of enemies: there he saw him do wonders. Boraldo being nere, and seeing Don Contumeliano, believing it was he that had killed the King of Cyprus, and knowing him to be a good Knight, durst not come boldly before him, but lifting up his Sword gave him a mighty blow behind. Don Billianis seeing it, supposed he would fall from his Horse, but he only stooping turned about and gave Boraldo a great blow, which being seconded by one from Don Billianis, who was come to his assistance; felled him from his Horse dismounting and taking off his Helmet, and believing him dead, he did not cut off his Head as he intended, though it had been better he had: and these two Valiant Princes, Don Billianis and Contumeliano, saluted each other.

Don Billianis his Horse being killed he mounted on that of Boraldo's, and then falling agen upon their Enemies, they soon vanquished them, so that they fled and were pursued by their Enemies that an infinite number were slain, in all five and twenty thousand of the Souldans: and not above two thousand of the Dukes forces. For this Victory thus obtained, they all rendered thanks to the Gods, only our three Christian Princes gave thanks to that alone God to whom it was due. The Princes's were met, and congratulated

congratulated each other, and all rendered great thanks to the Prince of Phœnicia as thinking himself more than ordinarily obliged to him for being his Champion in his late Combat, and would have kissed his hands, but the Prince of Phœnicia being minded to undervalue them all and not being desirous to receive honour for that which he had not deserved, did in publick tell all the Company that it was not he that had the honour to finish that dangerous Combat: but the Knight of the Golden Image in his Armour, and the manner how he lent it him. This was surprising news to them all, and caused several discourses, but all being over they put forward to Bolleræ; although Don Billianis was of advice to return back to Persopolis and destroy it, which he said at (that time, might be done with ease) but the Princess Persiana dissuaded him, and so they putting on, arrived at Bolleræ: where they were entertained at the Dukes Palace, and their wounds dressed: the two Princesses Don Billianis and Contumeliano, taking up their quarters there.

CHAP. XI.

How the Souldan being enraged at the overthrow of his Army, raised 300000. Horse-men, thinking to be revenged on the Duke and Princes. How the Duke and Persiana were Married and of the great joy, and of the strange Adventures in Journeying.

The Souldans Army being thus overcome, fled and dispersed themselves leaving much booty to their enemies, some mingled themselves amongst the victors, and there understood by Don Contumeliano's discourse, that it was the Knight of the Golden Image, that had vanquished the King of Cyprus. When it was dark some of the Souldans Knights searched for the bodies of Caroliano and Boraldo, to carry them to Persopolis Caroliano was found alive and in pretty good case as to his senses; but Boraldo though

he was not dead, was still in his Trance, they put them both on Horseback and a man to support each of them, and so carried them to the City: although the Souldan was mightily troubled when he heard of the discomfiture of his Forces: and complaining against his Gods, Raged like a mad man, yet was he very well pleased when he saw his two Kings-men brought back and ordered them to be placed in a Bed in his own Chamber, that the greater Care might be taken in the cure of their Wounds. The Knights returned, told him that he was mistaken in believing that it was the Prince of Phœnicia that fought with and vanquished the King of Cyprus; for although there was such a one, and he a very valiant Knight, yet it was not he, but the Knight of the Golden Image, who had come out of his Prison to that purpose. The Souldan was surprized at this news, and said: that he might have discerned it by the Blood that issued out of his Wounds through his Armour before he began the Combat: but his hard Fortune had blinded his Eyes, that had occasioned all this mischief to fall upon him, which however he was resolved to revenge and to that end, caused Proclamation to be made throughout all his Dominions, to cause all able to bear Arms, in two Months, to come to Persopolis: and by this means he gathered mighty Forces, for within one Month he had Mustered together thirty thousand valiant Horsemen with which Army, he questioned not but to be revenged of, and vanquish his enemies, to overcome and subdue the Kingdom of Asia, and to pass further against the Grecian Emperors. All this he intended, and only waited for the return of his Son Periano, whom he had caused to be sought for in several Countreys.

Don Billianis and his Companions being now at rest and ease, were safe cured of their Wounds, only that of Don Billianis which he had received at his heart by the sight of the Picture of the beautiful Princess Florisbella. The grief that he received for his absence from her caused him to consider of the joy that the Duke Alfran and Persiana enjoyed in

being together, and that it would be fully consummated if they were married, therefore he judging it a convenient time, propos'd it to the Princess and the Duke who joyfully receiv'd the proposition, and appointed the Wedding-day to be solemnly kept ten dayes after, against which time great preparations were made by all the Knights for a solemn Turnament then to be held: and understanding of the great preparations of the Souldan, they sent to all their friends and Allies for their assistance.

Don Billianis being thus employ'd that he could not go to Babylon, and his Princess did somewhat console herself in discoursing with her two Damoisels about her, and at other times he talk'd with the Princess Aurora about her affairs in Antioch; and concluded it necessary to write a Letter and send it by Don Brianel unto one that was Governor there. This was done and Don Brianel dispatched away accordingly.

And now the intended Wedding day being come, it was kept with as much solemnity as their affairs would permit for they kept 8000. armed men as a Guard always in a readiness. The Princely Bridgroom and Bride being married with the usual solemnities and dinner being ended, and some Dancing over, the Knights that were to perform that dayes Tilting as Challengers enter'd the field, they that were appointed for the first day, were Arselio, Contumeliano and a valiant Cousin of his, called, Florispiano of Swevia, who that day before he lost his Stirrups dismounted thirty Knights, whose Shields were hung up in token of his Conquest. Leabe was demanded for four strange Knights that were at the City Gates to enter and try their fortunes, they were accordingly admitted: three of them was armed alike, in Rose coloured Armour, on their Shields were Eagles both Black and White. The fourth Knight was Armed in Black, and on his Shield was the Wheel of fortune: and a Knight on the top of it but tumbling down with this Motto:

He

He that doth presume so high
Deserveth on the Ground to lye.

He appeared to be a very valiant Knight, and approaching to the Scaffolds where the Duke sat, asked who was the chiefest of that Company, the King of Armenia replied: that there was none chief or above an other, being all friends, and if he had any thing to say, he might speak it unto all: then said he, my desire is, that we may have freedom, to Just and return unknown if we please: That is granted said the Duke: but said the Knight, methinks it would be better for you, who I suppose to be the Duke and this day married, to mount your Horse and try your own valour rather then sit there to behold others.

Don Billianis to this replied that there was no need thereof, there being so many Knights besides, that were all on his behalf ready to do it for him. The Black Knight seeing this, prepared for the Just; but one of his Companions went first and ran against Florispiano who bravely received him and caused him to measure his length on the Ground, he himself being much shaken, the vanquished Knights Shield was placed amongst the rest higher then them all, which so angered. The Black Knight that he would not let the rest proceed but ran himself against Florispiano, who was thrown to the Ground: the Black Knight passing on, easily losing one Stirrup.

The Prince of Phenicia then encountered the Black Knight who was termed the Knight of Fortune: but they both had the fortune to sit their Horses this first Encounter: and Contumeliano had the worst of the two, at which all the Company much admired, but more especially Don Billianis who was very desirous to know who this Knight should be, but the Princess Persia soon resolv'd him of that doubt, by telling him that she very well knew that it was Prince Periancoo her Brother; and she believ'd he came to be the death of Duke Alfron. That shall not be at this time

H 2

time replied Don Billianis so long as I live : and so commanded his Armour to be brought him. In the mean time the Knight of Fortune had so wounded Don Contumeliano that he forced him from his Horse, he himself being wounded in several places ; Prince Arselio seeing this, began his Encounter against the Knight of Fortune with great violence, but they both kept their Saddles : and so they did the second, but at the third they both being equally enraged, met with such violence that Arselio was thrown to the Ground : and the Knight of Fortune was so shaken that he could hardly avoid the same misfortune, and now were all the other Shields taken down, and those of the three Challengers set in their places and that by the order of Don Billianis who seeing the Knight of Fortune sole Conqueror, armed himself for the Encounter.

But Don Billianis was prevented of his intention by the arrival of two strange Knights armed with White Armour, whereon was engraven many Imperial Crowns, who desired him to spare the labour of arming himself and permit them to try their fortunes ; he courteously permitted them so to do, and one of them wanting a Shield he lent him his, whereon was the Picture of his Princess. He being thus furnished, went to the Knight of Fortune, and propounded, that if they should be dismounted by their Horses defects, that then they might proceed to Combat on foot : to this the Knight of Fortune readily consented, and so they began their Encounter ; but in the mean time the other Knight of the Crowns having invited the other Knights of the Eagles to break their Lances : they accepted his propositions, but were in their Encounter overthrown. But now the two valiant Knights of Fortune and of the Crowns, began their courses spurring their Horses with so much violence, that their Lances pierc'd their Shields and Bodies and their Horses falling dead under them, they were also forced to the Ground : Never did the Spectators see so fierce an Encounter, nor was the Shield of Don Billianis till now pierced with any Weapon. The Armes of the Knight

Knight of Fortune were the best in the World, being made by the wise Frison, against which no Enchantment would prevail. Don Billianis supposed the two Knights to be dead, and was going to see, when behold they arose and seeing what condition they were in, they were so enraged that drawing their Swords they did cut and wound each other in many places ; when they were tired with fighting with their Swords, they went to wrestling but little prevailed against one another, and they continued till night ; when the Princess Persiana desired Don Billianis to bid them give over, saying it was great pity that two such valiant Knights should thus destroy each other, he went to them and desired them to leave off, but they would not till they had appointed to meet thirty days after in the Valley of the three Fountains, and then and there to finish their Combat. The Knight of Fortune was angry with Don Billianis for disturbing him and would not stay though he was entreated ; which Don Billianis seeing, bestowed a Horse on him instead of his own that had been killed ; and so he taking leave departed with his Companions.

The Princess Persiana did not guess amiss, for the Knight of Fortune was her Brother Perianeo ; and his Companions were Don Fermosel of Solsticia, the others were Brothers named, Don Crisalaneo and Don Gramalis of Thrace ; who now travelled to the City of Persepolis, to the great content of the Souldan and his forces, who for joy of the arrival of their Prince, were ready to March when he pleased.

C H A P. XII.

How the Knight of Fortune was, & the Knights of the Crowns, and the end of the Justs, and the causes of the Emperors coming. How Prince Perianeo approached the Walls of Bolleria with 300000. Horsemen : How the Emperor was gone to the three Fountains to finish the Combat with the Knight of Fortune, and of the strange effects of the Combat.

Don

DON Billianis was discontent at the departure of the Knight of Fortune, and seeing likewise the Knights of the Crown likewise preparing to depart, he desired them not to be so discourteous as the other, but to stay and have their Wounds Cured; and withal to discover themselves to him, to this the Knight that had Com-bated with the Knight of Fortune did consent, and pulling off his Helmet discovered himself to be the Emperour Don Billanco. This amazed Don Billianis and Arselio who knew him; and they ran to perform their duties to him, and in the Greek Tongue asked who was his Companion, he told them Sabian of Trebanto who had come out of Constantinople with him. The other Prince and Princess's although they knew not his true quality, (for Don Billianis told them he was his Uncle and the other his near Kinsman,) yet were they joyful and gave them very great reverence, and conducting them to the Palace, the Emperour laid in a rich bed to have his Wounds cured. The Princess Aurora knew the Emperour as having seen him before, and he did so resemble Don Billianis that setting his age aside, they were very like one another, she spake to the Emperour making her excuses, that she could not conveniently pay those high Respects that were due to his Imperial Majesty. The Emperour received her with many thanks. Sabian of Trebanto, was likewise welcomed and treated by all who enquired of him if he knew who was the Knight of Fortune, to this he answered that he did, for he was named Perianeo, Son to the Emperour of Persia; Duke Alferian hearing this, as knowing his intent was against him chiefly: and that now the Souldan would not be long ere he approached with his forces; against which he knew he must make large Provisions; but he being accompanied by such Valiant Knights feared the less, and going to Bed to his Wife had an enjoyment of that which he had so long desired. He being in Bed, Don Billianis only accompanied with Prince Arselio and Sabian of Trebanto: went to visit the Centinels and Watch, and by the way enquired of Sabian the cause of his

his and his fathers coming, to which Sabian replied, that when he and the Emperour left Constantinople, they were accompanied by his two Brothers Don Clarinco of Spayn, and Don Lucydamore of Chessaly, with a great Navy of Ships, and about 200000. fighting men, all intended for Antioch; where they supposed to find him, that by the way he and the Emperour had Landed and lost their Company, and by several Adventures had arrived there. This News pleased Don Billianis who returned to the Emperour, and acquainted him with his Adventures in that Kingdom. Thus did they spend part of that night, and the rest in sleeping: And the next day, continuing the Fests, Sabian of Trebanto being Challenger won the Honours of the day. A full Month they rested quietly by reason of the Winter, which hindered the Souldan in advancing to them. Don Billianis grieved for the absence of his Princess, and would not be comforted by the Damoisels nor Princess Aurora, to whom he had discovered his love, but grieving worse and worse; his father perceiving of it, demanded the cause, but could not learn it of him, so that being in the fields, the Emperour asked of him the way to the Valley of the three Fountains, telling him that he was by appointment there to meet with the Knight of Fortune. Don Billianis told him where it was, and would have gone with him but he would not permit it, only taking a Lance from his Dwarf departed and left him, but he intended to go back and frustrate the Battel, as you shall presently hear; but first I must acquaint you with other matters.

The Sage Frison, who was the greatest Magician of his Age, who lived in Persia; and there writ this Mighty and Renowned History: Was a great friend to the Prince Perianeo; and employed all his skill and industry in doing what in him lay, for the Persian Prince. For which purpose, he had intended for him a very rich and good sword which Meda had forged for her Lober Jason, and afterwards left to the House of Greece, in such a place as Don Billianis had won it. This he intended for his Prince, but he

ing that Don Billianis was Master of that, made him another which equalled it in richness and strength, and in every thing did all he could for the House of Persia. But turning over his Books in a place where he dwelt, which was called, The Desert of Death: and there finding that although the Persian was very valiant and so that few could equal him, yet he might be in danger in this Combat; not being able to know what would be the success and end of it, he therefore was resolved to disturb the Combat in such manner as shall presently understand.

Don Billianis having left the Emperor his father, hastened to the City and there meeting with Sabian of Trebanto, he prayed him to lend him his Armour, Sabian did accordingly and now he being thus Armed, was in all things like his father, and mounting his Horse he made haste to the place where he supposed he should meet with Perianeo. He went by the place where he saw the Emperor his father lying under a Tree, and looking about he saw a convenient place where he intended to stay till Perianeo came. The Persian Prince was not mindful of his promise, but having 300000. Horsemen besides footmen in his Company he had the day before left Persopolis, and made such expedition in his journey, that he came undiscovered to the walls of Bollera; but Duke Alfran and those within the City hearing of it, issued out; and then there began a very bloody doubtful Battel. Perianeo seeing both Armies engaged; and remembering his promises with the Knight of the Crowns, left them to go to the place appointed; he was then armed in a Sanguine Armour, without any device in his Shield, so that Don Billianis who expected him did not know him, but he believing Don Billianis to be his Adversary, told him that he was come to finish the Battel. They had some words before they began, whereby they understood from each other, that they both loved the Princess Florisbella, and therefore at that knowledge their anger encreased, and encountering one another they were both sorely shaken but both kept their Swords, their Swords being drawn they began a Combat.

the most furious that had ever been seen, supposing one another's forces to be more than humane. They wounded each other in many places, and complained of their ill fortunes, that they could not overcome: At last Don Billianis grew outrageous and was resolved to finish the Combat with one blow he was going to give his Enemy, but he was hindered off his intention by a Lady who appeared to him, that resembled his Princess Florisbella, who cried to him to help and deliver her from four Gyants who drew her away, he seeing that, pursued her and them, which was but an Illusion, and went down the Valley and his Armour was changed in colour, resembling that of the Prince Perianeo, who had not seen any thing of this, wondering what was become of his Adversary, wherefore he looked about for him and in his State saw the Sage Frison, who advised him not to follow his Adversary, but to return to his fathers Camp near Bollera; he knowing him to be his very good friend, did not disobey him but went thither. And there I will leave him to return to Don Billianis.

CHAP. XIII.

Of the strange Combat between Don Billianis and his Father the Emperour, (caused by the Inchantment of the sage Frison,) and how they came to know one the other, and how the sage Bellona arrived and cured them, and took Don Billianis with her, to finish a strange Adventure, how the Emperour coming to Bollera found a great Army before it, and of his strange adventure there, and of the terrible fight between the Dukes Army and the Souldan.

Don Billianis had not long pursued those imaginary Gyants before by the virtue of his Sword, the Enchantments having no force, ended, only his Armour was changed in colour, and so was that of his father whom he saw before him, and supposed him to be his enemy the Persian Prince. These mistakes were alike, and the Emperour seeing his sup-

posed enemy without a Lance, throwing away his and saving his Sword went to assault him, they both flew at one another with like fury, and gave and received many a blow, that pitiously wounded them, and the Combat lasted with great violence, until Don Bellianis giving his father a mighty blow on the Helmet, cutting the Laces, his head was disarmed, and he was about to give him another, which would certainly have slain him, but that looking on him he saw and knew him to be his father, and thereupon he cried out, Oh Heavens, what villainy hath been done by my hands, and what more am I about to do, and then unlacing his own Helmet his father knew him, great was the amazement of both, and sitting down together, they began to study how this misfortune had happened, the Emperor asking him how he came to be armed in the Plate of Persia's Armour, he replied it was not so, but belonged to Sabian of Trebanto, and they discoursing further of this matter, both concluded they had been enchanted, and resolved to depart, but they were very weak with the loss of blood. Just as they were going the sage Bellona arrived, who went to kiss the Emperors hands, but he took her up, and she knowing they had need of her assistance, gave them somewhat to eat, which when they had done, their Armour came to their right colour, and their wounds closing, they were as fresh and lusty as they had been before the Combat. And then she having given them a satisfactory answer to all their request, she told the Emperor that he must permit his Son to go with her to finish an adventure of very high consequence, he willingly consented and offered likewise to accompany her, but she denied that, desiring him to go back to the City of Bolera, where the Duke had need of him, and that when his Son had finished the adventure she intended he might return, and that it would not be long first; the Emperor was contented with their reasons, and his son having asked his blessing, which he gave him, he mounted on horseback, and went with the sage Bellona.

The Emperor travelling towards Bolera came thither by

by break of day, and wondering to see so many men in the fields, he judged them enemies, and therefore rushing among the Tents, he saw one wherein a Knight lay that was talking with several others that were near him, him he believed to be the Sophy, and near him was the Prince Perianeo, they discoursed about another Assault to the City, he hearing to them, did not mind a Knight that was Commander of these Guards, who coming near him and seeing him a stranger, asked what he made there, and delibered him to four others to carry him to Prison, but he would not permit them so to do, wounding them all one after another, and the first Knight hardly escaped him calling out for help. The Emperor hearing that, and knowing he must be gone, resolved first to do some execution, and therefore he thrust his Lance into the Tent and Bed of the Souldan, but missed of his aim, running between his arm and side, however those that were about him supposed him to be slain, and his Son went out to see who had been so bold to attempt such a deed; this being done, the Emperor with great fury passed on wounding and killing all those that were so bold to oppose him, till he came at length into his own Camp; there was he joyfully received, though they were much troubled when he told them that the Knight of the Golden Image was gone upon a certain adventure, and being arrived at his quarters he went to rest himself. The Prince Perianeo returned to his fathers Tent, who told him that this must needs be the Knight of the Golden Image, and thereupon he counted to his father the several Battles which he had undertaken and performed, I am very desirous to have further trial of his strength said the Prince, do you know him said the Souldan, yes replied he, and yesterday we began a Combat, but was hindered from finishing it by the arrival of my friend the sage Friskon. This was the discourse between the Souldan and his Son, In the mean time the Duke Alfron desired the Emperor in the absence of the Knight of the Golden Image, to take upon him the charge of General over all, he did it though unwillingly, and thereupon he murdered and divided his

his men into five Squadrons, the first of 2000 he gave to Don Contumeliano and Fiorispiano, the second to Duke Alfiron with the like number, the third to the King of Armenia & Tessanty, the fourth to Sabian of Trebanto, and the fifth to the Dukes brother, called Sallarel of the Valley, he himself only Commanding all in general. Prince Perianeos troop being very large, were also divided into Squadrons, and 40000 were particularly ordered to assault the City, so that he being so well provided of men, and all manner of Military engines, questioned not but to win the City at the first assault.

It was now the Spring time of the year, when their two Armies lay in sight of each other, and the various colours that the Souldans bore upon the points of their Spears made a glorious shew, which together with the bright shining of their Armour was very pleasant to behold.

Don Bellaneo the Emperoz being frequently used to these affairs, arising early in the morning, and ranging about the field, accompanied by Arfileo, saw an advantage that he should have over his enemies, the rising Sun then shining in their faces, which well near blinded them, he resolving to make use of this advantage, commanded his forces presently to assault them, they did so with good effect, for they were upon them, and they had done execution before they were seen by them, and in short time that first Squadron consisting of 20000 men was overcome, being either killed or wounded. The Prince Perianeo accompanied by his friends Don Fermosel Crisalaneo and Gramalis seeing this disaster, came to prevent the further proceeding of it, and therefore bringing great forces furiously assaulted the victors, and Don Bellaneo doubting he should be overpowered by the multitude of enemies, sent for Duke Alfiron to bring on the rest of their forces, the Battles being thus joyned, the Prince of Persia seeing Sabian of Trebanto, and supposing him by his Armour to be the Knight of the Golden Image, whose Armour he had on, assaulted him with mighty force, so that Sabian although he defended himself very well, yet he had miscarried, had not the

the Emperoz and other Princes his friends come to relieve him, at the same time came the Souldan himself in person accompanied by twenty Gyants, and they began a cruel fight; the Emperoz seeing Parianeo much endanger his beloved friend Sabian fighting on foot, overthrew the Persian from his horse, & killing & dismounting a Gyant, mounted Sabian thereon; the Prince of Persia foamed like a chased Boar, resolving to be revenged, and at the same time the Souldan and Duke Alfiron encountred and wounded each other on the heads, and Caroliano and Boraldo being in the Battel, very much assisted the Souldan, that was much endangered. And now they were thus engaged in the field, the City was also assaulted, and notice being given thereof to the Emperoz, he caused much of his forces to enter, and relieve the Defendants; and the night now approaching, caused all the Emperozs Knights to enter, and the Souldan and his forces retire. The two Princesses Persiana and Aurora was very joyful at the return of all the Princes although the Princess Aurora was very much concerned with the absence of Don Billianis, but being told he went with the sage Bellona, she was very well satisfied, well knowing that in her company he was in little danger. They without the City being thus repulsed were much troubled, but having every day fresh supplies of forces, they often assaulted it but with different success, for they sometimes lost, yet commonly they gained upon the Besieged, because they had not received any aid; but now we will leave them all, to prosecute the adventures of Don Billianis.

CHAP. XIV.

How *Don Billianis* and the sage *Bellona* travelled into *Egypt*, where the Emperor *Brandezar* was Enchanted, and how *Don Billianis* slew him and ended the Enchantment, and took from him a precious Ring and Armour, which no Enchantment could have power off. How the Princess *Florisbella* had been Enchanted and carried away by the same *Friston*, had not *Don Billianis* and the sage *Bellona* arrived at that very instant.

The sage *Bellona* and he travelled so long, that at length they arrived upon a high Mountain, which she told him was after the Kings name, called *Nycaon*; that it was in the Kingdom of *Egypt*, and that there was an adventure to be finished by him there, the like to which he had never accomplished; she further particularly told him, that in times past that Kingdom being Governed by a King, named *Nycaon*, he was in Contest and War with an Emperor of *Babylon*, named *Brandezar*, who so overpressed him, that he forced him to enclose himself in a City, which he straitly besieged, he not being able to resist his enemy by force, being very well skilled in Magick Art, resolved to try his skill, and leaving his City and Subjects, he by art Magick seized on *Brandezar*, and put him into such Enchantment, as was very great torment to him, and that he might be the more sensible of his pain, he put a Ring on his finger to keep him in senses, and such virtue is in that Ring, that he which wears it, shall not be offended by Enchantment. *Nycaon* having done this returned to the City, but being met by the way by his Brother, who in his absence had usurped the Kingdom he slew him, that he might still continue King, and *Nycaon* being dead was buried at the foot of this Mountain. Now (said *Bellona*) you have great need of the Ring, without which you will lose the Princess *Florisbella*, who the sage *Friston* intends to get for the Prince *Perianeo*, and nothing can hinder him but this Ring, therefore it is absolutely

ly necessary that you be Master of that, and also of the Emperors Armour, which is of the same virtue as the Ring, and will be of excellent use to you. The sage *Bellona* having given this instructions to *Don Billianis* left him, who now proceeding on, saw a fair Castle, but no way to come at it but by a Cave which looked very dismally, there he perceived a Pillar, and on it this inscription:

The little Wolf shall conduct the strongest Lyon to this strange Lodgings, to make use of my skill. He that will attempt this adventure, must disarm himself, and onely accompanied and assisted by his own valliant heart, must excel the force of my monstrous Guardians.

Don Billianis not much minding the sense of what he had read, drawing his Sword approached the Cave to enter it, but upon his first attempt it vanished. He by that knowing that he must disarm himself did so, and onely with sword in hand proceeded, but he soon fell into a most dismal dark place, where he was opposed by a monstrous Gyant, two Centaures, and as many Lyons, here he began a mercurious Combat, and not being able to hurt them with blows, he caught one of the Lyons by the throat and choked him, he attempted to force the fauchion out of the Gyants hand, which he judiciously and wounded him, but the Gyant boydded closing with him a great while, till in the end *Don Billianis* slew at him, and seizing on his fauchion, wroong it out of his hands, and with it going to strike the Centaures, they and all the rest vanished in an instant. He being now Master of the fauchion ascended a pair of stairs to a Hall, the passage or entrance to it being so narrow, that he could hardly pass through, and there he was opposed by many armed Knights, who were placed there as the Emperor *Brandezars* Guard, he being unarmed and so venturous, was wounded both in the head and legs, and much endangered, he therefore became more wary, and only defending himself against them, awaiting his opportunity, and setting on one of them, forced his

Shield from him, and now being armed therewith, he rusht in amongst them, and laid so lusty about him, that after a three hours fight they were all banquished, and now he being sorely wounded disarmed one of the dead Knights, and armed himself in his Armour, and proceeding up an other pair of Stairs, he saw on the top an ugly infernal Monster, who coming furiously against him beat him down again, he rising and again advancing, saw that monster accompanied by a terrible Dragon, he seeing them advance towards him, setting his back against the Wall, and the point of his sword against his breast, the monster ran upon it, and gave himself his death. This encounter had so weakened him, that he was forced to sit down on the stairs as he supposed, but they were soon converted into a large green yard, in the middle whereof was a Pillar with this inscription:

That Knight who hath had the courage to proceed thus far, let him enter that door, and if he can excel the Emperor *Brandezar* in valour, he shall finish the adventure.

Don Billianis being desirous to finish what he had begun proceeded according to directions.

But he was not sooner entered, but he heard great and heavy groans and lamentations, and looking about him he saw a Knight armed in a fiery Armour, as if he were in flames, and round about him were many Snakes, Adders, and Basilisks, that all seized on him, and bit him so, that he was in excessive torments causing him to roar out, and make the saddest Complaint imaginable. This was the Emperor *Brandezar*, as Don Billianis well understood by speeches he uttered in his Company. Don Billianis knowing well what he was to do, approached him; in an instant all the Snakes, Adders, and Basilisks, left the Emperor and seized upon him, and so cruelly bit him, that they made his bones rattle, he endeavouring to kill them, lost his labour, for his blows were as well bestowed in the Air as upon them, finding this, he endeavoured to get from them, and

with very great difficulty he went to the Emperors Chair and there they left him.

The Emperor *Brandezar*, seeing a Knight so near him and supposing him to be his old Enemy the King *Nysaon*, he seized on him and Don Bellianis on him, although he withdrew himself further from him, feeling a violent heat proceed from his Armour, but they struggled so together that the Emperors Chair fell, and then they separating drew their Swords and began a terrible Combat, wounding one another in most piteous manner, the Emperor was very strong and lusty and Don Bellianis weary and faint with his several Combats, but supposing that would be the last in that Adventure, he plucking up a manly Courage gave the Emperor so mighty a stroke on the Thigh, that cut it in sunder so that falling down he soon after dyed at which time there happened a great peale of Thunder, Lightning and Earthquake so that our Knight fell into a trance, but when he came to himself which was soon after, he was not only recovered of his Seases but also of his Wounds, so that he was fresh and lusty, and no Cave or Castle appeared, only the dead Bodies of the Emperor and his Knights, he disarmed the Emperor and put on his Armour, and took from him the precious Ring, which being a Carbuncle gave very great light. This done, he saw a very fair Monument exactly made and garnished, on the top was a Shield with the Emperors Armes, and this Inscription:

This Monument was Erected by *Nysaon*, in Memory of his Revenge upon *Brandezar* Emperor of *Babylon*, *Persia*, and *Trebantia*, who was Vanquished by the Hands of the best Knight in the Universe. He that shall be the Son of the brave *Lyon*, shall by force obtain the light of what is herein enclosed.

Whilst Don Billianis was beholding the rarities of the Tomb, the Sage *Bellona* arrived, to whom he recounted what he had done; and would have attempted the further Adventure of the Tomb, but she would not permit him, telling

ling him there was danger in his stay, so at her request he departed being armed in the Emperors Armour, and the bestowed a Shield on him like the Armour, and on it was the Figure of his Princess being thus accommodated, they proceeded on their Journey, where we must leave them to treat of other matters.

The Sage Frisson, having as you have heard withdrawn the Prince Perianeo from the Combat with Don Bellianis, and being returned into his own Habitation; and there consulting what further service he might do for the said Prince; and being above all things very desirous to gain the Princess Florisbella for him to Wife, and finding by his Art, that if he did not gain possession of her suddenly, it would afterwards be in vain to attempt it; he therefore resolved on the rarest Enchantment that had been seen, he being fitted with every thing, travelled to a place nere to the Walls of Babylon, there he erected a marvellous Rich Tent. The Souldan hearing of it, being accompanied by Silvyana his Empress and Florisbella his Daughter, and others went to see it, there did they hear rare harmonious Musick which being ended, there issued from the Tent four Beauteous Ladies, led by as many Knights who approaching nere the Souldan kneeled, and one of them made this speech:

Most Mighty Emperour, the Gods who have given thee so large an Empire grant the length of days, and all worldly happiness. The misfortunes of others have brought us to thy Country for relief, knowing that thou art endowed with all Princely Vertues, and therefore wilt in all things relieve the oppressed. Our Story in short is this, In yonder Tent remaineth Gorgiana King of Sofia and his beautiful Daughter the Princess Meridiana who being courted by Herodano King of the Island of Pearls; who was also a great Magitian, and refused by her and her Father, raised this strange Enchantment which in yonder Tent is seen, and setting the King and his Daughter have there placed them, where they remain Prisoners being guarded by four Knights the valliantest in the World, and although many

of

of our Kings Subjects have attempted to release him, yet were they not able, neither is it possible to be done, unless the Knight that fights with the Guardians of the Tent, be Master of a Sword which the Princess Meridiana holdeth in her hand, and which she can give only to a Lady, and that to such a one as exceeds her in Beauty, and therewith these Knights that are her Guardians may be vanquished, they released, and the Adventure finished. And now knowing that there are many fair Ladies in your Court, but more especially the Princess Florisbella your Daughter: All are therefore hither come to desire your permission, that the Ladies may try the Adventure. The Souldan and Princess were highly pleased at this strange Adventure, and promised that tryal should be made thereof; only the Souldan said that his Knights should first make tryal of their Valour against the Guardians, this was agreed upon, and they made tryal accordingly; the first that essayed it was Baltasano Prince of Numidia, Cousin to the Emperour, who was soon foil'd by the Enchanted Knights, as were all others that attempted it. And now the Ladies seeing they must make tryal of their Beauties; the Princess Florisbella went towards the Tent, and with her the Infanta Matarosa her Cousin, who had much discourse about it, for said the Princess Matarosa, I hope Cousin you will give me leave to trye the Adventure before you, for I have a very good opinion of my Beauty, and although I will not presume to compare it with yours, yet I know a Knight that would maintain my Beauty to be equal to any Ladies living, but now I think of it I must except yours, because he wears your Picture portrayed in his Shield. What presumptuous Knight is that, replied the Princess Florisbella, if he should come hither and be so bold to do it, I may chance to make him lose his head for his presumption. I know not that said the Infanta Matarosa, but I hear he is the most beautiful and valliant Knight in the whole Universe, and that he going by the Name of the Knight of the Golden Image, hath done many and incomparable Adventures in the Kingdom

Kingdom of Persia. In this discourse these two Princes continued until such time as they arrived at the Tent door, and then by consent the Infanta was first to trye the Adventure: she being led by a Knight, entered the Tent and ascended two of the three steps that led to the Princess Meridiana, so that every Body supposed she would finish the Adventure, but they were all mistaken, for she attempting to mount the third step, was thrown down; and found her self at the door of the Tent, at this the Princess Florisbella laughed, and was just ready to proceed in tryal of her fortune, when she saw a Knight enter the field armed in a very rich green Armour, adorned with Basilisks and in his Shield was her Picture drawn so naturally that it was known whose it was intended for, and by him rode an old Lady that was masked, who carried a naked Sword in her hand: they went directly to the Tent; which Frislon seeing and not at present being able to know what was intended, because our Knight, which was Don Bellianis, was Armed in the Emperor Brandezars Armour, which had power against Enchantments and the Sage Bellona had the Sword of the same Vertue, Frislon therefore being by all means desirous to get the Princess Florisbella into his possession presently transforming himself into a Monstrous Griffin, seized on her but not so suddenly but that the Knight of the Basilisks arrived, and striking a blow cut his feathers, wounded him and made him to return to his own usual form bleeding apace, but he was carried into his Tent by the Enchanted Knights. Don Bellianis seeing the Princess Florisbella faint through fear, desired her to take Courage and he would warrant her from all harm, having said so, he being instructed by the Sage Bellona what he had to do, proceeded to enter the Tent, but was opposed by the Enchanted Knights, who all set upon him, but he who had nere done any thing before his beloved Princess, resolved to conquer in despite of all opposition, and so he did forcing his way until he entered the Tent, and striking the steps with a great stroke all vanished, nothing remaining but the two dead Knights. Great was the

the wonder and amazement of all, especially of the Souldan, who seeing the Knight of the Basilisks was mounted on his horse to be gone, he went to speak to him:

CHAP. XV.

Of the great thanks that the Souldan gave to Don Bellianis for preserving his Daughter Florisbella from the Enchanter, and how Don Bellianis gave her the Ring which he took from the Emperor Brandezar, which would preserve her from all Enchantment; and how she was struck in love with Don Bellianis and of his departure. How Don Brianel arrived at Antioch.

Don Bellianis being ready to depart, was desired by the Souldan to stay, but he replied, that he was not at his own dispose being wholly guided by the Ancient Lady that accompanied him.

By this time the Sage Bellona was come to him and with her the two Princesses Florisbella and Matarosa, at whose approach he fell into a swoon, but in that time he recovered.

In this time the Sage Bellona was known by the Souldan; and received with great joy and many thanks he gave her for coming at such a time when as they had so great need of her assistance. I must confess said she, I did know you would have occasion for the assistance of this Knight, who hath greatly laboured to attend you, and without whose aid your Daughter would have been in danger; for I'll assure your Majesty he is such a one as is not equalled by few, and excelled by none. I believe it said the Souldan, by the Wonders we have seen him do, and that we may give him some reparation for the danger he hath undertaken on our behalf, I pray desire him to discover himself to us, and remain with us for some time. You must pardon him replied Bellona, for there is an absolute necessity for his present departure. In this time the two Princesses Florisbella and Matarosa were in conference with Don Bellianis and desired him to put off his Helmet, but answering them as he had

done the Souldan, that he might do no more then what the Sage Bellona would permit him; they requested her to give him leave so to do. But she replied that they must excuse her and him both for that time, in doing what they desired his life would be in great hazard, but instead of granting that request she acquainted the Princess Florisbella that her Cousin Aurora was in good health, and her two Damozels whom she had sent to attend and seek her, and that she was in Persia whither they must go to her assistance. And now Don Bellianis being about to depart, told the Princess that he was infinitely sorry that he could not at present obey her Commands, but that he would in short time, when he could be free to dispose of himself, return and attend her, and desired that in the mean time she would accept of a Ring which he presented to her, which was that of the Emperour Brandezars which he said, cost him much Blood in purchasing it only for her sake, as knowing that it would be of excellent use having the Vertue to preserve and keep her from the power of all Enchantments, and thereupon drawing off his Gauntlet he presented it to her, but she being unwilling to receive any such presents from any Knight whatsoever, did not at first accept it, till she was desired by the Infanta Matarosa so to do, and commanded by her father and withal her own inclination prompting her thereto, she took it of him and told him, that she would receive it as a Pledge of his sudden return to receive satisfaction from her father, for the service he had done them. She also desired him to acquaint her with the circumstances of the late Adventure, but he referred that Relation to the Sage Bellona, who having finished her Paration, took her leave to depart, but in this time the Princess Matarosa, seeing the reserved silence of Don Bellianis was resolved to venture a question with him, and thereupon she said: Sir Knight, I believe the Sage Bellona is so great a Mistress over you, that without her leave you dare not let your Tongue walk: Therefore I intend to ask her to give you your speech, that we may understand somewhat more from you. Ah dear Madam said he,

be. I hope you will excuse and pardon me, and not attribute my silence to rudeness or neglect, but to an other passion that at this time so overpowers my heart, that the Organs of my speech are wholly stopped thereby. But Madam, I hope ere long at my return to do you some service, that may be some part of amends for my unhamfom departure at this time; well replied the Infanta, so let it be then, and make hast that I may understand what you mean. And now the Sage Bellona, being on her departure having finished her Salutations to the Emperour, and the two Princess's; he nimbly leapt on his horse, and bowing his head to the Pommel of his Saddle, in token of Reverence, departed on his journey where we shall for some time leave him.

The sudden departure of the Knight of the Basilisks had so distempred the Princess Florisbella, that she hardly observed the motion of the Souldan, and her Mother who were returning to the City, for her eyes were so deeply engaged in looking after the Knight, that she beheld no other object; The Infanta Matarosa seeing this, called on her, and entered into discourse with her about him, until they arrived at the Court, but being arrived there, she went to her Chamber, and casting her self on her bed, she began to complain of her hard fortune, that had given her so much trouble, for the sight of one, whom she knew not, and it may be was but a poor extravagant Knight, and that the Sage Bellona as she had done her one kindness, in bringing one to relief and help her, so she had done her a greater discourtesie in bringing him to captivate her liberty and disturb her mind; she complained of the Gods, that they had permitted her to be so overcome, and then again, thinking that he might be himself one of them, for by the actions she had seen him perform, she could not judge him humane; These were her complaints, and her thoughts were so troubled, that she could not express them. The Infanta Matarosa observing her actions and sudden retirement, and judging that she was lobe stricken, had followed her and hearkened at her Chamber door to hear her complaints, but they were so disordered, that she could not

understand them, but in short time after the Princess Florisbella gave her a true account of the passions of her heart, and she received some consolation from her, who continually talked of, and expected the return of the Knight of the Basilisks. The Souldan did also expect him, and much doubted that it was the Prince Perianeo of Persia, because he refused to discover himself; but some of his Nobility, who had seen and observed them both, alleged the contrary, and that this became his Armour more compleatly; this were their thoughts and imaginations, wherein we shall at present leave them.

We have already told you that Don Brianel was dispatched away for Antioch, to take the best order he could in the affairs of the Princess Aurora; and he made such expedition in his Journey, not being hindered by any considerable Adventure, that in short time he arrived in that Kingdom, and coming to a City called Miriana, which was within twelve miles of Antioch, he there took up his quarters at the house of one of the best Knights in the Countrey, who although he was not poor in regard of the distractions of his Countrey, yet he was a good Knight, and Loyal to his Sovereign, as you shall understand by the sequel. Don Brianel having supped with his host, enquired what news that Countrey afforded, and who was their King; at this the Knight replied that they had in few years had several, but that their last true Sovereign Prince had been named Pompeiano, who was despised and slain by the Prince of Persia, and the Kingdom bestowed upon one Don Gallaneo, who also was lately slain, and since him another who was named Tramoilcano, and Brother to the King of Persia had seized on the Kingdom, as pretending to be nearest of Kin to the late Don Gallaneo, he at that time Reigned; and keep us all in hard and cruel Bondage, having imprisoned several of the Nobility, but especially one Damartino, who had been sometimes Governour of our Countrey under our King. But (continued Don Brianel) had your King Pompeiano any Children, he had said the best one Daughter named Aurora, but we know not whether

whether she be alive or dead; but if she be alive and should come hither (said the Prince) would the Countrey receive her and restore her to her Kingdom; That they would with all their hearts, replied the Knight, but that they are at present so kept under by the Tyrant Tramoilcano, but if there were any person to appear in her behalf, and to encourage the people much might be done on her behalf. These were the discourses between the Prince and the Knight, who further added, that the only fittest person to serve her would be Governour Damartino, if he were at liberty, but that he was strictly guarded in a Castle near the City, and that there was a Mine from the Castle to the City, even to the Palace, and that although the Guard of the Castle was but ten Knights and a Giant, yet they could quickly through that Mine go to the Palace, and raise 30000. men in arms. Don Brianel having heard all these particulars, and knowing that the Knight was a person fit to be trusted in the affairs he intended, asked him if he were willing to assist him in releasing the Governour and serving his Princess, to this the Knight replied, that although there was much hazard and danger in the undertaking, yet he would venture his life, and judge if he lost it in so good company, and in so just a cause that it was well employed, he therefore the next morning arming himself, and telling his family that he had some affairs to dispatch at Antioch, he travelled thitherwards with Don Brianel.

C H A P. XVI.

Of the strange Combat Don Brianel and Palineo performed at Antioch: and how they released Damartino out of Prison, and of a stranger encounter between Don Brianel and Palineo with two strange Knights, and how they came to know one another, and of their design to surprize the City by night, and of the strange arrival of Don Bellianis, and of the joy there was between these Princes at their meeting, and of the great victory, and how all the people rejoiced at the news of their

Don

DOn Brianel and his Companion soon arrived within sight of the stately City of Antioch, which made a pleasant and stately shew, few Cities in the Universe exceeding it in every thing, there being above 100000 families within the Walls. These two Knights being desirous to know the names of each other, Don Brianel he was called the Adventurous Knight, the other, said his name was Palineo, but said he, let me advise you not to be called by that name here, because one of that name was present at the death of Don Galaneo, and in the Battel with the King of Cyprus. Thus did they discourse, till they arrived at the City where there was a Turnament and Just held between several Knights and Gyants, but their arriving turned it to earnest, for after they had done some execution with their Lances they drew their Swords, and flew about them, doing great execution upon the Gyants Knights, which the Gyants seeing they both fell upon Don Brianel, he judging their intention spurred his Horse and came within them, so that their blows were ineffectual, only his Shield was cleft in sunder, but he taking his advantage, ran his Sword through the body of one of them, so that the Sword appeared at his back, and fell down dead to the Earth; and at the next stroke cut off the other Gyants arm, who seeing himself maimed fled roaring away. King Trancoleano seeing this was astonished and displeased so highly, that he commanded all his men to seize on those two Knights, purposing to be revenged on them, and which Palineo seeing and being desirous to prevent the danger, called to Don Brianel to depart, he seeing himself so stricktly beset thought it was best to follow his advice, and therefore retired, but the King still commanded his Knights to pursue them, and bring them dead or alive to his presence, but they knowing the danger spurred away so fast, and (Palineo being well acquainted with all the private corners of the Country) went till they came to an odd Garden, near to which was a Shepherds Cabin, there looking about and seeing none pursue them, they entered and there dismounting, they found provision for their Horses, and staying until it was night they

they then resolved to issue out from thence, and visit the City for provisions, and to hear what news was at the Pallace.

Palineo finding a Shepherds Cloak in the Cabin, and he having disarmed himself and put on the Cloak, went out of the Cabin to the City, and passing for a Shepherd entered with the King, who had been in pursuit of the two Knights that had slain his Cousins, he entering the Pallace went to the Mines mouth, he found the door fastned with an old weak Lock, having seen this and gotten some victual, he returned therewith to Don Brianel, who then slept together, and made hast to return to the Pallace before it should be too late, whereupon they armed themselves, and Don Brianel took the Shepherds Cloak to cover his Armour, and Palineo wanting one supplied himself of one, by taking the next Pages Cloak that he met, at which account the Prince laughed, and they made sport together. And now they being both so well supplied, they arrived at the Pallace, where although they were seen and questioned, yet they passed by telling the Guards that they had been in search of the two Knights that had killed the Gyants, and now being in the Pallace, they went to the door of the Mine, which Palineo soon broke open, and being entered they fastned it on the inside with a Chain, and passing through the Mine, they at length came to the other door that brought them into the Castle, which they opened, and fastning it again, and feeling in the dark for the Prison door, found it, but fast looked, then they consulted what they were best to do, first they agreed upon a watch word, that they might know each other, and then going to the Castle Gate, Palineo seeing it fast locked, and believing it necessary to secure that, he took some Earth and threw into the Lock at the Key hole, that they who were within might not at pleasure issue out thereat, then all their difficulty was to get open the Prison door, and deliver Damartino who was therein Prisoner, and that they attempted to do but were heard by one of the servants, who cried out that Strangers were in the Castle and had surpris'd it. The Gyant and Knights hearing this arose and armed themselves, and

at once six Knights and the Gyant came upon them; Don Brianel desiring Palineo to undertake the Knights, and keep them in play while he assaulted the Gyant, Palineo did so, and the Prince seeing the Gyant raise a mighty mace to give him a puissant stroke therewith, ran within him, so that the Gyant missed of his blow. The Gyant being disappointed of his intentions that way, caught the Knight and intended to stifle him between his arms, but our Prince being sensible of the danger he was in drew a Dagger, and gave the Gyant two or three terrible wounds therewith, which he seeing let go the Knight and drew a Curtelax and stroke at Don Brianel so that he sorely wounded him, but Don Brianel soon gave him his payment, for at the next blow he cut off one of his legs, and thereupon he fell to the Earth as if a Colver had fallen and soon after died. This done Don Brianel went to his Companion, who had behaved himself so valiantly, that he had slain four of the Knights that assaulted him, and now all the Knights of the Castle joynd against them, but to little purpose, for at the two first blows that Don Brianel made he gave two of them their deaths, which the rest seeing, they fled towards the Gate to go out and call for help, but they nor the porter could not open it, Palineo having prevented them in that intention, which they seeing desperately flew upon him and the Prince, but they soon received their deaths at their hands, and they being dead, they searched about for more enemies but could find none, and now seeing the Keys at the Porters girdle, they took them from thence and opened the Prison door, where they found Damartino the late Governour, but so pale, weak and feeble that he was hardly to be known; he supposed they had been Knights that were come from the Tyrant King to dispatch him of his life, but when he was informed the contrary, and that he was free, he was very glad, rendering thanks unto Palineo whom he knew, but Palineo told him that all thanks for that was onely due to Don Brianel, without whose assistance there had been nothing done nor attempted, Don Brianel was unwilling to receive this praises, but rendered them to Palineo. But now the Governour

nour Damartino being at liberty, he told them that it was necessary to deliver several others that were there Prisoners and were his servants, to this they agreed, and seeking about found and delivered them; this done the Prince and Palineo were laid in two Beds to have their wounds dressed by one belonging to Damartino, who was skilful in that Art, and there they continued several days till they were well, ordering that if any came from the King to admit them, and Don Brianel being very curious of his Horse and careful to have him, he was hardly to be equalled, sent one of their servants to fetch them both, which they did in the dark of the evening, and now all things being in good state and condition with them, Don Brianel being now at leisure and in company with Damartino and Palineo, told Damartino that although he had done thus much for his deliverance, yet he had other business to dispatch, having a Letter from their Princess Aurora directed to Damartino, which he gave him, and he opening it found these Lines :

Aurora the disinherited Queen of *Antioch*, Princess of *Miriana* to her Loyal Knight and Subject *Damartino*, greeting: It is not unknow to you and all the World, of the strange disasters of our Family of late years, and how that I have lost a Father and you a King, and have my self been forced for safeguard of my person from the power of my enemies to banish my self from my own Countrey, and flee to strangers for aid and succour. The Gods I hope have now looked on my suffering, and are willing to put an end to them by my acquaintance with this vallerous Knight, and several of his Alliance, who have promised to assist me in the recovery of my Kingdom; And to the end it may be done with the more ease and facility, I have desired him to take the trouble to travel to you, and advise with you of what is most needful to be done, as what forces I ought to have for the accomplishing of my designs, and when and where to order them. Of these matters I have given him Commission to treat with you, of whose Loyalty I make no question, therefore I pray take such order herein as may best conduce to the service of y our distressed Princess,

Aurora.

Da.

Damartino was so joyed at the receipt of this Letter, that he embraced the Prince Don Brianel with very great affection, and so did the valiant Knight Palineo, and they both promised their utmost assistance, and that they would spend their lives to the very last drop of blood that was in their bodies, but considering the great strength and policy of the Usurper, they did believe the attempt would be very difficult, however being resolved to proceed in it, they purposed the next day to leave the Castle in the custody of Damartino's servants, who had directions how to answer all that came, and secure it till their return, and that they would visit the Duke of Silviana, who was a man of great power, and from whose assistance they had great expectation, in order to this design, they having changed their Armour departed about midnight.

It was near morning when these three Knights accompanied only by two Pages issued out of the Castle, and advanced on their way, they had not travelled above six miles, before they met with two Knights, compleatly armed in Rose coloured Armour, with many Crowned Lyons, they being as courteous as they seemed to be valiant, one of them advancing, asked if any of our three Knights were lately come from Antioch, yes replied our Knights, and desired to know the cause of their inquiry, we seek for a Knight said they that wears a Tawny Armour, and the Picture of a fair Lady in his Shield, Don Brianel knowing that they enquired for Don Bellianis replied thus, let me know your name and quality, & I will give you a true account of your demand, I am, said the other, called the Knight of Lyons; I am no wiser with that answer, said Don Brianel, then I was before: I can resolve you no more said the Knight, then I shall not perform promise with you, said the Prince, I wonder said Palineo Sir Knight of the Lyons how we should know you, since I believe your deeds of Arms have not yet blazoned forth your worth, your arms seeming as if it had hitherto been engaged in few mortal fights, you were best try your courage, replied the Knight of the Lyons: content said Palineo,

eo, and if I am vanquished, my friend shall acquaint you with what you desire, and if not, your fair Armour shall be mine, content said the Knight, and to this Don Brianel also agreed, and thereupon they began their encounter, which was performed with such fierceness, that the Knight of the Lyons lost his stirrup, but Palineo was dismounted, yet would not yield himself vanquished, nor suffer Don Brianel to acquaint the Knight of the Lyons with his demand, whereupon the other Knight of the Lyons, and Don Brianel began a Combat, wherein Don Brianel received such a blow on the helmet, that breaking the Laces it flew from his head leaving it wholly uncovered: Great was the anger and rage of Don Brianel, for this misfortune which he was resolved to revenge; and thereupon drawing his sword, approached his enemy with marvellous fury, the Knight of the Lyons was as valiant as he, and resolved to prosecute the Combat, but approaching near Don Brianel and knowing him, he cried out in the Greek Tongue, It is enough, Prince of Macedon, I must not fight with you. Don Brianel hearing that, and wondering who should know him in so strange a place, asked who he was; the Knight of the Lyons without any reply: unlaced his helmet, and Don Brianel soon knew him to be Don Lucidamore, Brother to Don Bellianis, and asking who was his Companion, he was answered that it was his Brother Don Clarineo of Spayn, they all embraced with much joy, to the great wonder of Damartino and Palineo; and now nothing passed but loving speeches, the two Princes acquainting Don Brianel that they came out of Constantinople with the Emperor their father, and 100000. Men, which were not far off, intending to come to Antioch, to find their Brother Don Bellianis who was to restore the Princess Aurora: that a certain Adventure had befall them for the present, of the Emperor and Sabian of Trebanto, who was alone with him, and that they were come according to their first intentions to assist the Princess Aurora. Damartino and Palineo heard them talk, but know not about what, only they supposed them

them to be friends, Don Brianel having considered what was most necessary to be done, told his friends that it were best for them to say, that they came from the Emperour of Babylon, &c. that those two Knights would be the more ready, and he also told them that he left their Brother, Don Bellianis in Persia, in a bloody contest with the Souldan, about the death of Gallaneo, they were glad to hear of the death of that Traytor; and now being satisfied in all particulars, and instructed in what they should say, they likewise told their Pages, that they should say that they came from the Souldan of Babylon.

This done, Don Brianel and his Cousins advanced towards Damartino and Palineo, and presenting them to them said, that they had cause to render thanks to the Gods for their good fortune, in ordering it so as that they met, these Knights who were his Kinsmen, and were come about the same Employment that they were engaged in, and to that end, had brought from the Souldan of Babylon, a very strong Army, which however should be disposed and ordered as they should direct. Palineo made a very courteous Reply: being as he said, very well satisfied in the misfortune of his Encounter, thinking it no dishonour to be dismounted and vanquished too, by Knights of his alliance. And Damartino concluded that as to the ordering of their affairs, it would be necessary for them to go back to the Castle, and there advise further thereof, only sending to the Army to stay where they were till further order.

Thus did they ride back to the Castle, whereupon Advice taken, it was resolved that Prince Lucidamore and Damartino, should go that Night to the Army, and the next morning bring them before the Walls of Antioch. They understood that the King had already heard of the forces, and believing them to be Enemies, had provided against them an Army of 100000. men, to fight without the Walls, and 40000. men, to defend the City: however, Don Clarineo, Don Brianel, and Palineo, resolved to pass through the Mine into the City, and surprize and open one of the Gates,

Gates, whereby their Army might have entrance. This being agreed upon Don Lucidamore and Damartino went to the Army, the Prince having himself commanded the Soldiers to say that they came from Babylon.

CHAP. XVII.

The cruel fight between Don Clarineo, Don Brianel, Palineo with Tamolcano and his Gyants: And other facts in the City, and how strangely they were Relieved by Don Bellianis: And how by the Policy of Damartino, all the Tyrants Army and Citizens turned to them, all joyntly submitted and declared for the Princess Aurora: And how they rewarded Palineo, and left Damartino Governour, till the return of the Prince Aurora.

Two hours before day did Lucidamore and Damartino bring their forces to the City Walls, intending to surprize it, & they made up towards that Gate which was intended to be opened for them: neither were Don Clarineo, and Don Brianel & Palineo, unmindful of what they had promised, but passing through the Mine, and hearing the approach of the Army, they went to the Gate, their passage was indifferent clear, because the King and his forces were gone another way, but when they came to the Gate to put their determinate purpose in execution, they there found a sufficient Guard to defend it; however being resolved to prosecute their intentions, the politick Palineo, went to the Porter that had the Keys, and giving him a great blow over the head, that cleft it in twain; he took the Keys from him, but however he could not perform his intention in opening the Gate, for he was set upon by several Knights at once, he defended himself very well, and offended his Enemies by the assistance of his two Princely Companions, but the King Tramolcano, hearing of this attempt, and being resolved to prevent it, went in company of Count Garino and a great Troop to assist his Guard; they spurred on with great fury thinking to overcome the Princes, which Clarineo seeing,

ran the Gyants horse thorow, who being mortally wounded overthrew his Master, Garino intending the same, was presented for Palineo stepping aside, with one blow beat him from his horse, but they did both arise agen, and they & their forces did so furiously assault our three Knights, that they were in great danger of their lives, had they not been rescued as you shall presently hear. It was near morning when a little without the City might be seen a Pillar of fire, which approached the Walls: after it two Gyants that carried a Ladder, and set it against the Wall, and a Knight whose Armour was garnished with Basilisks, who dismounting from his horse, mounted the Ladder up to the City Wall. Don Lucidamore who was without and saw this, did likewise mount the Ladder and follow him; they were opposed by some that were on the top of the Walls, but the Knight of the Basilisks either killed them or threw them down headlong, and taking certain steps in the Wall he thereby descended, being still followed by Lucidamore; when they came down they made great slaughter, till they arrived where the three distressed Knights were: Don Brianel not knowing him to be their friend, made a blow at him, but he knowing him, warded it, and proceeded against his Enemies, at one blow killing the traitorous Count Garino, and then he cryed out, Courage brave Knights, for you are relieved: And immediately at another stroke he cut off the Gyants leggs, so that he fell down dead; and now the forces without seeing they could not enter at the Gate, made a breach in the Wall, and entered there, and soon after Palineo being recovered, opened the Gate. But so great was the Multitude of King Tramoilcano's forces that it was almost impossible to overcome them, and they knowing that they must all dye if they were overcome, fought like mad men or in despair, Damartino considering her oof, & grieving that so many men should perish, considered of a way to prevent it, and therefore he commanded all his men to cry aloud: Antioch for the Princess Aurora, those of the City hearing this, although they were before engaged for their King Tramoilcano, as they thought in their own

own

own defence against foreign Enemy, yet now hearing their Princess Aurora named, and supposing her to be among those that they believed were their Enemies, they soon turned Parties, and fought for them and helped to destroy those that were the proper forces of the Tyrant: so that in short time there was none left among them. And now our Princesses being together, and all joyful for their Victory: they sought out the Knight of the Basilisks who had given them so great Ayde, and he was mounted on horse-back to depart, but at the earnest request of the Princesses, unlaced his helmet, and discovered himself to be the valiant Don Bellianis.

Never was greater amazement and joy then these Princesses had at his wished for sight, they all ran to embrace him, and so did the other Knights to give him thanks for his assistance. And now they returned to the Palace, and care being taken for the cure of their Wounds. Don Bellianis and Damartino went into the City, and having caused the Citizens to assemble, he acquainted them that he came from their true Princess Aurora, and that he would acquaint her of their Loyalty which he promised should be rewarded: he shewed them her Letter to Damartino; at which they were so satisfied, that they undertook that in few days the whole Kingdom should be at her dispose, and all their Enemies turned out. To which purpose they sent Messengers to all places of Importance in that Kingdom.

It was not long ere Messengers came from most places of the Kingdom to ensure them of the utter subjection of their Enemies, and that all places had quietly submitted to the Government of their Princess. Don Bellianis supposing all affairs were finished; called all the other Princesses and considerable Nobility to Counsel, where he ordained the old Governour Damartino, to be Governour and Vice Roy, till the Queens return: he would have excused it, pretending his great age, but he was so well approved of by all, that he accepted the Government. Don Bellianis being well acquainted with the great pains and merits of the Knight Palineo, and being resolved to reward him; gave unto him all the

Lands

Lands and Revenues, of the late Count Garino; promising that the Princess Aurora should not only confirm his Gift, but also consider of somewhat further as a Reward for his Loyal Actions, this was also allowed off, & confirmed by all, so that Palineo who was now call'd Count Garino, gave many thanks to Don Bellianis, promising that not only the estate, but his person should always be ready to be sacrificed for the service of his Princess. The Assembly being broken up, and all things thus orderly settled; he thought of his departure, and having acquainted his Brothers and Cousen, where he had left his father, and that it was necessary for them all to go to him, they agreed to send the Army before by Sea, to the City of Persepolis in Persia, there to attend his or the orders of the Emperor his father: They being thus dispatched away, (he and his Brothers) & Don Brianel stayed eight days longer in the City of Antioch, till all things put into quiet and order. And every thing being as they wished for, they desired to depart; but the Governour, Damartino and Count Garino, had so importuned them to know who they really were, that they in the end told them, however, obliging them to keep their knowledge thereof private. They rested amazed and contented, that their Kingdom was settled in such quiet, by the assistance of such great Princes: And ordering Guides to wait on them, and direct them out of that Countrey, the nearest way to Persia, they departed; and in this Journey we shall leave them, and withal, here Conclude this first Part, of this honourable HISTORY.

FINIS.



THE
HONOUR
OF
CHIVALRY:
Or, The Famous and Delectable
HISTORY
OF

DON BELLIANIS of GREECE.
CONTINUING

As well the valiant Exploits of that Magnanimous
and Heroick Prince, Son to the Emperor Don Bella-
neo of Greece; as also the Wars between him and
the Souldan of PERSIA.

Wherein is likewise described the strange and dan-
gerous Adventures that befel him in the prosecution of his love
towards the Princess Floribella, Daughter to the Souldan
of Babylon: His Releaving of her Father the Souldan
from a strange Enchantment, and vanquishing
the Emperor of Trebizond.

The Second Part.

Now newly Written in English by F. K.

Licensed and Entered, according to Order.

LONDON: Printed by Tho. Johnson, for Fran. Kirkman,
and are to be sold at his Shop in Thames-Street,
over against the Custom-House, 1671.



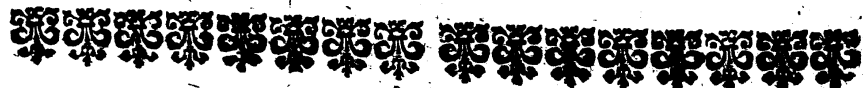
To the Reader.

THis Second Part having already received a very favourable acceptation in a former Impression; I shall not need to enlarge myself in an Epistle, and therefore I only tell you that I have now prosecuted the Story in a third and last Part, and hope it will be to your content, and that is the utmost ambition of

Your Friend and Servant,



Fran. Kirkman.



THE SECOND PART

O F

DON BELLIANIS OF GREECE:

O R,

The Honor of Chivalry.

Continuing the valiant Exploits of that
Heroick Prince, Son unto the Em-
peror *Don Bellaneo of Greece*

C H A P. I.

Now the City of *Bollera* being bravely besieged by the Souldan was well near taken, but that it was rescued by *Gordio Brother* to the Duke *Alfiron*, and the *Knights of the Basilisks* and his Companions.

It is now full time to return to the City of *Bollera*, where we left the thrice renowned and most magnificent Emperor *Don Bellaneo*, in company of so many valiant and renowned Knights and great Personages, who were bravely besieged by the Souldan of Persia, and his son *Perraneo Knight of the Images*. After the last Battle was ended, which is largely described in the 59th Chapter of the First Part of this excellent History, the Emperor commanded that a strict and just account should be taken of how many fighting men were left in the City and Trenches; which command being put in execution by Duke *Alfiron* and *Sabian of Trebanto*, who were very vigilant and careful therein; and after they had taken a just account thereof, they delivered it to *Don Bellaneo*, whereby they found that there was not above

fifty thousand men both in the City and Trenches, and that they had lost ten thousand men: for the Duke brought twenty thousand men with him from Persepolis, and there was with in the City besides forty thousand fighting men: when as on the other side the Souldan had at least four hundred thousand fighting men, besides above fifty thousand which were slain in the last Battel, and the Souldans men daily increased, and many good and hardy knights and Giants from all parts of the Empire of Persia came in daily to them at the byte of these Wars, and for the love that they bore to their magnanimous and redoubted Prince Periano Knight of the Images, for whose return there was great Joy throughout all those Countreys.

On the other side, great was the grief and sorrow of the most peerless Princess Persiana, (who was married to the Duke Alfron, as is before recounted) and for whose sake alone all these Wars were begun, and in whose Quarrel many redoubted knights had lost their lives. As much troubled was the beautiful Princess Aurora, for the absence of Don Bellianis the Knight of The Golden Image, and Don Brianel, whose success in the winning of her kingdom and other strange Adventures she had not yet heard of. But all these sorrows were somewhat mitigated, in that the City was so well guarded by Don Bellaneo Knight of The Imperial Crown, and the rest of those invincible Princes and knights.

The Prince Periano being greatly desirous to put an end to these Wars, and being wised that one City manned with so few knights should be able to withstand so mighty an Army as he had under his command, desired of his Father to give him leave to assault the Place, and in order thereunto one morning very early, two hours before the Sun rising, he being before provided of all things necessary for so great an Attempt, took part of the Army, which he divided into four parts, one Squadron of fifty thousand men he gave to be commanded by Caroliano another of fifty thousand men was commanded by Boral, the third of fifty thousand men by Don Femole, and the last he commanded himself, being fifty thousand well resolved knights and forty Giants. In this manner, with the greatest silence that could be,

he, they approached the Out-works of the City, which was near half a league from the City: The Bellianis, who kept an excellent order in their Camp, were ready in good time to receive them, being commanded by the Kings of Armenia and Telsante, who hearing of the approaches of the Enemies, presently caused the Clarions and Trumpets to be sounded, and buckling on their Armour went to receive them: Caroliano approaching the Tents of the Defendants, couched his Lance, and furiously unholed twenty or thirty knights before he met with any that could withstand him, but the King of Armenia seeing him do so much mischief, and had so weak resistance, without any Lance drew his sword, and cut the Lance of his enemy in two pieces, and then redoubling his blow made him bow his body to his horse neck: but he soon recollecting his spirits drew his sword, and began a terrible fight: By this time they in the City having taken the Alarm, issued out under the Conduct of the Emperor and the Duke Alfron, leaving onely a Guard of five thousand men to defend the City and the Ladies that were therein: but when they came near to the Camp, they met their own Soldiers flying for safety into the City with all the speed they could, being pursued by their enemies who came so powerfully upon them: whereupon the Emperor, Duke Alfron, and the rest were much dismayed, however encouraging them in the best manner they could, they caused them to return and face their enemies, and then the fight began to be very hot and bloody, Don Bellaneo couching his Lance unholed twenty knights before he brake it, and then taking another, ran so fiercely on into his enemies ranks, that they all made way until he met with Boral, with whom he encountered so fiercely, that breaking his Lance into shivers, he caused him to measure his length on the earth, and so passed on, drawing his sword and killing many of his enemies: thus was the fight again renewed, and his forces seeing the undauntedness of his courage, followed him so vigorously, that like a torrent he bore down all before him, till at length he met with Periano, who then came up with all his force to renew the Battel: then did the good Emperor bestir himself, and indeed he had great need, for he was encompassed with six Giants, besides the Knight of

the Images, all which did their uttermost endeavors to assault him : some of their blows he received on his shield, and others were delivered with such violence on his helmet, that he was enforced to hold about his horses neck to keep him from falling, but he soon revenged himself of them, for like a raging Lion he cut off the arm of one of the Giants, and another he cut off one side of his face, so that now he was delivered from two of his enemies, but the Prince Perianeo knowing him by his Arms to be the only considerable Adversary he had, desired the other four Giants to leave him alone with him, thinking himself to overcome him that he might gain the more honor : then began one of the most terrible Fights between these two undaunted Warriors that was ever heard of, both of them resolving to do their utmost endeavors, and they behaved themselves so fiercely, that as well many other Knights, as the four Giants, stood still to behold that incomparable Combate. During this time, in all other places the Fight was continued with much vigor, and the brave Knights Alfiron, Contumeliano, and Florispiano performed wonders : the valiant King Armenia was all this while engaged in Combate with Caroliano, where he gave and received many wounds, and their Fight continued so long, that both their horses were slain, and the King of Armenia was in a great jeopardy : for many of the Knights of Caroliano's Squadron (seeing their Commander likely to be overcome by the King of Armenia) did violently assault him, and brought him to great extremity, having wounded him in many places, & he had been nigh slain with his great loss of blood, when the King of Armenia accompanied with 500 Hs. came to his rescue, & again mounted him on the horse of one of the Knights that he had slain. Thus the Battle continued indifferent on both sides, till Rodrigo and Don Fermole arrived with their several Squadrons of fifty thousand men a piece, broke through the ranks of their enemies, and attempted to force their way into the City : which they endeavored by all means possible to effect, for they brought Scaling Ladders, and all other instruments of War, fitting to assault it : which when Duke Alfiron, and the rest of the Knights heard, they immediately retreated into the City, knowing that it was but weakly manned, and not able long to resist

resist the furious assaults that would be made.

Thus the Emperor (who as I told you before was engaged in a bloody Fight with the Knight of the Images) was forced to leave the Combate unfinished, to retire to the City to rescue it, which he heard was well nigh taken : being come near the gates of the City, he saw that the enemy had gotten possession of part of the wall, and likewise he saw the Knight of the Images coming behind him with all his Forces, wherefore he seeing the extremity of the business halted into the City, and stood in the rear of all his Forces, and was the last man that entered, holding a continual Fight with his enemies, till he saw all his own Forces were within the walls, and then he himself entered, not permitting any of his enemies Forces to enter with him, which they by all means attempted to do : so soon as he was entered, and the gate strongly fastened, he repaired to that part of the wall which he saw was possessed by the enemy, and mounting thereon, being followed by several valiant Knights, soon tumbled the enemies from the wall, and kept the possession thereof ; but all this, and what ever else they could do, did not hinder the enemy from getting the possession of the wall in many places, which they at last kept in despite of all the Forces of the City, and were ready to descend the wall and enter the City, when they heard a great noise of Trumpets and Clations, and a great company of armed Knights behind them, who gave a great assault to those of their Forces that were below ; at which they were greatly astonished, and seeing them come forward with a great deal of impetuosity and destruction of many of their Forces, the chief Commander who had gotten the possession of the wall, came down to help their companions, and the rest, who still remained on the wall, were soon forced from thence, and thrown headlong down, where they ended their lives.

Thus was the Battle again revived, and many of the Soldiours Knights and Giants lost their lives, by the invincible arms of four or five Knights, who came in company of the late Forces that came to relieve the City : but among the rest, there was one Knight who was armed with an armor garnished with Wallisks, that put all men to amaze, for they rather judged him to be a raging Tiger, or hungry Lion, than any mortal Knight, for in a short time he dismounted above fifty Knights, and

and killed four Giants, and yet he was not at all wearied, but still bestowed such deadly strokes amongst the Souldans knights, that they all fled from him as from their immediate death, till at last the two brothers, Caroliano and Boraldo, both assaulted him, and laid many weighty strokes both on his shield and helmet, but he reached one of them so great a blow, that he made him catch hold on his horses neck, to save himself from falling, and then being much enraged gave the other such a thrust that he tumbled him from his horse, and so he proceeded killing and destroying all that durst withstand him. In the mean time his other four companions were not idle, for they behaved themselves with extraordinary courage. It was two hours before day, when this battel first began, and now it was about four of the clock in the afternoon, and yet it was not ended : but at last the Souldans knights and Giants being much wearied, were about to retreat when they once more saw fresh Forces coming towards them, which was indeed commanded by the Souldan himself, who seeing the Battel continue so long, and understanding by a messenger that the City was likely to be relieved, came on with all his Forces to assist his Son, whereby he might, as he hoped, put an end to this troublesome War : but he found himself to be bravely received by the Knight of the Basilisks and his companions.

When they in the City saw this, they informed the Emperor Don Bellaneo thereof, who commanded one of the Gates to be immediately opened, out of which he issued with ten thousand men, and went immediately to the place where the Knight of the Basilisks was engaged, and seeing him do such wonders, and supposing him to command the rest, he said to him : Knight, since you have, though unknown, endeavored to give us so great aid, I pray let it be used to the best advantage, which will be at this time with all convenient speed, to retire into the City, else you will presently be overpowered by their great Forces, and then your assistance will be of little effect. The Knight of the Basilisks gave attention to this advice, and knowing not only the person that gave it, but that it was also very good, endeavored by his own example and actions, to retire to the City, and so he and his companions did with all their Forces, only with the loss of two thousand men which were killed in the Battel and retreat.

retreat. And the Souldan and his Son, the Knight of the Images, seeing themselves forced to retire from the City walls, by reason of the approaching of the night, which was now coming on, retired into their enemies trenches, with a resolution to abide there till they could take the City, but they were prevented, as hereafter shall be declared.

CHAP. II.

Who the Knight of the Basilisks, and his Companions were, and how the Siege was raised, and the Souldan and all his Forces retired to Persopolis.

SOON as the Knight of the Basilisks and his Companions were entered the City, the Emperor caused a strait Guard to be placed on the Walls, and then retired to the Palace, where he was welcomed by the two Princesses Persiana and Aurora ; but greatly was the joy of all increased when the Knight of the Basilisks discovered himself to be Don Bellianis, Knight of the Golden Image, and his Companions to be his two Brothers Don Clarineo of Spain, and Don Lucidamore of Thessaly, and his Cousin Don Brianel of Macedon : but there was one Knight who continued still unknown to all but the Duke Alfron, who being unarmed, knew him to be his brother Don Gorino ; and indeed to him they were very much engaged for his help and assistance, for he was not only a good Knight himself, but he had brought twenty thousand valiant Knights and Soldiers with him, to aid his Brother : and the Knight of the Basilisks and his Companions, overtaking him in their return from Antioch, and understanding that his design was only to relieve the City of Boliera and their Journey being intended for the same place, they discovered themselves to him to be friends to his Brother the Duke Alfron, and thereupon they joyned themselves together, and arrived at the City in so fortunate a time, that had they not come as they did, the City must needs have been taken by the Enemies, by reason of their great forces, and the small power that was within to oppose them : but their

and killed four Giants, and yet he was not at all wearied, but still bestowed such deadly strokes amongst the Souldans knights, that they all fled from him as from their immediate death, till at last the two brothers, Caroliano and Boraldo, both assailed him, and laid many weighty strokes both on his shield and helmet, but he reached one of them so great a blow, that he made him catch hold on his horses neck, to save himself from falling, and then being much enraged gave the other such a thrust that he tumbled him from his horse, and so he proceeded killing and destroying all that durst withstand him. In the mean time his other four companions were not idle, for they behaved themselves with extraordinary courage. It was two hours before day, when this battel first began, and now it was about four of the clock in the afternoon, and yet it was not ended : but at last the Souldans knights and Giants being much wearied, were about to retreat when they once more saw fresh forces coming towards them, which was indeed commanded by the Souldan himself, who seeing the Battel continue so long, and understanding by a messenger that the City was likely to be relieved, came on with all his forces to assist his Son, whereby he might, as he hoped, put an end to this troublesome War : but he found himself to be bravely received by the Knight of the Basilisks and his companions.

When they in the City saw this, they informed the Emperour Don Bellaneo thereof, who commanded one of the Gates to be immediately opened, out of which he issued with ten thousand men, and went immediately to the place where the Knight of the Basilisks was engaged, and seeing him do such wonders, and supposing him to command the rest, he said to him : Knight, since you have, though unknown, endeavored to give us so great aid, I pray let it be used to the best advantage, which will be at this time with all convenient speed, to retire into the City, else you will presently be overpowered by their great forces, and then your assistance will be of little effect. The Knight of the Basilisks gave attention to this advice, and knowing not only the person that gave it, but that it was also very good, endeavored by his own example and actions, to retire to the City, and so he and his companions did with all their forces, only with the loss of two thousand men which were killed in the Battel and retreat.

retreat. And the Souldan and his Son, the Knight of the Images, seeing themselves forced to retire from the City walls, by reason of the approaching of the night, which was now coming on, retired into their enemies trenches, with a resolution to abide there till they could take the City, but they were prevented, as hereafter shall be declared.

CHAP. II.

Who the Knight of the Basilisks, and his Companions were, and how the Siege was raised, and the Souldan and all his forces retired to Persepolis.

SOON as the Knight of the Basilisks and his Companions were entered the City, the Emperour caused a strait Guard to be placed on the Walls, and then retired to the Palace, where he was welcomed by the two Princesses Persiana and Aurora ; but greatly was the joy of all increased when the Knight of the Basilisks discovered himself to be Don Bellianis, Knight of the Golden Image, and his Companions to be his two Brothers Don Clarineo of Spain, and Don Lucidamore of Thessaly, and his Cousin Don Brianel of Macedon : but there was one Knight who continued still unknown to all but the Duke Alfiron, who being unarmed, knew him to be his brother Don Gorino ; and indeed to him they were very much engaged for his help and assistance, for he was not only a good Knight himself, but he had brought twenty thousand valiant Knights and Soldiers with him, to aid his Brother : and the Knight of the Basilisks and his Companions, overtaking him in their return from Antioch, and understanding that his design was only to relieve the City of Bollera and their Journey being intended for the same place, they discovered themselves to him to be friends to his Brother the Duke Alfiron, and thereupon they joyned themselves together, and arrived at the City in so fortunate a time, that had they not come as they did, the City must needs have been taken by the Enemies, by reason of their great forces, and the small power that was within to oppose them : but their

their arrival in so fortunate a time, caused the Souldan to lose his design, and made him retreat, as we have before told you, with the loss of one hundred thousand men, and many valiant Knights and Giants. But however he was resolved not to leave the City walls, till he had not only taken it, but also destroyed it and razed it to the ground, in revenge to the Injuries he had received of Duke Alfron and his Companions. But here we will leave him without the City, and return to our Champions within; who little feared him and all his Forces.

The Princess Aurora being informed of the return of Don Brianel, sent for him to give her an account of his adventures in Antioch, and it was not long ere he, accompanied with his two Companions, Don Clarineo and Don Lucidamore, came into her presence, and falling on his knees to kiss her hand, she refused to grant it, but raised him and his Companions from the ground with much freedom and joy, he being somewhat emboldened by her freedom, did arise and salute her, which she courteously received: and then she seating her self in her Chair, caused other seats to be brought for Don Brianel and his Companions: where they being seated, and Don Brianel knowing for what cause he was sent for, immediately declared unto her the good success of his Embassie, and how that by the assistance of those two Knights there present, and of their brother Don Bellianis, as also by the advice and help of Palineo and Damartino, he had slain the Usurping King Tramolcano and the Count Garino, and reduced the Kingdom to her obedience; and that there was nothing now wanting but her presence to make her subjects happy, and that they were all ready to obey her in every thing, and in the mean time till she could come thither, they had sworn Oaths of Allegiance to Damartino, according to her orders and command.

This news greatly contented the Princess, and she returned many thanks to Don Brianel and his Companions, after which they departed from her presence, and went to the place where the Emperor, his Son, and Duke Alfron, with the rest of the Commanders, were in Counsel about what was necessary to be done, as well for the defence of themselves, as for the of-

fending

sending of their enemies, and there it was concluded to send Don Clarineo to Persepolis, to attend the landing of two hundred thousand men, who were come from Greece with the Emperor, and gave him orders that he should conduct these Forces directly to Persepolis to assault it. that thereby the Souldan hearing thereof, might be enforced to withdraw his Forces to aid that City, and so they should be left free. This determination was immediately put in execution, and Don Clarineo in company of fifty Knights, presently departed, and travelled so long that night, that the next morning they arrived within two leagues of Persepolis, and then they took another way, and went somewhat about, that they might travel undiscovered, and so they did till they arrived at the Sea-side, where they immediately embarked themselves, and ranging about the Sea for some time, they at last discovered the Navy, and approaching to them, went aboard the Admiral, and immediately causing the principal of the Captains and other Commanders to come aboard, he declared the will of the Emperor, to which they all promised ready obedience, and thereupon they presently set sail for Persepolis: and they had not sailed six hours before they discovered the shore, where they landed without any interruption, and leaving a sufficient company to guard the Navy, they immediately marched on to Persepolis, where they arriving endeavored to enter, but were strongly repulsed by the Souldans Forces, and the place being very well fortified, they were forced to retire, and fortifie themselves in Trenches near the City, till they had further orders from the Emperor.

The City of Persepolis being thus assaulted, some of the Forces went immediately to the Souldans Camp before Bolle-
ra, to certify him thereof, where they arrived one morning early, just as the Souldan and his Son with all their Forces, were going to assault the City: but they were much astonished with this news, and did greatly wonder from whence all those Forces should arrive, however commanding the Messengers to silence, they resolved to give the onset to the City before they departed, and thereupon went forwards with all their accoutrements of War. Perianeo Knight of the images being extraordinarily enraged, immediately got a Ladder and mounted the

the wall, where he took either cut in pieces, or taketh down all such as were placed there to oppose him, and was ready to have descended the wall and entered the City, when the Emperor himself, and several other valiant knights in his company, came and resisted him : Many fierce and hardy blows were given and received on both sides, for they had both an implacable hatred to each other, and the Emperor knowing that if he could vanquish that enemy, he should easily force the rest to retire, laid mighty strokes on the Knight of the Images, so that in the end he put him quite out of breath, and enforced him to retire from the wall in despite of all the resistance he could possibly make : all this while the rest of the knights and giants on both sides, were not idle, but did their uttermost endeavors, the one to possess, and the other to defend the wall, which indeed was so well guarded by so many valiant and magnanimous knights, that indeed the flower of all Chivalry was there present, and therefore the boat which encompassed the City, was in a manner filled with the blood and dead bodies of the assailants : which the Souldan perceiving, and knowing that his presence was required, and indeed more necessary in another place, he called his forces to retreat, which he could hardly effect, in regard of the desperation of the fight in all places, at last he withdrew his forces, and finding that he had gained nothing, but that this battle had cost him the loss of fifty thousand men, he resolves to depart that night, and retire to Persopolis.

Those in the City being their enemies withdrawn in good order returned to their several quarters, where they greatly rejoiced in their good fortune : The Emperor and his son with all the rest of those courageous knights, resolving the next day to issue out of the City, and set upon their enemies in the open field : but when the next morning was come, and they were ready to put this their resolution in execution, they found that all their enemies were departed, having taken the benefit of the night for that purpose, wherefore they went and disarmed themselves, and then went again to council, where they resolved to do as followeth.

CHAP.

CHAP. III.

How Don Bellane the Emperor, and the rest of the knights and Forces followed the Souldan to Persopolis, and that which happened there.

The Emperor Don Bellane, and the rest of the knights being entered into Council, it was concluded that every one should provide himself to depart from that City, and follow the Souldan : they very well knowing that the forces of the Emperor, under the command of Don Clarineo, being arrived at Persopolis, and the Souldan being informed thereof was the cause of his so sudden departure, wherefore Don Alfiro, the Emperor Don Bellianis and the rest of the knights, went immediately to put their forces in readiness : which when they had done, they came to the Court to the Ladies, to take their farewell of them.

The Princess Parsiana was much troubled and perplexed, that she should so soon leave her husband the Duke, and was greatly discontented that all this war was occasioned thorough her quarrel with the Duke, whereby the lives of so many brave knights were put into continual jeopardy, wherefore she besought the Duke her husband, Don Bellane, and his son Don Bellianis, to use their utmost endeavors to reconcile this difference between her husband and her father, without the effusion of any more blood, which they promised to endeavor.

The Princess Parsiana was likewise much troubled, that her father was thus hindered by the war, but her discontent was the greater in that Don Brian and he must part, wherefore she advised her self to Don Bellianis, and calling him Hor Deliverer, desired him to make all the haste he could possible in his return thither, that he might put her in possession of her kingdom, which he promised to do, but she not satisfied with this, desired that some one of his companions might be left in that City for the guard thereof. He thereupon resolved to give her all the pleasure he could, told her that he would so order it, that Don

Brianel stood to be left behind for that purpose, at the naming of whom he kissed, and returned him thanks therefore. So he took his leave of her, and of the two damsels that belonged to the Princess Florisbella, and repared to his Father, and the rest of the Knights, telling them what he had promised to the Princess Florisbella, and that it was necessary to leave Don Brianel for guard of the City, which was accordingly done. Thus these brave Warriors left the City in guard of Don Brianel and ten thousand men, and marched onward to Persopolis with fifty thousand men.

The Emperor and his company with easie marches, at length arrived near Persopolis, where they found Don Clarice with all his Forces ready to receive them; who informed them, that the night before, the Souldan and his Son, with all the rest of the Army arrived there, and with the loss of many men had entered the City.

Thus these Forces being united, made a very considerable Army, and therefore Duke Alfron did not question but he should in short time compel the Souldan his Father in Law to consent to his Marriage, and therefore he desired that the rest of the Knights would give him leave to write to the Souldan, to know his mind whether he would be for peace or war: To which they consented, and he writ to him accordingly, and sent it by one of his Knights, who coming to the Gates of the City, was questioned what he was, and what he would have: Who replied, That he came to speak with the Souldan from his Lord the Duke Alfron, and the rest of the Knights in his company; whereupon the Souldan being advertised hereof, commanded that he should be brought before him, which was done accordingly, and he coming to the great Hall of the Souldans Palace, made his due reverence to him, and to his Son the Knight of the Images, and the rest of those high Personages there assembled, and delivered his Letter to the Souldan: who gave the same to his Secretary, who opening the Seal, found therein written as followeth.

The

The Letter of the Duke of Alfron to the Souldan of Persia.

MOST Mighty Sir, it is not unknown to your Highness, the great love and affection that I have for a long time bore to the most incomparable Princess *Persiana* your Daughter, and how that I have always been ready to do all reasonable things to testify to her my Love, and to your self my service: but so it is, that your Highness being blinded with revenge on *Don Belisario* the Emperor of *Greece*, did decree, that whosoever should vanquish and kill the said Emperor, should not only have your Highnesses Daughter to wife, but half your Highnesses Dominions with her, which was proudly and indiscreetly undertaken by *Don Gallano* of *Antich*, who though he attempted it, could never bring the same to pass, but was forced to return to your Court, and there falsely reported that he had effected your commands, which though it was altogether untrue; yet he expected your Daughter as a Guerdon of his merit: accordingly your Highness though much against the good will and liking of your said Daughter) caused them to be Married, but he for his other wicked doings was justly slain, and the Knight of the *Golden Image* and his companions, vindicated her credit and mine, as to your Highness is fully known: but such was the continual anger of your Highness, that contrary to the word of so great a Personage, you kept me in prison till both my self, and your Daughter were released by means of the Kings of *Armenia* and *Tessan*, and many other Knights, who with your Daughters free consent caused us to be lawfully married, as in justice we ought, whereupon your Highness hath since still followed us, with all the violence possible, endeavouring to destroy us (but the Gods be praised) we have hitherto valiantly defended our selves from all your Forces, and question not still to do. But however our inclination to peace is such, that we humbly and heartily desire it, and that you will give us your royal word for the same, in expectation of which; or of such other answer, as you shall send, I rest

Your Son and Subject, Duke Alfron.

This

This Letter being read, the Souldan was much perplexed, that any one should in so open a manner declare his unjust actions, and charge him with injustice; told the messenger that he might depart, and the next day he would send an answer by a messenger of his own.

The Knight being gone, the Souldan and his Son entered into consultation, what was necessary to be done, and the Knight of the Images knowing that the Emperor of Greece, and his Son Don Bellianis, and many of their kindred, were in the Camp of Duke Alfron, for they had learned so much by some prisoners they had taken of the Emperors Army, they therefore resolved to be revenged of all their wrongs in general, and that they might the more easily bring their determination to pass, they concluded that the Knight of the Images, the two brothers Carolano and Boraldo, and Gramalis of Thrace should enter in Combat with the Emperor of Greece, his Son Don Bellianis, Duke Alfron, and any other Knight of their Army: and in order to this their resolution, the Souldan writ a Letter, and sent it to the Camp according as he had promised.

The messenger that carried the answer of the Souldan arriving at the Camp, was conducted to the Tent of the Emperor, where he and the rest of the Commanders being assembled he delivered the Letter to Duke Alfron, who immediately caused the same to be opened, they read as followeth.

The Letter of the Souldan to Duke Alfron and his Companions.

I know not what reason thou hadst to contradict or hinder our will in the marriage of our Daughter to Don Gallaneo, or any other to whom it was our pleasure to bestow her, but that thou wouldst shew thy self false to our Imperial Crown and Dignity in taking part with our greatest enemies, and those whom we have the greatest cause to hate, such as is the Emperor of Greece and his Son, and many of the Knights of their lineage, by whose help and assistance thou hast fully stolen away our Daughter, and dost still unjustly detain her, and with whose help thou endeavorest

deavorest to destroy this our Empire, contrary to thy Allegiance; Therefore we let thee to understand that our pleasure is, that thou either presently send us our Daughter, and assist us in the destruction of those Christians our mortal enemies, or prepare thy self to be chastised according to thy demerits: but if thou thy self, and they are still so hardy to resist us, we have given leave to our noble Son *Perianco*, our Cousins *Carolano* and *Boraldo*, and *Gramalis* of *Thrace*, to meet thee and the said Emperor and his Son, and any other Knight you shall choose to mortal Combat, promising that our Army shall not, during the Combat hinder you, and we expect your performance of the same condition. This, if you will do, we shall be ready to perform to morrow before our City gates, this is all at present from

Your Lord, the Souldan.

Great was the amazement of the Duke Alfron and the Kings of Armenia and Tessifanty, and the rest of the *Adagan* Knights, when they understood that the Emperor of Greece, and his son and kinsmen, were those who they had so long entertained amongst them, but they were soon satisfied when the Emperor Don Bellaneo arose from his seat, and spake as followeth.

Kings of Armenia and Tessifanty, and Duke Alfron, with all the rest of your Companions, it cannot be unknown to you how unjustly the Souldan your Master, has endeavored oftentimes to take away my life, as the undertaking of Don Gallaneo doth sufficiently testify, and I do not conceive but any of you being so wronged, would use his utmost endeavors to revenge himself: in order to which I came from *Constantinople*, accompanied with these Forces, but they have done little yet in prosecution of my revenge. As for my Son, he came not hither to injure the Souldan, but to do justice to the Princess of *Amora* (who is truly Princess of *Amroch*) and to destroy that Usurper Don Gallaneo, who usurped the same. Since our arrival, many occasions have presented themselves whereby we have lost much blood in your Cause, and have wronged some of you, and do

and do resolve still to continue constant to you, till we shall cause the Emperor to do you justice, and that shall be our satisfaction: therefore resolve your selves what Answer to return him, for I and my Son will undertake the Combat.

After the Emperor had finished his speech, the Kings of Armenia and Tessilante thanked him, and his Son, and the rest of the Knights, for what they had said and done, and resolved, that since the cause at present was but to bring the Sculdau to do Justice, that they would still continue with them and force him to do it, or venture their lives and fortunes in the compelling him thereto. And Duke Alfron, who was one of the persons that was challenged, answered, that he was of the same opinion with them, and thanked the Emperor and his Son, and the rest for the assistance they had given him, and told them that he was willing to accept the Combat propounded, whereupon Contumeliano Prince of Phenicia desired that he might be the other Combatant, which was granted, and the Messenger was sent to the Sculdau to signify the same accordingly.

CHAP. IV.

Of the Combat between the Eight Knights, and of the end thereof.

NO sooner had the Golden Chariotier of Heaven set forward on his dayly journey, to illuminate the world with the resplendent Beams of his Countenance, but all our Combatants prepared themselves for the Combat. Don Bellianis of Greece, in whose heart was not only revenge but jealousy, desired that he might combat with his Rival Perianco Knight of the Images. The good Emperor his Father resolved to try the Valour of Gramalis of Thrace, and Duke Alfron and Contumeliano desired to undertake the two Brothers Caroland and Boraldo.

Thus every one having made choice with whom to fight, resolved to overcome or die in the place, and they only expected the coming of the Challengers out of the City. About ten of the clock

clock before noon, the Sculdau with a guard of forty thousand Knights issued out of one of the Gates with the Champions, ready for the Combat. The Sculdau being seated in a place appointed for that purpose, and the Guard placed without one side of the Lists, the Challengers with the sound of Drums and Trumpets entered the same, where they had not long continued, but the Defendants likewise entered, and the Guard on their side being placed on another side of the Lists: the Sculdau commanded the Signal of the fight to be given by the Trumpets, at whose sound the Knights with armed fury made against each other in such sort, that they rather seemed to many sudden flashes of lightning, breaking through the airy passage of the Heaven, than men and horse met in the midst of the field with so mighty encounters, as if so many pieces of Ordnance had been discharged. Don Bellianis thinking himself concerned more than ordinary, encountered the Knight of the Images so violently, that he caused him to lay hold on his horse neck to save himself from falling, and with the shock that he received, he lost both his stirrups: but they both soon recovered themselves, and turning about, with a brave grace and courage drew their swords, and gave one another such strong and mighty blows, that their pure cutting swords soon made the blood to appear through their Arms.

The Emperor and Gramalis of Thrace encountered each other so furiously, that the Emperor threw Gramalis on the ground, and disabled his horse, and received so great a shock himself that he lost both his stirrups, but he recovered himself, and drawing his sword went to meet his Abbertary, who was coming to him on foot, which he seeing, likewise dismounted himself, and came on foot likewise valiantly to meet him: but Gramalis being more ready than the Emperor, gave him so mighty a blow on the Helmet, that it astonished him, which made his rage to kindle in his breast, that the very fire sparkled in his eyes, and like a hot chafed Roar or hungry Lyon bent to his prey, wounded Gramalis that had struck him with so puissant a blow on the Helmet, that he cut it in two as if it had been of paste-board, sorely wounding his head, telling so astonished, that he knew not whether he was alive or dead. Gramalis in short time recovered himself, and seeing what danger he was in by reason of one

blow received from his enemy, was greatly abashed, so that covering himself with his shield, he gave the Emperor many wounds: which he feeling, and resolving to be revenged of, gave his enemy so great a blow on the shield, that he cut it in two pieces, and sounded him so sorely on the head and arm, that he in short time fell to the ground: which the Emperor seeing he left him, and went to Duke Alfron who wanted his assistance.

Alfron and Contumeliano encountering the two Brothers, gave to each other so marvellous encounters, that they all measured their lengths on the earth: but like valiant knights they soon got on their feet and began an excellent Combat, which continued a long time without any great advantage: but in the end Caroliano, with whom Alfron fought, gave him so great a blow on the head, that he cut the laces of his helmet, and somewhat wounded his head: but Alfron resolving to revenge himself, gave Caroliano so mighty a blow on the helmet, that it much astonished him, and passing from thence wounded his shoulder very sorely: but the blow having found so great resistance, his sword brake in two pieces: whereupon Caroliano though sorely wounded, seeing his Adversary without helmet or sword, went forward with a resolution that one blow should put an end to the Combat: but just as he went to perform what he intended, the Emperor met him, and rescued Alfron, who seeing the desperation of his condition, being without a sword, espied that of Gramalis lying by him, suddenly took it up, and went to receive his enemy, who was now fighting with the Emperor. Contumeliano and his enemy were not idle, but did their utmost, being like good knights, to endanger each other, so that the ground where they stood was dyed with the blood that came from the great number of wounds they received.

This battle had continued eight hours, and neither of the two knights, Don Bellianis nor Perianeo, showed any kind of weakness: and though they were much wounded, yet continued they as vigorous and strong as at the beginning. Don Bellianis being much enraged hereat, did his utmost endeavor to put his enemy out of breath, which he did perform by his quickness and multitude of strokes which he gave him, so that in the end his enemy could not hurt him, and did nothing but defend himself. But

Perianeo

Perianeo being enraged that he was so likely to be overcome, resolved to put all his strength to one blow, which he did in such sort, that striking Don Bellianis on the helmet, he put him out of all remembrance, and his horse being somewhat wounded, ran about the field with him. So soon as he came to himself, and found in what condition he was, and that his enemy pursued him to take away his life, he caught hold on his sword which hung to his wrist with a chain, and being enraged far more than any King or Lion, he lifted up his sword and gave his enemy so great a blow on the thigh, that he cut him to the hard bone, from which wound issued much blood: and redoubled his stroke in such manner on his Adversaries helmet, that he beat him quite from his horse without any sense or understanding: and looking about him, saw the Duke Alfron likewise on the ground with one blow he had received from Caroliano on the head, where he had nothing to defend it: but the Emperor soon revenged this wrong, for he gave Caroliano so mighty a blow on the head, that he laid him on the earth. Contumeliano and his Adversary Rogado were both grown very faint, and Contumeliano was at last forced to retire. Don Bellianis perceiving how the day was likely to be their own, dismounted from his horse with a resolution to kill Don Perianeo, if he were not dead already: but on an instant there hapned a great flash of lightning and thunder, and there issued from a Cloud a Charriot of Fire drawn by six Griffions, and in the Charriot there was a man, who with the help of a Dwarf took up the bodies of Perianeo and Gramalis of Thrace, and placing them in the Charriot mounted therein himself, immediately ascended the skies, leaving behind him a great fire and smoke: which being gone there appeared a Pillar of Marble, on which was engraven in letters these words following: And thus, as the gods have decreed, shall we defend the life of thy dear Son, and his Companion, not carry them to such a place as I have provided: but assure thy self that they shall be brought out of their wounds, and the young Sicilian Lion shall make large grounds for thy habitation, and shall be a living life, and him from the hands of the Greeks. Whereupon he made a great shout, and

His

D 2

for

for when thou art in the greatest danger of thy life, thou shalt be delivered;

This Pillar and the Prophecy thereon, was beheld and read by many: and Don Bellianis and his Father went to Duke Alfron, and took him, he being in a sword and sorely wounded, and delivered him to some who carried him to a Tent: and both the Knights Contumeliano and Boraldo with weakness and loss of blood having long wrestled together, fell down in a trance; but Caroliano was quite killed with the blow he received from the Emperor. The field being thus cleared of the dead and wounded, the Souldan came from his seat to see what was engraven on the Pillar, which when he had read, it immediately vanished away.

Thus this Combat being finished, the Souldan with all his Guard returned to the City in great sorrow, carrying with them Boraldo much wounded, and the dead body of Caroliano: and the Emperor and his Son returned to their Tents with the wounded body of Contumeliano, Alfron being sent before.

CHAP. V.

How the Souldan of Persia and the Emperor of Greece concluded on a Peace, and that which happened afterward.

The Souldan of Persia was extremely discontented for the loss of his Son and Grimalis of Thebes; but the Inscription on the Marble Pillar somewhat satisfied him: but when he had considered the end of the Combat, the death of Caroliano, and the desperate estate of Boraldo, and how that all the Knights on the other part were alive, and but grooved them and things hurt with their wounds he resolved with himself on Peace, considering that he knew not what was become of his Son, and therefore it was very necessary for him to take care of the welfare of his Daughter.

Duke Alfron and Contumeliano, being carried into their Tents in the Camp, were looked to so diligently, that in short time they were cured of their wounds. And one day they being all

altogether in the Tent of the Emperor, to consult of what was most fitting to be done, there arrived a Messenger from the Souldan, who being admitted before them, gave a Letter unto Duke Alfron, which he according to his usual manner, delivered unto the Secretary to Read, who opening the same, read as followeth.

The Letter of the Souldan of Persia, to Duke Alfron.

DUKE, We greet thee well: For as much as the lives of many valiant Knights have been lost in the late Controversie between Me and Thee, which hath been great grief of heart to me for the loss of so many of our Subjects, whose lives we ought to conserve, And to the end that a period may be put to this bloody War, we advise thee forthwith to send our Daughter *Persiana* to our presence, that we may understand from her own mouth whether she be contented to receive thee for her Husband, which if we find she be willing to do, we promise thee upon our Imperial Word to give her to thee accordingly, and with her such a sufficient Dower, as thou thy self shalt be well contented. And likewise we on our Royal Word promise, that so soon as the Emperor of Greece will send away his Forces, that we will Disband ours, and make such Peace with him as shall be thought convenient. And we do further promise, that we will not only forgive thee and the Kings of *Armenia* and *Teffanty* all the wrong thou and they have done us by this late Rebe lion, but also give such Writing signifying the same under our Hand and Seal, as shall be thought fitting, therefore fail not forthwith to send us our daughter, that we may put an end to this unhappy difference.

Signed, The SOULDAN.

After these great Personages had heard the Determination of the Souldan, there was none of them that rested discontented

ted, for these Wars had held them a long time from prosecuting their other adventures. And therefore Don Bellianis being more than ordinary desirous of Peace, that he might once more go visit his incomparable Lady the Princess Florisbella; arose and and spake as followeth.

Most renowned Knights, I see no cause why we should not all conclude with Peace, since the Souldan hath sent us such fair Propositions, wherefore my opinion is, that the Princess *Persiana* be forthwith sent for, that the Souldan may receive the satisfaction he desires, which I am confident she will give him: And since the Souldan is so reasonable, I am fully satisfied; for my only business was to restore the Princess *Aurora* to her Kingdom of *Antioch*, which was usurped by *Don Gallanto*, who since he is dead, we have gotten possession of it. I am confident we shall persuade the Souldan to confirm her in the possession of the same, and that he will give us all the satisfaction we shall desire.

After this Speech was ended, there was not one of the Company but rested contented, and thereupon a party of five thousand Horse was immediately dispatched away under the Conduict of Don Gorion, Brother to Duke *Alfiron*, to conduct the Princess thither: and the Messenger of the Souldan was sent back with another Knight of the Duke *Alfiron*'s part; to signify to the Souldan, that all that he desired on behalf of his Master, and the rest of the Kings and Princes, should be performed to his own satisfaction; which Message being delivered to the Souldan greatly contented him.

C H A P. V I.

How Don Gorion arriving at the City of *Bellera*, delivered his Message to Don Brianel, and how the Princesses *Persiana* and *Aurora* left the City to travel to the Camp.

Don Gorion and those who went in his company, made so much haste, that in a short time they arrived at the City of *Bellera*, where they were soon admitted to enter, & arriving at the Pallace

Pallace were quickly permitted to come into the presence of Don Brianel, who in the absence of the Duke was Governor of the City. Don Gorion then in short gave an account to Don Brianel of the success of the War, and how at last they had received a Letter from the Souldan, wherein he signified his desire of Peace, and that there was nothing wanting for the consummation thereof, but the presence of the Princess *Persiana*.

Don Brianel was very well satisfied with this Message, and went immediately to the two Princesses to certify them thereof; which when they heard, they were both very well contented: the Princess *Persiana*, in that her mind was wholly accomplished; and the Princess *Aurora*, in that she now hoped ere long to be fully settled in her Kingdom: wherefore they both prepared themselves to depart the next morning, and accordingly commanded their Damselfs to get all things ready.

Don Brianel this evening sought for an opportunity to discourse with his Lady the Princess *Aurora*, and thereupon coming into her lodging to know what Commands she would give him against the next day, he found her all alone, wherefore resolving not to let slip this opportunity, he began to her as followeth.

Madam, It is now many months since I had the happiness first to see you, ever since which time I have had a desire to serve you, and my actions in hazarding my life for the recovering of your Kingdom, hath given you some testimony thereof: And Madam, were I capable of reducing all the Kingdoms in the world to my Obedience, I should willingly surrender them with my self, to be disposed of by you; therefore dear Madam, since my love is so great, I beseech you vouchsafe me yours, whereby I may be eternally blessed.

When he had finished this Speech, fetching a great sigh, he held his peace: and she who as earnestly loved him as he did her, replied to him:

Sir Knight, I have understood your love to me; and therefore have formerly reposed so much trust to you, as I never did to any

any other; for to you alone I committed the disposal of my Kingdom, and for the good you did me there, I heartily thank you. Assure your self that so soon as I shall be peaceably settled therein, I shall dispose my affairs in such order that I shall do all things to your content and liking: and assure your self, that none other living shall enjoy my person and kingdom but your self.

At the ending of the speech, she blushed extreemly that she had been so free in discovering the thoughts of her heart: but Don Brianel was extreemly satisfied herewith, and not being able to speak with the excess of joy that he was in, he fell on his knees, and straitly embracing her legs, he very amorously kissed her fair hands, and then at her desire he arose and gave her many amorous kisses and kind embraces, promising for ever to be her true Knight: and she promised no less to him, that she would not fail to be always his, and in token of her love, she gave him a Scarf embroidered with Gold, where in Letters of Gold was her Name; which he thankfully received, and promised never to leave off wearing the same, till he had the free enjoyment of her person in marriage. And hereupon they broke off their friendly and amorous discourse, taking a farewell of each other, he returning to put all things in readiness for the next days expedition, and she retiring her self into her Closet, to contemplate what she had done.

Thus every body employed themselves in somewhat for the next days journey, till it was time to go to rest: but the two Lovers Don Brianel and Aurora could sleep but little that night for the content they had received in the evenings conference, and therefore they were the first that did rise, by whose example all the rest soon rose and made themselves ready. Don Gori-on and Don Brianel summoned the Knights and Magistrates of the City together, to whom they declared the will of their Lord Alhron. And leaving a sufficient guard in the City, they went to the Pallace, where they found the Princesses in a readiness to depart. Chariots being brought for them, they quickly mounted therein, and so accompanied with several Damselfs and a guard of ten thousand Knights, they departed from the City, and took the right way for Persepolis.

CHAP. VIII.

How Don Brianel and Don Gori-on arrived at the Camp of the Emperor of Greece and how the Duke Alhron and the Princess Persiana presented themselves before the Soldier.

With much joy and pleasure travelled this company, especially the Ladies, the one being in company of her most beloved Lord, and the other going to her loving Husband: but the joy of Don Brianel was extraordinary, for the favors he had received at the hands of the Princess, and as a testimony of his joy he wore the Scarf which she had given him on his arm.

Thus travelled they with much content, till at length they met with some of the Knights of the Emperors Army, who were come on purpose to meet them: and then some were sent back to signify to the Emperors and the rest of the Princes, the approach of those Princesses; which they no sooner understood, but they went out to meet them. Two leagues from the Camp they were met by the Emperors, Don Bellianis, the Duke Alhron, the Kings of Armenia and Tessifany, and all those other most renowned Princes and States, who coming near them, dismounted from their horses to salute them. The Princesses seeing that, descended from their Chariots and kindly received them: Then two stately Palfreys were brought whereon the two Princesses were mounted, and Don Bellianis took hold of the Reins of the Princess Aurora's Palfrey, and the Emperors himself did the same for Persiana.

Don Bellianis during the remainder of their Journey, asked the Princess Aurora whether she had received any content in the company of Don Brianel: for, saith he I see by his countenance that he is very much pleased, and he sheweth very gloriously with the favor that he hath tyed to his arm, and therefore I desire to know what Mistress he hath gotten since our departure. To which discourse the Princess replied, Sir Knight, the content that I have received in his company cannot chuse but be much

in respect of the service that he hath already done me, in helping to restore me to my kingdom, and therefore in token of my gratitude, I have given him that Scarf as a small token of my favour to him.

In such like communication spent they their time, till they arrived at the Camp, where they alighted and were received with great Joy, signified by the sound of Drums and Trumpets, and Clarions : The Princesses Persiana and Aurora were conducted to a Tent for that purpose provided, where they both lodged together : the Duke Alfron being contented not to lye with his beloved Princess, till she should be given him by her Father, which he hoped would be done the next morning. Night being come every one repaired to their several lodgings and there took their ordinary repose, onely Don Bellianis was much troubled that he was still kept there, and hindered from visiting his Princess Eloribella, and besides he knew not how to go to her for his Father expected upon the conclusion of the Peace, that he would return with him to Constantinople.

In these meditations he spent most part of the night, and when morning came he arose and dispatched a messenger into the City, to certify the Souldan of his Daughters arrival, and to know his pleasure what should be done. To which the Souldan returned answer, that he expected her and the Duke, to come to his presence that day, in company of what other Knights they pleased.

The Duke and Princess being certified hereof, prepared themselves for that purpose, and about noon, only accompanied with the Princess Aurora, Don Bellianis, and Don Brianel, they entered the City, and came into the presence of the Souldan, who was seated on a throne, and his great Lords about him. The Princess Persiana and the Duke humbled themselves on their knees, and she humbly desired her Father to forgive her rashness, for it was onely true love that caused her to do the same, and promised him that if he would deign to pardon that great fault, she would in all things continue his obedient Daughter during life, and concluding her Speech, she shed many tears : To which the Souldan replied, that her disobedience to his commands, had occasioned the loss of the lives of many of his Subjects

Subjects, and that therefore she might expect the Gods to be continually angered with all her undertakings ; but as for his part, seeing she had made so free a confession of her fault, he did freely forgive her, and then arising from his Throne, he came down and took her by the hand, and raised her from the ground, and then caused the Duke Alfron to arise, to whom he gave her wishing the Gods to bless them.

Thus this being done to the content of all that were present, the Souldan commanded the Tables to be covered, and desired the Strangers to sit down to dinner, promising in the afternoon to give them satisfaction in order to a general peace.

CHAP. VIII.

How the Wars were ended between the Souldan and the Emperor, and a Peace concluded for ten years.

NO sooner was Dinner ended, but the Souldan entering into his Council Chamber, sent for Don Bellianis and Don Brianel, and told them, that since he was satisfied in his Daughters marriage, which had been the greatest cause of these wars, it should be at their own dispose whether they would have Peace or War.

To which Don Bellianis replied, that his coming thither was for no other end but to assist the Princess Aurora in recovering the Kingdom of Antioch from the hands of Don Gallaneo, who had wrongfully possessed himself of the same, as it could not be unknown to the Souldan : and that now Don Gallaneo being dead, as also the King who had lately usurped the same, and all her Subjects being desirous to come under her obedience, he humbly desired that his Highness would do her that justice, as to let her peaceably enjoy the same.

The Souldan having understood formerly of the affairs of that Kingdom, and that it was now in the possession of her Deputies granted the request of Don Bellianis, on condition that she and her Heirs would for the future pay the accustomed Tribute, the which she on her part promised to perform. The next thing that

was propounded, was made between the Emperor and the Souldan, which the Souldan consented to hold firmly for ten years. And to conclude all, promised a free Pardon to the Kings of Armenia and Tessianty, who were his Tributaries. Whereupon Don Bellianis and Don Brianel departed from the Souldan to carry this news to the Camp, where the chief being assembled joyfully received the News, and for that night made continual bon-fires, so that both in the City and Camp it was all night as light as day.

The next morning early a Messenger arrived in the Camp, to give an Invitation to the Emperor and the rest of those great Lords, to come into the City to dine with the Souldan : which Invitation was accepted of, and accordingly about Eleven of the Clock they all set forwards and so entered the City, being attended with great Ceremonies and Pomp by many of the Souldans Knights. As soon as they came near the Pallace, the Souldan had notice thereof and came to receive them, and although till now they had been the greatest enemies in all the World, yet the Souldan and the Emperor embraced one another with much freedom and amity: and thus the Souldan received all the rest of the Principal Knights, and so conducted them into the great Hall of the Pallace, where all things were provided for Dinner in most sumptuous manner: which being ended, the Souldan and Emperor ratified and confirmed the Peace which had been before concluded on: And to signify his love to Duke Alfron, and gave him the Kingdom of Shyrax, which was a place under his subjection and belonged to his Empire, and then the Duke Alfron and the Princess Persiana his wife were immediately owned by all for King and Queen of Shyrax: nothing was now wanting in the Court of Persia to give it its full lustre, but the presence of the Prince Perianeo, whose absence much discomfited the Souldan.

All things being thus fortunately concluded, the Souldan disbanded his Army, and the Emperor sent his away by Sea, under the command of Sabian of Trebanto, who accordingly embarked himself, and within ten days departed: here was nothing now wanting, but to put the two Princesses in possession of their Kingdoms, the Princess Aurora into her Kingdom of Antioch, and the Princess Persiana and her husband into possession

of the Kingdom of Shyrax, for which purpose he writ Letters to the present Governor to give them possession thereof, the Princess Aurora desired the Company of some Knights to go with her: the first that offered his service was Don Brianel, and then Don Clarineo of Spain, and Don Lucidamore of Thessaly, because they had formerly been there, desired to attend her, and so did Contumeliano Prince of Phenicia, and Florispiano of Swevia his Cousin, these all chose to attend the Princess Aurora: On the other side Don Bellianis desired his Father to permit him to attend the Princess Persiana and her husband to Shyrax, and he chose rather to go thither, because it was nearest to Babylon, where his beloved Princess did remain, and to which place he intended to go. His Father intending to carry him home with him, hardly consented to this separation, but at length at the intreaty of the Princess and her Husband, he was content provided his Son engaged to return home again in six months which he consented to do. They that accompanied the Princess besides, were the Kings of Armenia and Tessianty, so that there was not any left to accompany the Emperor home, but Ascleo Prince of Hungary, and Don Gorino was sent back to the City of Bollera, to signify the conclusion of the Peace. Thus all were appointed to travel, only Boraldo, Don Fermosel, and Crisallanco who stayed with the Souldan: Things being thus concluded, every person after they had taken leave of the Souldan, within two days after departed.

C H A P; I X.

How the Princess Aurora and Don Brianel with the rest of their Company, arrived at Antioch, and what happened to them there.

SO long travelled the Princess Aurora and the Princess Persiana and Knights that accompanied her, that at last they arrived in the Kingdom of Antioch, without happening on any considerable Adventure: and when they were come near the City, Damarrino the Governor, and Count Garino, with several others of the Nobility, being advertised of their

coming, went out to meet them. So soon as they approached near to the Princess, they dismounted from their horses, and on their knees bid her welcome: but she likewise dismounted, and entered a Tent that was prepared and set up for that purpose, where she permitted her hands to be kissed by several of the Nobility. Great thanks was returned to Don Brianel and his companions, not only for the good they had done them in recovering the kingdom, and in that restoring their Liberties which were formerly lost by the usurpation of the late Tyrants, but also for their making them so happy in the sight of their dear Princess, whom they had now brought home to them. After a short repast which was provided in the Tent was ended, they all mounted again with a resolution to enter the City: the place where they had stayed was a league from the City, yet all the fields and places during their passage was beset with multitudes of people, who cried with continual noise, The Gods preserve our Royal Queen Aurora. Being thus accompanied, they entered the City, and in good order arrived at the Palace, where by reason it was night, the Princess dismissed the multitude with thanks, and so every one being much wearied with this days journey, went to take their ordinary repose. The next day they were no sooner up, but the cry continued, and great was the acclamations that were made by the multitude.

That which the Queen took first into her consideration, was the ordering of her household, and the first Officer she made was the Controller thereof, which Office she gave to Don Brianel, intending ere long to make him Controller of her Person. This joy continued many days, and many were the Jousts and Tournaments that were exercised to delight the Queen, in which exercise the Knights that accompanied her thither, still bore away the prize, however the Count Gariano demeaned himself like a valiant and hardy Knight, maintaining the Jousts for one day against all Knights-adventurers, in which time he dismounted above twenty Knights.

The Queen understanding one day that Don Clarineo, and Don Lucidamore, Don Contumeliano, and Florispiano intended to leave her Court, and to go seek out adventures elsewhere, resolved before their departure to consummate her marriage with Don Brianel,

Brianel, to whom she communicated the matter, and he had demeaned himself so courteously, that he questioned not but that it would be to the general satisfaction of her Nobility, and therefore knowing the mind of the Princess, he discovered it to Damarmino, and Gariano, and several others of the Nobility, and the next day the Queen being in Counsel, one of her Nobility propounded a husband to her, which proposition was no sooner made, but the general debate of the Counsel was of that matter, and after several propositions, Don Brianel was by several of his Friends propounded, and indeed for the restoration of the Princess, was so far had into consideration, that he was by common consent propounded for a fit Husband for their Queen, who no sooner had the proposition made her, but she willingly assented thereto, and presently orders were given for the solemnization of the Marriage, which was intended to be kept within a fortnight after. This news gave great satisfaction and content to Don Clarineo, and Don Lucidamore, that their Cousin had so great good fortune, to be wedded to so virtuous a Princess, and therefore notwithstanding their former resolutions to depart they and Contumeliano and Florispiano resolved to stay, and assist at the Solemnization of those Ceremonies, where we will leave them in great content, to treat of other matters.

CHAP. X.

How the Princes Periano of Persia, and Gramalis of Thrace, were carried into the Desert of Death, and of that which happened to them there.

The Sage Fristone made such haste through the air with the wounded bodies of Periano and Gramalis, that in short time they arrived at the end of their journey, where being arrived, the Sage Fristone caused them who were all this while in a Trance to be taken out of the Chariot, and placed in beds in two several Rooms, and then commanded several Damselfs to attend the end of their fainting, which they accordingly did: the Prince Periano was the first that came to himself, when

when opening his eyes and looking about him, he fetched a great groan, the Damsels who were left to attend him, hearing thereof, presently came to him, and seeing his eyes open, they presently gave him something to drink out of a vial which he took, and then with a weak voice asked them in what place he was: They desired him to rest satisfied for the present, and he should know more of that hereafter, and in the mean time they desired him to permit them to dress his wounds, to which he consented, and they presently being very skillful in that mystery, applied such Remedies that they assured him that in few days he should be able to walk about his Chamber; and they further desired him for the present to dispose himself for rest, which he did accordingly, and they departed to inform the Sage Physician thereof, who was marvellously well satisfied in what they had done.

Gramolis continued in his swooning fit twelve hours longer then Perianco, but so soon as he had recovered any sense, he cryed out, by the Gods I will soon be revenged of this blow, and therewith endeavoured to rise from his bed, but could not through loss of blood, but fell down again: whereupon they who were left to attend him, gave him a cordial, and then dressed his wounds without speaking to him. Perianco after he had taken a sleep of about six hours awaked, and seeing no body neer him, he drew one of the Curtains of his bed, and perceived a Candle, by the light of which he deemed that he was in a large Chamber all hung with black, and that there was no other light in the Room, but what one Candle afforded, wherefoze finding his wounds to be bound up, and remembzing that he had some company, endeavoured to arise, but through faintness could not; then he called to mind the Wattle in which he was lately engaged and remembred that he had well nigh overcome his adversary, but remembred nothing of the two last blows that he had received which had brought him into this condition. Thus lay he musing and wondzing with himself what place he was in sometime believing all that he saw to be only fancy, and another while supposing himself to be in his Fathers Court laid out for dead in some Chamber there: and this he was perswaded to by reason of the blackness of every thing about him.

At length two Danieles entered the room at a door placed in a corner thereof, they were both habited in black, the one carried a Candle in her hand, and the other followed her with a Box wherein were Oynments and Plaisters: coming to the Bed-side they found him awake, and in pretty good condition. He seeing them continue their Silence, began thus to them: Ladies I have received one kindness from you already, for which I render you thanks, and desire you to binde me to you for another, which is, that you will tell me in what place I am, and how I came hither.

The Ladies hearing him speak with so great moderation, gave him this Answer : Sir Knight, how you came hither we know not, but yesterday you were brought in hither by the Lord of this place, whose name is Friarone, and delivered to our keeping, telling us that we must apply these Medicines to your wounds, shewing us likewise that you were such a person as was very well able to requite what kindness we should afford you : As for the name of this place we cannot tell you, for it is not long since we were brought hither by an adventure, of which we shall tell you more hereafter.

Thus after they had ended their discourse, they desired him to permit them to search his wounds, which he consented to, and they, after they had applied remedies to his wounds, departed, leaving him somewhat better satisfied than he was.

Thus these two Knights continued in this place several days, till at length they were so well recovered of their wounds, that they could walk about their Chambers. All this while was Friarstone in his study, turning over many Books to find out what should be the fortune of the Prince Perianco, and finding that when ever he should meet with Don Bellianis, his life would be much endangered: and well knowing that the Prince would endeavor to go to Babylon, if he were out of his possession, and that there he would meet with Don Bellianis, he resolv'd to prevent that meeting: wherefore one day as Perianco was walking in his Chamber, the sage Friarstone entred to him, and told him that he was very glad of his so sudden amendment in his health, to which Perianco knowing him, replied:

which Papias knowing him, replied :
Reverend Father, many have been the obligations wherein
P

you have bound your power, might, but this last hath been the most considerable, in that you have given help and assistance to me when I was not capable of helping my self: and good father, I have now but one request to you which I pray you to grant me, which is that you will tell me by what adventure I came I came hither and what was the issue of the Combat.

To which discourse Erifone thus answered, Sir Knight, it was not of a long time unknown to me of the Battel that you and your friends should undertake against the Emperor of Greece, his son, and friends, and of the danger that you should undergo therein, which I endeavoured to prevent by my Art, but your enemy Don Bellianis by reason of his word and armor which he hath lately won, cannot be hindered from the performance of any adventure, notwithstanding all the art of incantations that I can use, wherefore finding it in vain to attempt any thing by art to hurt him, I therefore applied my self to help you when there should be occasion, and understanding that your life, and that of two of your friends would be in great danger, and knowing that by my art I should be able to help you self and one or other of your friends, I therefore provided me a Chariot, in which I mounted the air at such time as you and your friends were entered the Combat, and arrived at the place of your fight, just as it had like to have been unfortunately finished; for Don Bellianis was just then about to deprive you of your precious life, and then he recounted to him, how he found him in the field in a France, and how that Gramalis of Thrace, and Caroliano, being in as desperate a contention as himself, he chose Gramalis and left the other, and brought both himself and Gramalis to that his habitation, where he had ordered the matter so well, that they were in pretty good condition.

Perianeo much wondering at this adventure, said: But good father, how will the Souldan my Father be satisfied with my condition? Then Erifone told him of the Pillar he left there, and the inscription thereon which had given satisfaction to him, and therefore advised him to rest contented; and so taking him by the hand he led him out of that Chamber into another adjoining, which was as dark as his own, and there they found Gramalis of Thrace walking about: Perianeo was not so much amazed

mazed to see him, as Gramalis was surprised to see the Prince enter his Chamber, for he knew not in the least where he was: for his wounds being somewhat more desperate than Perianeo's, Erifone had commanded those that attended him, not to use any discourse with him, least that should prejudice his health. They being thus met, kindly saluted each other, and then Perianeo recounted to Gramalis the manner how they were brought thither, the danger they had been in, and the care of which Erifone had taken of their healths, for which they both kindly returned him thanks. Thus these two friends being together, Erifone left them in loving communication, and went to take order about his other affairs.

They had not long walked together, but the two Damselfs that had attended them in their sickness, came in, to them, and brought with them several Comfits and preserved Fruits and things, wherewith they covered a Table and called the two Knights to sit down to eat, which they did, and then the Table being removed, Perianeo taking one of the Damselfs by the hand, led her to the bed-side where he thus spake to her.

My condition hath been so long of late, that I have been very much obliged to your care and pains, that I am now in so good a plight, for which your great care I render you all humble and hearty thanks, assuring you that when ever you have occasion to use me, you shall find that there shall be nothing so difficult unto me, but I will be ready to undertake it with exceeding great pleasure, so that I may serve you therein and therefore I pray I beseech you inform me of your condition, and the place where I now remain, The Damself perceiving that he had concluded, thus answered him: Sir Knight, I humbly thank you for your acceptance of my mean endeavors, and am glad that any thing that I can do will give you any pleasure, and to chuse that I may tell you your desires, know Sir, that I belong to an honorable Prince called Meridana, his daughter and heir to the valiant King George of Solia, who living at home with her father, was taken out of her Court one day by the Sage Erifone, who desired her father to give her, to pay an ancient adventure that could not be finished without her, and since that time I have followed the Sage Erifone to be his friend, con-

ted to her departure, and so the taking six of her Damselfs with her, whereof I and my companion are two, we travelled towards Babilon, where when we arrived, the sage Fristone told us that his design was to get the beauctious Princess Florisbella into his custody, whereby he might pleasure a Knight his very good friend; which adventure he had accomplished, but that there arrived at that instant a Knight armed with a rich Armour, beset with Basilisks, who hindered our attempt: then told the Prince the whole manner of his adventure: as it is at large set down in the forty second Chapter of the first part of this History, and then he thus proceeded: We being thus hindered from finishing this adventure, were immediately carried through the air till we arrived at an Island, where when we came down, we found it to be the most pleasant place in the whole world, for it was adorned with a most delightful Palace, and all manner of Gardens and Walks so delicious, that we having been there above six months, are not sensible of my inclemency in the air, but it still continues as pleasant as if it were the month of May, and it is now about a fortnight since the sage Fristone coming thither, requested our Masters to give us leave to go with him for a few days, promising that he should receive much satisfaction in our journey, and that we should speedily return: and as for the place where now we are, we know no other of it but that it is called the Desert of Death, and indeed it may properly enough be termed so, for I never was in any place so dolesome and melancholly as this is, there being no other light coming into this place but what a candle produceth, and the fields, which are but few, look as if no grass nor any other herb had ever grown there, and there are no trees but Yew grow here. This Sir Knight, is all that I can tell you of this adventure.

Gramalis of Thrace had likewise been attentive to this discourse, and they did much marvel at the strangeness of the Damselfs recital, but Perianco asked the Damself how far off it was to that pleasant Island where her Lady remained, and what company was with her. To which she answered, That it could not be very far to that Island, for they were but three hours in coming from thence, and that their Princess was

only accompanied with a Lady named Alice, who they found there, and which was very fair and beautiful, and the four Giants who keep the Palace as a guard, besides the Damselfs who waited on the two Ladies, and the two old Women who provided all manner of provision. Thus these two Damselfs having finished their discourse, they took their leaves of the two Knights and departed.

CHAP. XI.

How the two Princes Perianco of Persia, and Gramalis of Thrace, being thoroughly cured of their wounds, and walking in the Desert of Death, came to the water sides and finding a Barque went into her, which carried them immediately to the pleasant Island, and of that which happened to them there.

These two Knights being thus cured of their wounds, and being desirous to depart, besought the sage Fristone to let them have their Armour and furnish them with Horses that they might be gone: but he knowing the danger that Perianco would undergo if he went away, resolved to prevent it, and therefore would not consent, telling them that in short time an Adventure would happen wherein they would, if they performed it reap great benefit and content. This was all the satisfaction they could receive from him, wherefore they getting their Swords and Hunting-Javelins, spent their time in that Desert in hunting the wild Boar, and such like exercises. One day as they were hunting together, they went so far in pursuit of a Bear, that they came to the water side, and presently the beast took the water and quickly swam out of their sight: at which they being much troubled, sought for a Boat or some Barque to follow their Game, when suddenly looking about them, they espied a small Barque coming towards them; which being come on shore, they stepped into it and looking about for Oars, they were immediately carried from land, and carried a great way into the Sea, but on an instant the Sun shined so bright, and the Waters were as calm, and the air so serene and clear, that they

this which wonder, being come from a place that was dismal and cold. Thus the Barque went forwards without either Day or Stars till in the end they discovered Land, and saw that the Barque made speed thither; at which they rested contented, and in short time after they went ashore, not knowing were they were but going to take hold of the Barque to fasten it to somewhat against they should have occasion to use it, it suddenly vanished, at which they were much troubled: thus seeing there was no way to go back, they were resolved to go forwards, and onely armed with their Swords and Spears they set forwards: they travelled two hours in the pleasantest walks and fields in the world, without meeting with any thing, and hearing no noise onely the continual melody of the Birds gave them singular contentment: at length they espied a great Castle situated in a pleasant meadow, and encompassed with all manner of fruit trees, upon one of those trees there was a tablet whereon was inscribed:

If thou art so valiant as to undertake the entrance into this Castle, blow this Horn, and prepare thy self to be received.

This Inscription they had no sooner read, but they resolved to try the adventure, and therefore they cast lots who should first begin: The lot fell upon Gramalis, and therefore Perianco going somewhat out of the way, left Gramalis to undertake the adventure. He had no sooner blown the horn which hung by the Tablet, but two gates opened, and there issued out from thence a huge and monstrous Giant, armed at all points with a great Iron Pace in his hand, who seeing the Knight before him, said: Presumptuous villain, how darest thou unarmed undertake so great an enterprise, as to disturb the quiet of this place?

To which Gramalis answered, trouble not thy self at my being unarmed, but if I must combat thee before I gain my entrance, prepare thy self to Battle, and defend thy self: at which words the Giant lifted up the Pace, and came forward, threatening with one blow to end the Battle, but Gramalis quickly avoiding the stroke of the Pace with his hunting-horn, wounded the Giant in the thigh, and the next stroke gave him a great blow

blow on the arm, that he could not draw out his spear, but was forced to leave it sticking there: whilst the Giant drew the spear from his arm, Don Gramalis drew his sword, and went to finish the combat: but the enraged Giant did hit the Knight so great a blow on the shoulder, that he sorely bruised him, whereat Gramalis being greatly enraged, gave the Giant so great a blow on the other arm, that he let fall his Pace and roared like a Bull, and with the quantity of blood he lost, fell down: at which a Dwarf that was placed on the top of the Tower blew a horn, and immediately another Giant came forth, more deformed and horrible then the first, who resolved to revenge the wrong of his fellow, and therefore soon made up to Gramalis and assaulted him most fiercely, giving him many wounds, so that in the end Gramalis through the want of blood, and the pain he felt in his side, fainted and fell down. At which the Giant went forwards to kill him, but Perianco soon prevented him, assaulting him in such marvellous manner, that he made him keep company with his fellow on the ground: at which the Dwarf once more sounded his horn, and then there issued out two Giants of a very great size, who carried great Paces on their shoulders, and cutting Faulchions at their sides, and without any discourse they both fell upon the Prince, and gave him many weighty blows which he received on his spear: but in the end that being broken he drew his sword, and valiantly defended himself, still avoiding their blows, and dammaging his adversaries, so that they seeing that that they only beat the air, or the ground, were much enraged and came near to him to destroy him, but he nimbly stepping within them, made them lose their blows, and he hit one of them on the leg so great a blow, that he made a great wound, and the Giant not being able to stand, fell on the earth, whereupon the other Giant his Companion seeing that if he continued that manner of fighting, he should remain vanquished as well as his Companion, he threw away his Pace, and ran with great eagerness on the Knight, thinking to catch him in his arms, and there to squeeze him in peices: but he being very strong, sorely withered the Giant before he got within him, and then wrestled so with him, that they both fell to the earth, the Giant holding Perianco close in his arms: but he remembering

membring that he had a dagger in his pocket, quickly drew the same and stabbed him in three or four places in such manner, that he let go his hold, whereat Perianco got on his feet, though sorely wounded, and approached to the gates of the Castle, which being open he entered, and walking through a great Hall he went into a Parlor, the most beautiful in the World, where he saw two Ladies who were placed above the rest, and about twelve Damselfs attending on them, to whom he said :

Divine Beauties, for no less can I esteem of you, Providence having brought me on shore on this Land, I made bold arriving at this Castle to enter therein but I was hindered by several whom I suppose were left to guard the same, whom I have so ordered in combat, that I remain the victor, and therefore I make bold to approach your presence, humbly craving your pardon, and desiring to know of you whether there be any thing further to be done whereby I may do you any service, and whither what I have already done be not prejudicial to you.

To which speech one of the Ladies replied, That indeed the Giants were placed there as Guardians of that place, but since by his invincible valor they were subdued, he was as welcome as themselves, & all things there was free to his disposal: at which speech he rested satisfied, onely he desired that the wounded might be taken care of, and more especially a Knight who was wounded, and a friend of his: at which discourse several of the Damsels went out with him where they found the Giants and the Knight still lying on the ground, wherefore he helped to convey them to beds, and the Damsels applyed such plaisters and medicines to their wounds, that in short time they were cured of the same.

Being cured, the Giants and Knights remained loving friends, resolving to assist each other, and the Knights had no desire to go from that place, for the Ladies whom they saw were the two Princess Meridiana and Alce, who took very great good liking to the two Knights Perianco and Gramalis, who loved them as well. so that in the end their friendship arrived to that height, that they resolved never to leave one another all daies of their lives: and the Prince Perianco was so amorous of the Princess Meridiana, that he quite forgot the Princess Florisbella, and she no less loved him, so that at length he enjoyed the Princess as

fully

fully as if she had been his Wife and she permitted him to crop that Maiden-flower, and enter that Virgin Zone, which had cost the lives of many valorous Knights.

On the other side Gramalis of Thrace and the Princess Alce loved each other with as fond affection, and she permitted him to be Lord of her body, and to take such fruit from thence as pleased him best.

Thus these two Ladies and Knights lived together in all manner of delight, and the two Knights plyed themselves so well in their Nocturnal Embraces, that both the Princesses were with Child; which was great joy and content to them all: which pleasure we shall leave them, and return to give you an account of other Adventures.

CHAP. XII.

How the Princess Persiana and her Husband Duke Alfiron were conducted to Shyrax by Don Bellianis of Greece, and the Kings of Armenia and Tessfany, where by the way they met with an Adventure.

Thus having left these two Princes and Ladies in all content and pleasure, let us return to the Princess Persiana and the Company that attended on her, who travelled many days without happening on any Adventure: at length Don Bellianis being very pensive, travelled one day before the rest of the company, and being very melancholly for he thought of his dear Mistress the Princess Florisbella, on a sudden he heard a voice call to him, saying, Sir Knight, I beseech you tell me where is the next City, that I may go quickly to it and procure some aid to some persons of great quality that stand in need of help. Don Bellianis giving attention to this discourse, and seeing it was a Lady that spake to him, he thus replied: Fair Lady, if you be not in extream great haste, I beseech you relate to me the occasion of your travel, it is possible that

G

that I may furnish you with that assistance you expect. Ah Sir Knight, replied the Lady, it is not in the power of any one particular Knight to effect that which must be done; therefore good Sir either Answer me the question, or permit me to go towards. Lady, said Don Bellianis, not far from hence there is much company coming who will be with us presently; therefore I pray relate to me your business while they come to us; and then I shall furnish you with such help as shall be needful. The Lady understanding that he spake nothing but reason, thus replied: Kneel then, Sir Knight, that I belong to the virtuous Princess Mattarosa, Daughter to the King of Numidia, and Niece to the Souldan of Babylon: this Princess hath for many years lived at the Court of the Souldan her Uncle, in the Company of the Princess Florisbella her Cousin, but of late her Father being grown Old, and desirous to dispose of her in marriage before he died, sent her Brother Balcasano to the Court of the Souldan to bring his Sister to him: Balcasano after he had continued some time in the Court of the Souldan, desired leave to depart with his Sister to her Father that expected them; to which it was a long time ere he could get the Souldans consent in regard of the great love that hath been between her and his daughter Florisbella. About two Months since there was great Jousts and Tournaments held at the Souldans Court in honor of his Coronation Day: at which time many strange Knights and Gyants repaired thither to do their utmost endeavors, amongst the rest that came, there was one Gyant called Altifer the Proud, Lord of an Island in the Sea, and his two Brothers, and forty Knights. This Gyant beholding my Mistress the Princess Mattarosa, began to affect her, and performed some things for her honor, hoping thereby to get her good Will: but she who always hated him, as well for the deformity of his mind as body, would by no means consent to come into his Company much less to receive him as a Servant, and he having desired her of her Uncle the Souldan, and her Brother, who both refused him; went away with all his Company in much discontent resolving to put in practice some treasonable action that he might obtain her.

Our Princess and her Brother, who suspected no such treason, some

some time after he was gone, having taken leave of the Souldan and the Princess Florisbella, departed in the Company of twenty Knights for their Guard: but we had not travelled above two days when this Traytor Altifer with all his company set upon us, slew many of our Knights, and took the Princess and her Brother Prisoners. I seeing that they were taken, fled from them, and have followed them these three days to see still where they lodged at Night, and endeavouring to find some help to relieve them, and Sir Knight, this is the last day before they will embarque themselves for the Island whereof he is Chief, and then all the means that I can use, will be ineffectual for their Release. This Sir Knight, is the substance of my Message, and therefore pray fail not to give me the best directions you can.

Don Bellianis having heard this Discourse, and considering that in relieving the Princess Mattarosa, he should do his Princess her Cousin a considerable service, resolved to undertake it, and therefore the Company being now come up to him, he went to the Princess Persiana and her Husband, and recounted to them the Damselfs discourse, and told them that he must beg leave of them to go and relieve the Princess and her Brother, promising them to return with all speed possible, as soon as he had effected his Enterprize.

They not only consented to his departure, but also gave him leave to take what company of Knights he desired: but he choosing only twenty of the most hardy, left the rest to conduct them to Shyrax, and so he took his leave, and departed with the Damsel, who seeing her Journey turn to so good account, was very thankfull, and rode on apace to assist her Princess.

CHAP.
The Princess Persiana and her Husband, and the twenty Knights, who were left to conduct them to Shyrax, arrived at the City of Shyrax, and found that the Princess and her Brother were not yet come. They then continued their Journey, and arrived at the City of Shyrax, and found that the Princess and her Brother were not yet come.

C H A P. X I I I.

How Don Bellianis went with the Damsel of the Princess *Marcarosa*, to relieve her out of the hands of the Gyant *Altifer* and his Company : And how he and his Company overcame the Gyant and his two Brethren and Company, and Released the Princess and her Brother *Baltasano* : And how she knew him to be the *Knight of the Golden Image*, and how she and her Brother left him, to depart towards *Babylon*,

IT was yet but early in the morning when Don Bellianis and his Company parted, and therefore we will leave them in their Journey towards *Shiraz*, to tell you what befel Don Bellianis, who travelled so long with the Damsel that at last they arrived in sight of a Castle seated on a Rock, which when the Damsel espied, she said, Sir Knight, this is the Castle where the Gyants and the other company lodged this night, and I believe they are not as yet come out of it, because he that is Lord of this Castle is of kindred to the Gyant *Altifer*, and therefore I pray let us attend here for their coming forth. Don Bellianis therefore advising with himself, left two of his Knights to attend there, whilst he and the rest travelled on the way the Gyants were to take, and there they hid themselves in a thicket of Trees.

It was not fully an hour before the two Knights came galloping again to Don Bellianis, informing him that the Gyants and their company were come out of the Castle, and were coming thitherwards with the prisoners. The Prince *Baltasano* they tyed on a horse with his hands behind him, and so they did to about twelve Knights more that were prisoners, and the Princess *Marcarosa* and several of her Damsels, were carried before certain Knights on horseback, and did make great lamentation.

The Knights did likewise advise Don Bellianis not to set on the Gyants and their company as yet, for that the Gyant of the Castle where they lay was come out with them, with above twenty Knights to bear them company a little way, and there-

fore

fore it was best to forbear setting on them till they were gone: To this advise Don Bellianis could hardly be perswaded, so earnest was his desire to do some signal Service for his Lady the Princess *Florissella*; but in the end he was overruled by the Damsel, and promised to attend their parting for an hour or two, and if they did not by that time leave one another, that he would set upon them all. And in this resolution he marched forwards, commanding the two Knights to go back & give him notice of what should happen, which was done accordingly. Thus did Don Bellianis march on for one hour in great expectation, till at length the two Knights came to him to inform him that now was the time, for the Gyants kinsman was departed, and there was not above thirty five Knights and three Gyants, and ten of the Knights were employed in guarding of the prisoners that were with them.

Never was Don Bellianis so well pleased in all his life as he was at this instant, and therefore commanding all his Knights to be in a readiness, he turned back his horse, and went to meet the Gyants and their company. Don Bellianis had not rid far before he met with them, the two Gyants brothers to *Altifer*, riding before the rest on great horses, and with Iron Waces hanging on their Saddle-bows. Our Knights went strait up to them, and some of the Princesses Damsels making a lamentation, Don Bellianis enquired what was the cause why they forced Ladies to go with them against their wills : to which one of the Gyants proudly answered, It were best for you, Sir Knight, to keep on your way, and not to meddle with the affairs of others, not being called thereto. To which he answered, that he and all other Knights were bound to enquire into the affairs of distressed Ladies, and to relieve them to their power, whereupon one of the Gyants laid hold on his Wace, thinking to dash him in peices, but he turning his horse on one side, couched his Lance and run so fiercely on the other Gyant, that he forced him to measure his length on the earth, at whose example all the rest of the company did the like, and they per-formed their parts so well, that sixteen Knights and two Gyants were dismounted, and six were slain out right.

The Giant *Altifer* seeing himself so beset, presently couched his lance and did some mischief : But Don Bellianis soon hin-

dered

died him from proceeding, for he reached him such a stroke that he made his horse bend his knees to the Ground, and his Master catch hold of his horse neck to keep himself from falling, and then crying Florisbella, and Victory, he gave two such mighty strokes to two Knights that stood in his Way, that he sent them tumbling to the Earth, and then coming to the Prince Baltasano, he immediately unbound him, and gave him a Sword, by whose example the rest of his Knights released the rest of the prisoners and then began the fight to be most bloody.

The Giant Alcifer, and his two brothers seeing the valor of that one Knight, resolved to set upon him, and so they all three came with the same resolution, but he quickly seeing the danger he was likely to run into, if he did not dispatch, gave one of them so powerful a blow, that he cut off his Arm, and forced him to let his Face fall to the Ground.

The two brothers seeing this, came with both their Faces at once, intending to beat him to peices, but Baltasano who he had unbound having gotten a Sword, Buckler and Helmet, received one of them, and gave him in return so puissant a stroke, that he cut off one of his arms and wounded him in the Shoulder: the enraged Giants did all they could to revenge the Wounds they had received, and Alcifer himself seeing that he was like to lose his Mistress, left the Combat, and coming to the Knight that had the Princess in guard before him, and took her and set her on his own horse before him, and did ride away with all the speed possible: at which action the Damsels gave a great screech, which Don Bellianis hearing much wondered, and leaving the fight, turned himself about, but he had no longer perceived the cause, but like lightning he made hast after him, and being very well mounted, he soon overtook him; which the Giant seeing, he let fall the Lady, and turned about to encounter Don Bellianis, being glad that he had gotten him alone, and Don Bellianis was no less glad then he, not only for that, but also in regard that he had let go the Princess, fearing much that if he had held her still he might have been hurt in the combat. Thus these two Combatants equally resolved, assailed each other, and gave and received many Wounds; but Don Bellianis whose valor was not to be equalled by any Giant or Knight, resolving now in the presence of his

Ladies kind woman to shew the utmost effects thereof, gave the Giant two such mighty blows, that with the one he cut off his Leg, and with the other he quite killed him.

The Princess all this while beholding the Combat and seeing the mighty blows Don Bellianis gave the Giant, could not imagine who it should be, and that so much worth and strength should remain in one single Knight, but well viewing his arms, she remembered him to be the Knight of the Bassicks, who had done such brave acts at Babylon for the relief of her Cousin the Princess Florisbella, and viewing her Picture on his Shield, she immediately cried out, Ah worthy Knight: pattern of all true Valor and Magnanimity, much am I bound to you for your great aid and assistance, and many thanks have I cause to render you for this so mighty deliverance in this my most extreme necessity: Having thus said, she came near him to kiss his hands, but he refused that and kindly embracing her, said: Madam, it is time for us to return back to see in what condition the Prince your Brother is, and if occasion be to lend him my assistance: wherefore he caused her to mount on the Giants horse, and he mounting on his own, set forwards towards the place of the Combat: in which time she again thanked him for the aid he had afforded her, promising him to do him all the affairs of Love or friendship that she could, if he would please to come to the Souldan of Babelons Palace as he had formerly promised, telling him that she was now resolved to return back thither, and assuring him that the Princess Florisbella her Cousin had an extraordinary esteem for him, and expected his coming: and she assured him that she would endeavor to increase her good affection towards him.

Much joyed was Don Bellianis at this discourse, and thus they arrived at the place of Combat, where the two Giants and all their Knights were either slain or vanquished: Thus was this fight happily ended to the eternal honor of Don Bellianis.

The Damsels of the Princess presently applyed some Remedies to the Wounds of Don Bellianis his Knights, and then every one mounting his horse, they rid on: The Prince Baltasano was very thankful for this assistance, and promised Don Bellianis an eternal friendship: thus they Rode on together some time

time, till at length the Princess and her brother were resolved not to proceed in their journey with so slight a guard, but to go back to Babylon, to which place they invited Don Bellianis, who made his excuses for the present, promising them that within a month he would not fail to wait upon them there: and thus after many several discourses, they coming to a way that went towards Babylon, they took their leaves of Don Bellianis, and parted thitherwards, leaving him and his Knights to travel to the City of Shyras to meet with the Princess Persiana, and Duke Alfron.

C H A P. X I V.

How Don Bellianis and his Knights overtook the Princess Persiana, Duke Alfron, and the rest of the Company, and how they all entered into the City of Shyras.

DON Bellianis and his Knights travelled so fast, that within three hours after they overtook their company, for the Princess and her Husband made but easie marches, and had stayed at a Town not far off to dinner: When Don Bellianis came before the Duke and the Princess, they asked him how he had sped in his enterprise: whereupon he gave them such an account, that they rested very well satisfied: they were now come within two leagues of Shyras, and many of the Nobility had already come to them to give them the welcome, which they thankfully received.

After they had passed the Tapyrian Mountains, they came to a great River called Bradamir, which watereth the City, and afterwards falleth into the Persian Gulph with twenty miles circling about on the land: when they came near the City, it was the pleasantest thing in the World to behold, so stately a Building, twenty stately Temples appeared at one time, and the Pallace with its lofty Towers made an extraordinary splendour in the eyes of the Spectators. Infinite was the resort of the Plebeians that came out to behold their new King and Queen, and when they were a mile off from the City, the Chief Magistrates came out to do their homage to the King and Queen, and in

In this manner they entered the City, which is one of the most ancient and famous through all that part of the World. Here Art Magick was first hatched. Here Nimrod, after the confusion of Babel, lived and was buried. Here Cyrus the most excellent of Heathen Princes was born, and all but his head intombed. Here the great Alexander glutted his ambition and drunkenness. Here the first Sybilla sung our Saviors Incarnation. Hence the Magi are thought to set forth toward Bethelam, and here many Kings have swayed their Scepters: in fine it is a place defended by nature, enriched by trade, by art made lovely, the Vineyards, Gardens, Cypresses, and Temples, ravish the eye, and smell in every part sweet and delightful.

These excellent persons were received into this most delightful place, with a great deal of solemnity and joy, and in all the principal places of that City, and all other places of the nation, they were immediately proclaimed King and Queen of Shyras, Lar, and Jaarown, Lord and Lady of Ormus, Maqueroon, Ceremoen, Chusestam, Sigestan, and Farsestan, Prince and Princess of the Gulph of Persia, and of the Isles there. These were the titles, and great was the joy and acclamations of all that vast kingdom, which reaches above six hundred miles round about. If I should recite to you the many shews, pageants, and triumphant arches that were built, and the several congratulatory Speeches that were that day made to their new King and Queen, I should as much weary you with the reading, and my self with the writing thereof, as they were that day wearied with the hearing of them, and indeed they were so tedious, that although they came to the City by two of the clock afternoon, yet was it nine of the clock at night before they came to the pallace: whither they being arrived, they dismissed most of their subjects, and being much wearied they went to take their ordinary repose, which through weariness every one enjoyed, except Don Bellianis whose desires were wholly fixed on the incomparable Florisbella, from whose presence he had been so long absent, that he was in great doubt of his reception into her service, but the promise that day made him by the Princess Mattarosa, did somewhat console his disturbed fancy. Thus spent he the whole night in continued contemplations till day appearing, he rose

he was so extremely enraged, that throwing away his Lance without making any use thereof, he drew his Sword, which his enemy likewise did, and gave Don Bellianis a mighty blow on the Helm.

The Knight of the Island of Pearls having given his enemy no such notable strokes without receiving any, did certainly assure himself of the better of the Combate: but was quickly of another mind, when Don Bellianis being thoroughly enraged, lifting up his Sword, gave the Knight so mighty a blow, that he tumbled him down from his Horse: But he soon recovered his Legs and Sword, and went on to kill the Horse of his enemy, which Don Bellianis seeing, he quickly dismounted and assaulted his enemy with many strokes, which were returned with great strength. During the time of this Combate with the Knights, their Horses began a fierce Combate, for they ran violently against one another, and lifting up their fore feet wounded each other, and what they could not do, they performed with their teeth, biting one another in marvelous manner, to the great astonishment of the beholders. Thus continued they a good while, but in the end Don Bellianis his Horse caused the other to run away, which was taken notice of to be a good Omen to his Master, who in the mean time was not idle: But resolving so soon as this Combate was finished to be gone, therefore he did his utmost endeavor to vanquish his enemy, whom he had so wounded in severall places, that it was impossible for him to continue much longer. But Don Bellianis being much vexed at the tediousness of the fight, lifting up his Sword very high, gave the Knight so great a stroke on the Helm, that it cut it in pieces, and wounded his head in such manner that he fell to the earth, when presently setting the point of his Sword to his Breast, he asked him if he would acknowledge the King and Queen to be his lawful Sovereigns: To which the Knight replied, He would never consent to any such thing during his life. Whereupon Don Bellianis without any more ado, immediately cut off his Head, and then he went to the Herald, and commanded him to go forward with his Proclamation, which he accordingly did in open field, with the general acclamations of many thousands of people who were there present.

Thus

Thus this Combate being ended, Don Bellianis went to the King and Queen, and desired them to give him leave to depart immediately, which they were very unwilling to do, but he telling them that he was confident that they would have no further service to employ him in, and that he would ere long return and visit them, they consented to his departure: but the King was very desirous for him to take some number of knights along with him, which he wholly refused: But the Queen offered him a Dwarf which she brought with her from her Father's Court, whose service for the Queens sake he accepted, and so he presently departed on his Journey, in company of his own Dwarf and that which the Queen gave him, and they attended with all their Train, retired to the Pallace.

CHAP. XVI.

How Don Bellianis travelling to Babylon, met with a Damsel that was sent to finde him, and how he returned with her to the Souldans Pallace.

VVith great Joy and Content travelled the worthy Don Bellianis towards Babylon, being very earnestly desirous to arrive in the presence of his Lady, and in this manner he travelled two days without happening on any Adventure. The third day being mounted on Horse-back early in the morning he had not rid above an hour, contemplating on the divine Perfections of his most excellent Lady, and ruminating in his thoughts what service he should do that he might pretend to somewhat of her favor, and wishing for some extraordinary Adventure, that he might shew forth his worth, at length he met with a Lady attended with two Knights, who came riding on a main: They no sooner saw him, but the Lady who knew Don Bellianis by his Armor and Shield immediately with excess of Joy cried out, Oh most fortunate I that have so soon finished my Journey by meeting with the most Magnanimous and Valiant Knight: that ever drew Sword, and that at such a time when there is the greatest need in the world!

At

precious Stones of inestimable value on their heads, praying to the Gods to bless them with perpetual blessings, and blessing all their friends, and true and loyal Subjects, and cursing all such as were or should be their enemies. This Ceremony being performed, they both descended from their Thrones, and walking through the Temple remounted their Chariot, riding therein through the City with their Crowns on to the Court, where they were no sooner arrived, but the Tables were spread with all manner of delicious Viands that the Country could afford, many Healths going round the Table for the prosperity of the King and Queen. After Dinner was ended, before any person did arise from Table, the Herald at Arms (according to custome, did after the sound of an innumerable company of Trumpets) again proclaim the said Duke and Princess to be King and Queen of Shyrax, Larr, and Jaarown, Lord and Lady of Ormus, Maqueron, Kermoen, Ghulestan, Sigestan, and Farsestan, Prince and Princess of the Gulph of Persia, and of the Isles there.

These words he pronounced twice, and at the end of every such Proclamation he said, if any one had any right to the same, or any part thereof, he bid them come forth and declare the same. This had been done twice, and the Herald was about to begin the third time, when a Knight armed in an azure Armour, commanded him to hold his peace; which he obeyed, and then the Knight going up to the place where the King and Queen sat, spake as followeth.

Duke Alfron, for by no other name shall I own you: It is not unknown to most of the people here present, that my Title to this Crown of *Shyrax*, and all the Territories thereto belonging, is just and good, when they shall know that I am Son to the famous *Gozmin*, sometimes King of this place, I had long since expected that the Souldan would have restored me to my undoubted right, but since I see that he hath been so unjust as to give it away, I am to tell thee, that if thou wilt enjoy it, I must first be dead; and therefore I will thee presently to appoint at thy Champion to defend thy Title, and to enter into the Lists with me immediately, not questioning but the Gods will so far do me justice, that I shall be enabled to destroy thy Champion.

Having thus said, he held his peace: This Speech gave a wonderful

wonderful astonishment to all the persons there present, and gave the King and Queen a sensible trouble to be thus interrupted in the midst of their Solemnity. The King answered That he was so well satisfied in the Justice of the Quarrel, that he was ready himself to enter the Field to vindicate his Right, but the Queen dissuaded him therefrom, not questioning but that they should find some other Champion.

Many Knights presently arose, and desired the King and Queen that they might have the Honour of the Combate, but the King was resolved not to venture his Title in the hands of any, but such a one as he should be very confident of his worth, Don Bellianis thinking himself obliged to do somewhat, was resolved to undertake the Combate, and therefore arising from his seat, desired the King and Queen to admit him to be their Champion, and to put the trial of their Cause into his hands. The King would willingly have excused it, by reason of the many Obligations which he had already received from him: but Don Bellianis who was resolved not to be danyed, pressed them so hard, that at length they condescended. Whereupon he desired that the Combate might presently be performed. To which the other Knight willingly consented; and the place intended for the Lists, was the place appointed for the Combate; to which place every one presently repaired, much wondering at the presumption of the Knight of the Island of Pearls, for so he was called, and was known to be the best Knight in all that Countrey.

Don Bellianis having Armed himself, presently repaired to the place appointed for the Combate, where when he came, he found the Knight of the Island of Pearls, and the King and Queen, and most of the Nobility seated near the Lists, to behold this Combate. Both the Combatants were armed with very good Armour, Don Bellianis being armed with that famous Armour enriched with Basilisks, and his Shield whereon was the Picture of the Princess Florisbella, and mounted on an excellent Horse. The other Knight was as well armed and mounted, when taking each of them a Launce, at the sound of the Trumpets they couched their Launces, and Don Bellianis with the great desire he had to hit his enemy, missed his encounter: but the other knight did not so, but hit his enemy so fiercely on the Shield, that Don Bellianis lost both his Stirrups; whereat he

and went to salute the King and Queen, and humbly besought them since he had seen them safely received into their Kingdom, they would be pleased to give him leave to depart about his more weighty affairs. This discourse much troubled them, hoping that they should enjoy his company for a longer season, but since he was so desirous to be gone, they prayed him that he would do them so much honor as to stay ten days longer, in which time they intended to be Crowned.

Don Bellianis not well knowing how to deny any thing to persons so obliging, consented to this Request, provided that as soon as the Solemnity was ended, they would no longer desire to detain him from his Adventures: To which they both engaged themselves, and thereupon that day the King issued forth his Commands to all persons concerned to repair to the Court on that day seven night, to assist at the Ceremonies which were accustomed at the Coronation, with free liberty for all Knights, as well Christians as Pagans, to go and come at the same time, and during their stay to shew their Valour and Manhood in Tilt, Jousting, and all other knightly Exercises. This proclamation being sent abroad occasioned many Knights to resort to the Court, so that by the time prefixed for the Triumph, as well the fields adjoining to the City, as the City it self, was filled with Knights, so that it was a most delectable sight to behold, and most delicious to hear the sound of so many Warlike Instruments as was at that time heard. And the King caused certain Rays to be made on the outside of the City, within which the Knights were to Tilt and perform their Deeds of Knighthood, and caused a Throne to be placed there for himself and his Queen, and Seats for the rest of the Nobility, where they might sit and see the Tournaments: and he further ordained twenty Knights of his own, who were commanded by one Don Lorino Son to his Brother Don Gorino, a young and hardy Knight, to resist all strange Knights.

These things being thus ordained, all people with a great deal of impatience, till the appointed day for the Solemnity of the Coronation was come; which day being now come, there happened that which shall be declared in the chapter following.

CHAP. XV.

How the Day of the Coronation being come, there entered into the Court a Knight, who termed himself to be *The Knight of the Island of Pearls*, and demanded the Kingdom of Shyrax as his right, and offered to defend his Title in single Combate against any one Knight; which Combate *Don Bellianis* undertook, and vanquished him, and of his departure for *Babylon*.

The Kingdom of Shyrax, whereof the Duke *Alfiron* and the Princess *Persiana* were now in possession, had for many years belonged to the Souldan of Persia, Father to the Princess, who had given the same to his Daughter, as hath already been declared: But wee have not yet told you how the Souldan of Persia came by the same.

So it was, that the Father of this Souldan onely had tribute for the same of one *Gozmin*, a valiant Knight; but the said *Gozmin* for some trayterous enterprize was dispossessed of the same: He being executed, and his sons for ever disenabled to possess the same, for a just reward of their fathers treason, and then the Souldan took the same into his own possession, and ever after that took the immediate Profits thereof to his own use, onely appointing a Governour there, whom he placed and displaced as often as he thought fit, and in this condition he left it to his Son when he died, who (as I told you) gave it freely to his Son in Law Duke *Alfiron*, as a Portion with his Daughter. Now this *Gozmin* left two Sons behind him, both valiant and stout Knights, the eldest whereof lived in an Island in the Persian Gulph. called *The Island of Pearls*.

The day being come wherein this great Ceremony of Crowning the King and Queen was to be performed, every one arose early either to assist at, or behold the Ceremony: The King and Queen being ready, mounted in a Triumphant Chariot, and by four Unicorns were drawn to the great Temple, where they being arrived mounted on a Scaffold prepared to that purpose and then the Chief Flamin of the City, after the ordinary Ceremonies, placed two Crowns of Gold, enriched with many precious

At which words the Knight of the Golden Image much wondered, not knowing how he should be discovered in so strange a Countrey: But the Lady soon satisfied him of that doubt, by telling him that she belonged to the Princess Mattarola, and was one of those that was with her Mistress released from the power of the Giant Aliser and his Companions, by the strength and power of his invincible arm.

Don Bellianis much wondering to see her, courteously asked her in what health her Lady was, and the cause of her travel, To this, Sir Knight, replied she, I shall give you an answer, on condition that you forthwith go along with me to Babylon, and there present your self to my Mistress and the Princess Florisbella, and there receive such Orders from them as they shall give, to which Request he readily consented; wherefore they setting forwards on their Journey, the Lady began her Discourse as followeth.

Know then most valiant and redoubted Knight, that never since the Walls of Babylon was built by the brave Semiramis, was greater sorrow within that City then there is now, and never was there greater cause of mourning; for it is not a week since one of the greatest pieces of Treachery was committed that ever was heard of.

One day the Souldan, our Dread Lord, accompanied by his Emperess Silviana, the Princess Florisbella, the Princess Mattarola my Mistress, and many other great Personages, having been a Hunting, were met by a grave Old Man and two Damsels, they were all three drawn in a Chariot, and coming near our company, they all made the most pitiful complaint in the world: The Souldan taking compassion on them, demanded what was the cause of their so great complaint: To which speech the old man replied, that he being travelling to Babylon with those two Damsels and his Daughter, two Knights seeing his Daughter of admirable beauty, desired her company to abuse her, which she not consenting to, they endeavored to force her, and in the end notwithstanding all the resistance they could make, they drew her out of the Chariot, intending to execute their lusts upon her: but she resolving rather to dye than lose her honor, so long resisted them, that one of them most inhumanly drew

drew his Sword, and gave her so great a wound on the head, that she immediately fell as dead to the ground, which they seeing, immediately mounted their horses and departed leaving my poor daughter stretched along the grass struggling for life: In this manner we all remained making exceeding lamentations, when an old Patron coming by, and being told the occasion of our complaint, commanded us to bind up the wound, and lay her in the Chariot, telling us that she was not to be cured, but by one single touch of the fairest hand in the world, now Sir, we are going to Babylon, to see if we can find the person that shall cure this Lady.

The Souldan and his Daughter having heard this discourse, and seeing the Lady lie stretched along in the Chariot, presently were desirous to see where the wound was given, for which cause they both entered the Chariot, at which time the old man whipped his horses to make them go on, but they stirred not one jot, at which he much wondered, and the Princess coming to the body of the extended Lady, and touching her wound, she presently lifted up her head, and opening her eyes heartily thanked the Princess for her cure, for by her touching the wound she was immediately cured. Such did the old man wonder, that not withstanding all he could do to the horses that drew the Chariot he could not get them to move one foot, but they stood as if their feet had been fixed to the ground: and as much was the Princess, and the rest of the company pleased with the finishing of the adventure, and therefore the Princess seeing there was nothing else to be done, descended from the Chariot, which she had no sooner done, but the horses that drew it immediately fell a running in a very violent manner not giving the Emperess leave to come out, which the Ladies and Knights seeing, were greatly abashed thereat, and the Emperess commanded many of the Knights who were best mounted, to follow the Chariot and bring back the Souldan, but all their haste availed them nothing for the horses that drew the Chariot, ran with incredible swiftness, till they were pursued them quite lost sight thereof. Great was the lamentations and sorrows of the Emperess, the Princess her Daughter, and all the rest of the spectators, not knowing what was become of the Souldan, but they still hoped that some

of the Knights would overtake the Chariot, but though all the company stayed there six hours, and all the Knights were returned, yet no news was brought of the Souldan, onely that the Chariot was gone out of their sight.

Great was the sorrow of the Empress and her Daughter, and all the rest of the company, but it growing late they were forced to go back to the City in much dolor; by the way as they went a Damsel came, and meeting the Empress gave her a Letter, and immediately departed, which she greatly wondering at, caused the same to be immediately broken open, wherein was read as followeth.

The Letter of Bellona to the Empress Silviana.

M Adam, although it hath for many years been my greatest study and care to do all that I might for the preservation of you and your family, yet this late adventure could not be helped by me, and had not your Daughter been possessed of the Ring, which she sometime since received at the hands of the Knight of the Basilisks, she had fallen into greater danger of her person, then is now be fallen her Father, who is carried to such a place that it is impossible to release him, but by the best Knight in the world. Therefore Madam, rest your self contented, and be assured that he who gave your Daughter the Ring, is most capable of finishing this adventure. It will not be long before he arrives at your Court, and then if he travels to the Caspian Sea, he may give you and himself the satisfaction you desire.

Subscribed Bellona.

Such content and satisfaction did this Letter give to the Empress, and much more to her Daughter, considering the good she had received by your meanes, when she accepted of the Ring; and in this satisfaction they entered the City, and went to the Pallace, where they presently fell into consultation about what was necessary to be done: Some were of advice to expect your

your coming to the Court, according to the tenor of the Letter from Bellona, but the Empress and her Daughter were too impatient to attend your coming, and therefore the Princess Marcorisa having sometime before that given them an account how you had rescued her, they were very desirous to know which way you took when you parted from her: To which question she quickly answered, that you were then gone to Shyrax, but intended not to stay there long, wherefore they immediately hearing that I knew you by your Armoz, commanded me in company of these two Knights, to seek you out: and this Sir Knight, was the occasion of my journey.

Don Bellianis rested much perplexed and amazed at the discourse he had heard; perplexed, that his Lady was in so great sorrow, but withal he was very glad that fortune still pointed out something for him to do, whereby he might in part express the zealous love and affection which he had towards his Princess, not esteeming any thing that he could do, though with the extreme hazard of his life, a sufficient merit for the last favour that he should receive at the hands of his Lady. This discourse had held them a good part of the way, and they being come near Babylon, they resolved to reach thither that night wherefore they made the greatest haste they could, so that before Sun-set they arrived in the City, and rode presently to the Court, where they were received by the Empress and her Daughter, and other great personages, as shall be related to you in the next Chapter.

CHAP. XVII.

How Don Bellianis arrived at the Souldan of Babylons Palace and how he was received by the Empress and Ladies, and of his discourses with the Princess Florisbella and Marcorisa.

Before I tell you how Don Bellianis was entertained at the Pallace, it will be necessary to tell you what was become of the Souldan, The sage Friskone, friend to Perianio, and enemy to Don Bellianis, being destroyed by the utmost of his Art to pleasure Perianio, and knowing of the

great love that he bore to the Princess Florisbella, did, as was related to you in the first Book of this History, endeavor by means of the enchanted Tent, to get her into his possession, but hindered of his purposes by the sudden arrival of Don Bellianis, who by means of the Enchanted Sword and Armes that he had on, finished that Adventure to the disgrace and trouble of Friskone, he being himself wounded, his Tent vanishing away, and the Princess Florisbella saved: This misfortune bred him so much, that he endeavored all that he could to be revenged, and therefore knowing that Don Bellianis would about this time come to Babylon, and be very likely to win the Princess, resolved to prevent him, and therefore caused that Chariot to be provided, and all other things which met the Souldan, as is declared in the fore going chapter, hoping to get her into the Chariot, and then assuring himself that when he lashed the horses, they would run so fast, that he needed not fear to be overtaken: Being thus furnished, he arrived neer Babylon, as is related in the fore going chapter, and having by his piteous discourse induced the Souldan and his Daughter to come into the Chariot, he was very joyful, but when he thought himself most sure he failed of his enterprise, by means of the Ring which Don Bellianis gave her, which had the power over all Enchantments; but so soon as she was descended from the Chariot, his Enchantments had their full power, and by that means he carried away the Souldan, as is already declared.

So long did they travel that at last they arrived at a riverside, and such power had Friskone with his spells, that the Souldan remained all this while in a Trance, whose body they took out of the Chariot and placed in a barque which lay there ready, and so having imbarqued themselves, they presently set sail and sailed so long that they arrived in the Caspian Sea, which they crossed, and on the north part thereof landed in the Island, whither being come, they conveyed the body of the Souldan into a most strong Castle, and there Friskone put so strong a Guard upon him: that he thought it invincible; in which place we must leave the Souldan to return to his Court at Babylon.

Don Bellianis being arrived there, as I have told you, he accompanied

accompanied with the Lady that conducted him entered into the presence of the Empress, who was at that time accompanied with her fair Daughter the Princess Florisbella, the Princess Martarosa, the Prince of Numidia her Brother, and many other great personages. The Princess Florisbella was at that time attired in Purple Velvet beset with many Oriental Pearls, and a Crown of Gold and Jewels of mighty value on her head; but all her habit, though it was of an inestimable value, was but a foil to set forth her rare personage: her eyes shining far brighter than all her Jewels, and indeed nothing did so well resemble them, as the pure light of the Sun, there came so many radiant beams from them, that Don Bellianis being approached the presence, and having pulled off his Helmet, was so blinded with the pure light that issued from them, that he was in a manner dazzled: and all her other parts were so perfectly rare, that Venus her self had she been there, would have blished to have seen her self out-gone in beauty.

The Princess on the other side, having never till now seen the face of Don Bellianis, was so surprized with his manly beauty, that she concluded him to be the only Paragon in the world, and that all beauty and valor was worthily in that one person concentrated.

The Lady who conducted him thither, seeing that he continued silent, thus began: Say it please your Excellent Highness, to behold an end of my Journey, for by the help of our Gods here is before you the person that shall so far content you, that you may certainly expect the deliverance of my Lord the Souldan in short time to be accomplished.

Don Bellianis being very sensible of the error he had run into by his silence, said to the company: Most excellent Princesses, what ever my mean labor can accomplish either in releasing the Souldan, or in any other Affair, assure your selves I shall be most willing to undertake it, & shall thank my good fortune if any thing I can do to the utmost hazard of my life, shall give you any pleasure; and therefore most illustrious Empress, give me the honor to be commanded by you, and I shall run to the accomplishment thereof, though it be to my certain death, and shall think that part of my life best bestowed, wherein I can in any manner please or content you.

great love that he bore to the Princess Florisbella, did, as was related to you in the first Part of this History, endeavor by means of the enchanted Tent, to get her into his possession, but hindered of his purposes by the sudden arrival of Don Bellianis, who by means of the Enchanted Sword and Armes that he had on, finished that Adventure to the disgrace and trouble of Friskone, he being himself wounded, the Tent vanishing away; and the Princess Florisbella saved: This misfortune vexed him so much, that he endeavored all that he could to be revenged, and therefore knowing that Don Bellianis would about this time come to Babylon, and be very likely to win the Princess, resolved to prevent him, and therefore caused that Chariot to be provided, and all other things which met the Souldan, as is declared in the fore going chapter, hoping to get her into the Chariot, and then assuring himself that when he lasked the horses, they would run so fast, that he needed not fear to be overtaken: Being thus furnished, he arrived near Babylon, as is related in the fore going chapter, and having by his piteous discourse induced the Souldan and his Daughter to come into the Chariot, he was very joyful, but when he thought himself most sure he failed of his enterprize, by means of the Ring which Don Bellianis gave her, which had the power over all Enchantments; but so soon as she was descended from the Chariot, his Enchantments had their full power, and by that means he carried away the Souldan, as is already declared.

So long did they travel that at last they arrived at a riverside, and such power had Friskone with his spells, that the Souldan remained all this while in a Trance, whose body they took out of the Chariot and placed in a barque which lay there ready, and so having embarked themselves, they presently set sail and sailed so long that they arrived in the Caspian Sea, which they crossed, and on the north part thereof landed in the Island, whither being come, they conveyed the body of the Souldan into a most strong Castle, and there Friskone put so strong a Guard upon him, that he thought it invincible; in which place we must leave the Souldan to return to his Court at Babylon.

Don Bellianis being arrived there, as I have told you, he accompanied

accompanied with the Lady that conducted him entered into the presence of the Empress, who was at that time accompanied with her fair Daughter the Princess Florisbella, the Princess Martarosa, the Prince of Numidia her Brother, and many other great personages. The Princess Florisbella was at that time attired in Purple Velvet beset with many Oriental Pearls, and a Crown of Gold and Jewels of mighty value on her head; but all her habit, though it was of an inestimable value, was but a foil to set forth her rare personage: her eyes shining far brighter than all her Jewels, and indeed nothing did so well resemble them, as the pure light of the Sun, there came so many radiant beams from them, that Don Bellianis being approached the presence, and having pulled off his Helmet, was so blinded with the pure light that issued from them, that he was in a manner dazed: and all her other parts were so perfectly rare, that Venus her self had she been there, would have blushed to have seen her self out-gone in beauty.

The Princess on the other side, having never till now seen the face of Don Bellianis, was so surprized with his manly beauty, that she concluded him to be the only Paragon in the world, and that all beauty and valor was worthily in that one person concentrated.

The Lady who conducted him thither, seeing that he continued silent, thus began: May it please your Excellent Highness, to behold an end of my Journey, for by the help of our Gods here is before you the person that shall so far content you, that you may certainly expect the deliverance of my Lord the Souldan in short time to be accomplished.

Don Bellianis being very sensible of the error he had run into by his silence, said to the company: Most excellent Princesses, what ever my mean labor can accomplish either in releasing the Souldan, or in any other Affair, assure your selves I shall be most willing to undertake it, & shall thank my good fortune if any thing I can do to the utmost hazard of my life, shall give you any pleasure; and therefore most illustrious Empress, give me the honor to be commanded by you, and I shall run to the accomplishment thereof, though it be to my certain death, and shall think that part of my life best bestowed, wherein I can in any manner please or content you.

The Empress having heard and beheld him, replied: Noble Knight, your presence at this time is most acceptable, and we are so far obliged to you for your last company, and the hazard that you then underwent for the deliverance of our Daughter, that I cannot with modesty tell how to desire you to hazard your person any more for us: but since the Gods are pleased to place all their virtues within your bosom, and so to decree it that none but your self was born to assist us, I shall be thankful to the Gods for so providing a person, who may be rightly termed The deliverer of the House of Babylon, for without your help we should infallibly perish, and therefore good Sir Knight, repose your self for a few days, and then take such help for the accomplishment of this adventure as you shall think fit, and which the whole Empire will afford, that you may once more restore a Husband to me a sorrowful wife, a Father to an afflicted daughter, and a Prince to his loving subjects.

Having thus said, she descended from her Throne, and came to the place where Don Bellianis was kneeling, and raising him from the ground, he humbly kissed her hands, and then went to the place where the Princess Mattarola sat, not daring as yet to go to the Princess Floribella, and humbling himself on his knee he kissed the hand of the Princess Mattarola, saying to her: Madam, when I last left you, I gave you my word that I would ere long wait upon you at this place, to obey your commands, and in order thereunto I was coming hither, when the Lady met me and relating to me the misfortune of the Souldan, which hath given me a very sensible addition to let that any thing should give a trouble to such divine personages as are here present: But Madam, assure your self, that I will employ all the remaining part of my life in finishing this adventure, but I will give you the contentment you expect and desire in the presence of the Souldan. Mattarola, who was sensible of the love and affection that the Princess her Cousin had for the valiant Don Bellianis, and being resolved to pleasure her, said: Dear Cousin, you need not question the performance of this adventure, since it is put into the hands of such a Knight whose worth I am very well satisfied, and without whose aid I had ere this time been in my grave: for I would certainly have given my self a violent death

death, rather than have consented to the lubidinous desire of that monstrous Giant who had me in his possession. The Princess Floribella now thought it fit for her to speak, and therefore she said, I am so well satisfied in the worth of this Knight, that I question not the performance of any thing he will undertake, and I have had so sufficient proofs both of his judgement and valor, that I have found the effects to be such, that I am much engaged to him therefore, and I my self had either been a prisoner or worse twice ere this but for him, for which two remarkable Services I am still bound to him, and shall alway acknowledge my self his debtor, both for the service he did me, and for the precious token he left with me, without which I had now been in company of my Father, and therefore none hath more cause to esteem of his virtue then my self: and then turning her self towards him, she said: Assure your self, Sir Knight, that I esteem my self more bound to you then to all men living, and shall always acknowledge it, and next unto my parents I shall be always ready to be disposed of by your commands.

She having thus finished her discourse, Don Bellianis was almost ravished with delight, and humbly kissing her fair hand, and fetching a great sigh, he replied: Ah dear Madam, all that I have yet done for you, or that be able to perform the remaining part of my life, is already sufficiently recompensed by this immense labor you have so prodigally bestowed in the humblest of your servants. He would have proceeded, but that the Prince of Numidia came then to him, and humbly thanking him for the aid he had lent him in releasing him and his Sister from the Giant Aleris, and so he led him from the Ladies, into the company of several Knights that were here present, who much honored him for the worth they understood him to be endued withall.

Thus he spent some time in this company till it was time to disarm himself, which when he had done, the Princess Mattarola sent him a rich Mantle, and by the messenger that brought it, she desired that he would not fail to let her have the happiness of his company some time that evening: To which message he returned answer, That he would not fail to wait

on her. Most of the evening he spent complementing the Knights of the Court, and they in shewing him the rarities and novelties thereof, and there he with great wonder and amazement beheld the pleasant Gardens and Fountains there, having spent much time in walking, he at length desired the Prince of Numidia to shew him his lodging, which he did accordingly, and as he walked thither the Prince told him which was the Souldan's, and which was his Sisters, and which was the Princess Florisbella's, Now the Princess Matarosa's, and the Princess Florisbella's were adjoyning together, and his lodging was not far from either of them at which he was very well pleased: Having thus spent much time he again went into the Presence, where was the Emperess, her Daughter, and Eustachian, and many other Ladies; and thus they spent much of that evening in several discourses, at last every one withdrew to their several apartments. Don Bellianis remembering the Passage he had received from the Princess Matarosa, appointed his Dwarf Ordino to attend her going to her Lodging, and to take notice of some one of her Damfels, which the Dwarf performed, and his Master being retired into his chamber and alone, he came to him and told him that the Princess was now in her Chamber with no other company but two of her Damfels: Don Bellianis therefore commanded the Dwarf to go thither and tell one of her Damfels that he desired to speak with her alone, and when he should come into her presence to present his service to her and let her know that he waited her commands. The Dwarf soon executed his message, and returned to his Master, and told him that the Princess expected his coming to her Lodging, he therefore immediately left his own Chamber and went to her, where he received him with a great deal of freedom, and causing him to sit down by her, he thus began.

Sir Knight, the great favor you did me in releasing me from the power of the Giant, is so deeply engraven in my breast, that all that I can do for you through the whole course of my Life, I shall esteem as little for a recompence, and if you remember when I then parted from you, I desired your company here, that it might be in my power to do somewhat to gratify you, if therefore you know any thing wherein I may pleasure you speak

boldly

boldly and freely, and let me know it, for the time you have to stay here being not long, an opportunity of doing you service may soon be overslipped. Don Bellianis having attentively listened to this discourse, did much marvel thereat, wondering what the issue thereof would be: but while supposing that his fortune might so fall out, that she herself might be in love with him, at which he would have been much discontented, and then another while supposing that she might do him some great kindness in his love to her Cousin, he was therefore resolved to try her mind, and after some silence he thus began.

Adam, if I have done you any service, it was no more then I was bound to do by the Order of Knighthood; besides it hath been already sufficiently recompensed by this your acknowledgement; therefore you rest no longer indebted to me for that; but there is one thing Adam, wherein you may greatly pleasure and oblige me of new to be your humble Servant. It is now Adam; some years since I received the Order of Knighthood, and with it a suite of Arms, which I have since lost, only I have preserved the Shield that belonged thereto; not for any extraordinary worth therein, but only for the sake of a Picture that is therein portrayed, I do believe that you have seen it, and may remember that it hath some small resemblance with the Princess your Cousin, and indeed for her sake alone have I kept it, and under the Name of the Knight of the Golden Image have I gone ever since, and have won many Combates thereby, so that whatever Act I have done worthy of remembrance may be wholly attributed to her Vertue, this hath caused me now twice to come to this Court, not as yet daring to give her any notice of my desires, now therefore if you are pleased to do me any further friendship, let it be this, to desire her to be pleased to admit me to be her Knight, and then I question not but I shall be sufficiently able to perform any Enterprize, though never so difficult and perilous.

Don Bellianis having thus finished his discourse, the Princess was fully satisfied that in doing him a courtesie, she should likewise pleasure her Cousin, whose mind she knew very well, but like a discreet Vertuous Lady, she was resolved to know what Parentage he was of, and whether that disproportion would not hinder that which they so much desired, and therefore she thus replied:

It

Roble

Noble Sir, I give you many thanks for your frænel's with me, and assure your self that in this matter I shall execute your will that you shall have your desires, provided that you engage me in nothing that may be a blemish to the Honor of my fair Cousin, and therefore Sir, I pray tell me who gave you the Honor of Knighthood, that if I be demanded that Question by my Cousin, I may be provided with an Answer. To this he soon replied, **He** who gave me the order of Knighthood was as then unknown to me, and so was I then to him, but since I knew him to be the Emperoz of Greece. When Sir, quoth the Lady, I question not but he was satisfied that by birth you were worthy of it. Ah Madam, said he, he was then told that I was of Noble Linage by a Lady that was present: but since he hath known me, and I him better, for indeed he is my Father. When recounted he to her the manner of his first Adventures and how he was knighted by his Father, and how afterwards did fight with him, as it is at large set down in the First Part of this excellent History.

This Discourse so well satisfied the Princess, that she told him that since he had been so free to her, as to tell her his greatest secrets, she would in recompence thereof tell somewhat that would give him equal content, and thereupon she said: Sir Knight, I do, now assure you that you may account your self happy in your love, for the Princess Florisbella my Cousin is altogether amorous of you as you are of her, and hath been as desirous to discover the same, as you your self; and therefore so carry your self in this business, that what ever you do may rebound to the honor of you both, and to the end that you may receive the same satisfaction from her own mouth I will immediately go into her Chamber and bring her hither: At which words Don Bellianis fell on his knees to the ground and straitly embracing her legs, he said: Ah dear Madam; what thanks, what services, what returns shall I make for this extraordinary favor: But she knowing that a little time would be soon lost, got from him, and leaving him in this extasse, went into the chamber of her Cousin, where she had not stayed long but she returned with her Cousin in her company, who now being undressed, was attired in a Mantle of Crimson Velvet, and such other Garments, that Juno in all her Whavery did not appear half so stately, nor Venus when she courted Adonis was not half so lovely: when they came

came into the Chamber, they found the Knight on his knees, his extasse of Joy had been so great, wherefore the Princess Mattarosa taking her Cousin by the hand, led her to him, saying: Behold here, Madam, the best Knight in the world prostrate on his knees, expecting from your lips the gracious favor of your admitting him to be your Knight. Arise most noble Prince, answered the Princess, for so my Cousin informs me you are, and indeed it could not be expected that so great Perfections of Valor, Magnanimity and true Vertue, should abide in the breast of any one but the greatest Prince in the world.

At these words Don Bellianis humbly kissing her hand arose, and then the Princess Mattarosa caused them both to sit down: when they were sate, the Princess Florisbella demanded of him how he performed the Adventure of setting her Cousin Aurora in possession of her Kingdom: for said she I hear that he is bound to you for that favor: then he recounted to her all that happened in that Adventure, how he killed her usurping Enemy Don Gallaneo, and the many hazards he ran thorough when he went disguised in the Apparel of one of her Damselfs, and how at last he procured the Souldan of Persia to Confirm her in her Kingdom, and then said he, Madam, I had gone along with her to have seen her settled therein, but that the remembrance of your divine Beauty, was as attractive to my heart as the Loadstone to the Needle, which caused me to leave that Charge to two of my Brethren, and some other of my Friends, to apply my self hither to wait upon my Commands. And said the Princess Mattarosa, it was most happy for us both that you went not thither: for I had ere this perished without the assistance you brought me, and the Princess my Cousin had still wanted one to undertake the Redemption of her Father.

Ah most noble Lady, replied he, I see now that Fortune and my good Stars have brought me some sweet with much of bitter I have hitherto run thorough, in that they have given me some opportunity of testifying to you my service, in which point I wish my Destinies will still continue me to my lives end, for it will be the greatest good that can come to me, to spend the remainder of my life in the service of so Divine Personages, and therewith he took the fair Hand of his Mistress, and amorously kissed it. In these terms continued these Lovers for two or three hours, and then

then they gave to each other such assured Testimonies of their loves that is endured for ever

The Princess signified much sorrow that he was to depart in so short time, to hazard his person in so great perils, but he assured her, that since she thought him worthy of being hers, he did not question but to overcome all difficulties, and in short time return with her Father. Then she desired him to take some company with him, that he might be the better enabled to perform his Enterprize: but he refused that, desiring to perform it himself, that the Souldan her Father might be obliged to none for this Deliverance but to him onely, that thereby he might have the more cause to grant him what he should afterwards desire of him.

But the Princess Mattarosa knowing that her Brother the Prince of Numidia intended to accompany him in this Adventure, perswaded him that since the Journey was long, and that he was to travel on the Caspian Sea to some uncertain place there, that he would not refuse his company, which he at last assented to. Thus having spent much of the night in these Discourses, after the two Lovers had given each other new Obligations of Promises of an everlasting Love and Friendship, they every one with great silence departed to their severall Lodgings.

CHAP. XVIII.

How Don Bellianis had a second Conference with the Princess Florisbella and her Cousin Mattarosa and how he, after he had taken his leave of the Ladies, departed in quest of the Souldan, accompanied with Balasano Prince of Numidia.

The satisfaction the two Lovers received in the Evening's Conference, occasioned them to take but little rest that night: never was Don Bellianis so contented as now, all his Travels, Combates, Conflicts and bloody Fights, he accounted as nothing, and that they were all more than fully recompensed by the kinde and loving Discourse he had receiv'd that evening from his Princesses. These thoughts accompanied him all night so that he slept not at all, but still ruminated in his minde how he should contrive his good fortune, and how he should give so good a satisfaction to the Souldan.

Souldan, that he might be willing to accept of him for his Son in Law: These thoughts took up all the night, so that morning coming the Prince of Numidia came to his Chamber to give him the Good Morrow, whereupon he presently arose, and very lovingly received him.

After he had apparell'd himself, he left his Chamber, and walked with the Prince in the Garden, where the Prince told him that he had one Woe to beg of him, & therefore prayed that he might not be denyed. Don Bellianis answered, that he might freely ask any thing of him, for he took it as an honor if he could please him in any thing. Then the Numidian Prince told him that the Request he was to make was this, That he should be pleased to permit him to have the honor to attend him in this intended Expedition, for, saith he, I cannot but acquire much honor and renown in being in the presence and company of so brave and worthy a Knight.

Don Bellianis who had already promised his Sister that he would permit him to go with him, told him, that he could not acquire any fame in his company, but however if he would give himself that trouble, he should be glad of his good company. The Numidian being very glad that he had granted his Request, gave him many thanks, and told him he should esteem his life happy so long as he had the enjoyment of his good society, and said he hoped, that having so good a Pattern both of Chivalry and Vertue, he did not question but he should profit himself very much thereby.

In these Discourses they continued some time till all the Court was risen, but it was somewhat late before the two Princesses arose, they having slept up so late the night before, that it was soon before they came into the Presence Chamber, being come, the Tables were covered, and every one sat down to dinner: Don Bellianis could eat but little for observing the rare Perfections of his Divine Princess who was seated just against him, who attir'd her self in most sumptuous manner, that her Clothes might give some luster to her Beauty: but although she was habited in an extraordinary manner, yet her face and person appeared like the Sun, and then like clouds that obscured her other beauties. She often cast amorous glances at her Knight, and seeing his eye still fix'd on her she was often mov'd to blush.

Dinner

Dinner being ended and every one risen, the Emperess taking, Don Bellianis by the hand, said to him: Sir Knight, I am very sorry that so unfortunate occasion hath happened that will suddenly cause us to lose your good company, but I hope that with the Assistance of the Gods, your incomparable Valour and the continual good fortune that still accompanies you, will put an end to all our troubles; and therefore that you may go provided with all things necessary for so hazardous an Expedition, I have ordered the Council to sit this Afternoon, to know of you what you shall think necessary, that it may be provided accordingly. To which he replied, All that I desire, Madam, is onely the company of the Prince of Numidia, and I question not but my good fortune will soon bring me to the place where I shall be enabled to serve you: But he desired to confer with the Council of this matter, in order to which that Afternoon he went to them, and they propounding to raise a great Army, and a Navy of Ships proportionable to receive them, and so with this power under his Command, to search all the Caspian Sea, but he utterly refused that Offer, and only desired that one Ship might be ready at the Sea-side to receive him against his coming, and he told them he intended to be going within three days. They not willing to contradict his reasons, and much less to offend him, answered, that his will should in every thing be performed, and so they took order accordingly.

Thus did he spend two days in the greatest content and satisfaction in the World, still accompanied by the Prince of Numidia and by that means he had the opportunity with him of courting the Princess his Cousin with the greater freedom. Sometimes they walked in the pleasant Walks and Gardens of the Pallace, and at other times they went abroad in the fields to divert themselves in all which time he endeavoured by his most ordinary actions, to let her see the esteem he had of her Merits. The night before he was to depart he took the opportunity to speak to the Princess Margarosa, humbly desiring her that since his time was so short that he was to depart the next day, he would do him the favour to speak to the Princess Florisbella to give him the happiness of her Company in the Chamber, that he might take his farewell of her, to which his request she soon consented.

So Evening being come, and every one retired to their several Lodgings.

Lodgings, he attended not long before one of the Princesses Dam-sels came to his Chamber, to advertise him that the two Princesses were together and expected him: He thereupon very joyfully went to the Chamber, where they were and prostrating himself on his knee, he humbly kissed her hand, but she not permitting it caused him to arise, and seating her self by him, said unto him:

Worthy Sir, Since it hath pleased the Heavens to put so great a cross upon us, as so soon to part us, I beseech you by the friendship and love that you have so zealously professed to me, that you will not only make all the expedition you can in returning back from this Adventure, but also do the best you can to secure your person, not thrusting your self into any unnecessary hazard, for know Sir, that since you are become my Knight, I resolve to keep such a strict power over you, that I shall not be won to consent that you shall do any thing to endanger your person, and were it not on so necessary an occasion, I should not give you leave to depart.

Having said thus, she hung down her head and fetched a deep sigh expressing by that the sorrow she took for his departure, wherefore he thus replied to her:

Gracious Madam, Since it hath pleased you to give your self so much trouble to have some care of my unworthy person, I shall all endeavour in this, as well as in all other things, to obey your commands, assuring you that this Adventure being finished, I shall immediately return back, and shall not hereafter undertake any Adventure without your leave first obtained, not questioning but I shall be able to perform whatsoever I shall begin, through the mighty assistance I have received by being under your protection.

Thus did these two Lovers discourse with one another, sometimes embracing each other: and Don Bellianis knowing that he was to be gone the next day, took more freedom than ordinary, and Raviſhed from her lips many amorous kisses, which to him were more pleasant than Nectar and Ambrosia, or the food of the Gods. Thus spent they much time, and would have continued their amorous discourses longer, but that the Princess Margarosa caused them to break off and depart, which they at last very unwillingly consented to: Thus at length they retired to their several Lodgings and went to Bed, taking their ordinary repose.

The

The morning being come, Don Bellianis arose early to put all things in order for his departure, but he had not been long up before the Prince of Numidia and two of his kinsmen came to wait on him in his lodging, but not finding him there they walked into the Garden where they found him, and there the Prince of Numidia told him that he was ready to go with him whensoever he should appoint him, but told him that he humbly begged him to permit those two knights to go in their company. Don Bellianis who was unwilling to deny him any thing he should ask, at length at the intreaty of the two knights themselves consented; and thereupon he bid them be ready, for that Afternoon he intended to set forward on his Journey, they resting very well satisfied, and prepared all things accordingly.

Thus Noon being come and Dinner ended, he took his farewell of the Empress, the Princess Florisbella, and the Princess Martarosa, and all the rest of the Court. The Princess Florisbella gave him a new Shield, whereon was her own Picture drawn to the Life; and richly gilded, whereby he went by the Name of the Knight of the Golden Image. The Prince of Numidia was armed in an Azure Armor, and in his Shield he had a Boar's head; he having formerly killed a monstrous Boar, and therefore he was called the Knight of the Boar. The other two knights were armed in White Armor, they being new knights: the one, who was amorous of the Princess Martarosa, had Hope painted in his Shield, and the Princess gave him a Scarf as a favor from her, and the other had a flaming Sword painted on his Shield, because when he was knighted it was with a Sword that resembled a Flame.

Being thus most richly armed and bravely mounted, after several Complementary expressions had passed between many of the Souldans knights, and Don Bellianis and his Companions, wishing them a prosperous success in their intended Adventure, they took their leave of all the fair Ladies, and only attended by Don Bellianis his two Dwarfs, they left Babylon and journeyed towards the Caspian Sea.

CHAP. XIX.

How Don Bellianis and his Companions travelled to the Caspian Sea, and how there they embarked themselves in quest of the Souldan of Babylon.

These days travelled Don Bellianis and his Companions without meeting with any Adventure, and indeed he was not at all discontented therewith, for he was resolved to obey the Commands of his Princess, and avoid all things that might hinder his Journey: wherefore they travelled very hard, till within one days Journey of the Caspian Sea, they saw before them several knights and ladies journeying together, but he being desirous to avoid all company, rode on without saluting them; whereupon a damsel riding after him, said, I am come from one of those ladies yonder, who say that he who gave you the Order of knighthood did not do well, in that he did not instruct you in your duty to Ladies when you meet them, and therefore desires if you be not in great haste that you, or some of your company, would break a Lance with some of her knights, to the end she may know whether you are better furnished with valor than with courtesy.

Don Bellianis being somewhat troubled at this message, replied, That his haste would not permit him to give her that satisfaction which she desired, but the Knight of the flaming Sword who was in his company, desired him to permit him to break a Lance with one of the knights, to which Don Bellianis at last consented, so that after that they should not be enjoined to any further stay, to which the damsel consenting, departed. She was no sooner come to her lady and delivered her message, but one of her knights advanced towards them, which the Knight of the flaming Sword seeing, took a Lance and went to meet him. They soon couched their Lances and met each other with so much vigor, that they both lost their stirrups and broke their Lances, when taking new ones, at the next encounter the Ladies knight made red his length on the earth, and the Knight of the flaming Sword was forced to get hold of his horses neck to save himself from falling.

So sooner was this done, but out came another Knight, and desired since the Knight of the flaming Sword was well nigh down, that the Knight of Hope would try his fortune with him: To which he consented, and thereupon they both couching their Lances, the Knight of Hope performed so well that the Ladies Knight measured his length on the earth, and so he served two more, but at last when he was running with the fourth Knight his horse tumbled, and they both fell on the earth.

Then the Knight of the Boar stepping forwards, ran against the Knight who had dismounted the Knight of Hope, and turned him off from his horse: and often Knights there remained four who had not tried their Valor, but he running against them dismounted them also.

Don Bellianis seeing there was no more to be done, sent his Dwarf to the Lady to present his service to her, and bid him tell her, that the next time she expected to compel Knights to Courtship, she must provide her self with more valiant Defendants, which the Dwarf having done they all departed.

Thus did they travel on their Way all that day till they came near to the Sea-side, where they took up their Lodgings for that night on the shore. So sooner was the Sun gotten up into the Firmament, but our Knights all arose, and Arming themselves went to the Sea-side, where they met with their Ship, and presently they embarked themselves and horses, and having a fair Wind they set Sail and departed.

Long time sailed they about this Sea, coasting the Countrey, and landing in several places to enquire after news of the Souldan but all was in vain. One day a great Calmness happening, they sailing very slowly, descried a Ship from afar off sailing thitherwards, wherefore command was given to the Mariners to bear up to them, which was done with all the expedition they could: when they came near the Ship they heard the voice of a Woman who made great lamentation: At which noise Don Bellianis wondering, caused them to call aboard to them, when presently two great Gyants armed at all points but their heads, demanded what they required: The Numidian answered, That they desired to know the cause of the lamentation that they heard: he

Gyants seeming very angry at his demand, replied, That they might meddle with their own affairs for that did in no wise concern them.

Don Bellianis hearing these proud speeches, commanded the Ship to go nearer to the other and grapple with her. which was done accordingly, & the Gyants clapping on their Helmets, drew their mighty Spinetars to hinder the entrance of the Knights, who by the example of Don Bellianis, were all provided to assail the Gyants in their own Ship: but our Knights so layd about them, that one of the Gyants was soon laid along the Ship. At this noise ten well armed Knights who were below, came up, & drawing their Swords went to assail our Knights, who defended themselves very bravely, and Don Bellianis so stoutly laid about him, that he soon dispatched four of them, and threw their bodies into the Sea: which the Gyants seeing made up to him, and gave him so fierce a blow on the Helmet, that he was astonished, & forced to lay both his hands on the side of the Ship to raise himself up: but he was no sooner got on his feet but he quickly revenged that blow, and gave the Gyant such a return, that lighting on his head he cut the Helmet quite in two pieces, and also his Head was cleaved down to the Jawe.

Thus this Gyant being dispatched, he turned him about to help his Companions, but he saw they had behaved themselves so well that they had either killed or vanquished all the Gyants Knights, wherefore he putting up his Sword, commanded the Mariners to conduct him to the place from whence they heard the noise, which they did accordingly: and being come thither saw a Damself who made great lamentation, but he demanded of her the cause of her Complaint, she arose, and seeing him knew him by his Armor, when falling on her knees, she said: Oh most courteous Knight! I now know that I am released from the slavery and bondage I was going to having met with you, Don Bellianis knew not the Damself, wherefore raising her from the ground, he demanded of her how she knew him: To which she replied, I am confident Sir Knight, that I am not mistaken in my knowledge of you, for without doubt you must needs be the valiant Prince Don Bellianis of Greece of whose prowess and virtue I am sufficiently acquainted: wherefore know Sir, that I belong to the

sage Bellona our very good Friend, who understanding of the Enterprize that you were going about to release the Emperoz, and knowing that all the skill and art that your Mariners could use would not be to any purpose, - for it is impossible to find out the place where he is kept without her help, she theretoze sent me to conduct you thither : and commanding me to go towards the Court of the Souldan of Babylon to meet you, I being on my way thither, was met by these two Giants and Knights, whom you have happily dispatched, who seeing me alone forced me to go aboard with them, and whither they would have carryed me I am uncertain, but thanks to your valor I am released from that peril.

Don Bellianis having heard this Relation, was very glad that he should now be able to find the place whither he was to go, and theretoze thanked the Damsel very kindly for the pains and peril she had undertaken for his sake : and thereupon he caused her to go out of that Ship into his own, where she was no sooner come but she spying the Numidian Prince, began to renew her lamentations : at which they all wondering, asked her the cause of her sudden sorrow : to which she replied, Ah, Sir Knight, when I came from my Mistress she gave into my custody a Sword, which she commanded me to present to her Cousin Balthazano, which she told me he would ere long stand in need of, for it had so hidden a vertue that it would make its way through any Armor, though it were enchanted, and told me that next to the Sword which you had it was the best in the world, and these two Giants when they took me, forced the Sword from me, and what they have done with it I know not.

The Numidian Prince hearing of this was much troubled, fearing lest it should be lost or thrown into the Sea with some of the dead Knights, wherefoze he and the Damsel immediately went into the Ship to search for it : so after a little search they found it in one of the Cabins of the Giants, at which he was very glad : and so returning into the Ship of Don Bellianis, they shewed it to him, and the Sword was very plain, only the Hilt was made of entire Emeralds.

This being done they desired the Damsel to direct them to the place where the Souldan remained : but she told them that if they would take her directions, they must first sayl to the Mouth of the River

River Araxis, and being there she then knew how to conduct them. They having heard this commanded the Mariners to obey her command, with they forthwith did, and set sayl for the River Araxis. In few hours they came thither, and having informed the Damsel thereof, she advised with the Master of the Vessel, and told him that he must sail cross the Sea directly northwards, which he accordingly did : thus they leaving the Gyants Ship behind them, sayled cross that great Sea.

Don Bellianis being very impatient of their delays, thinking that every day he had bin absent from his Princess to be a year, and theretoze he discoursed with the Damsel of many matters during the Voyage, that he might pass away the time the better : And she told him that her Mistress had given her no account of the particular dangers that he was to undergo in that Adventure but said that it was the most perilous that he ever undertook : for the sage Frisstone who had placed the Souldan there, had used his utmost skill in his Enchantment, that he might still continue him there a prisoner, but she said that you with the help of the Numidian Prince, should be able by your great skill and valor, to put an end to all the Enchantments, and deliver the Souldan.

CHAP. XX.

How Don Bellianis and the Knights his Companion, landed on an Island in the *Cassian Sea*, where the Souldan was kept prisoner by Enchantment : and how Don Bellianis and the Prince of *Numidia*, after they had fought with many monstrous Gyants and Serpents, ended the Enchantment.

Long had they not sayled before they descried Land, and coming near they found that there were close by several small Islands, in one of which they saw a fair Castle, wherefoze Don Bellianis supposing that to be the place where the Souldan was, as indeed it was, he caused them to make to shore, but as they were approaching the shore they saw several Sea Monsters with much fierceness approach the Vessel, and made a hideous noise : The two young Knights with their Swords in their hands, went down out of the Ship into the Shallop to get to

to shore, but these Monsters so laid about them that they soon overturned the Boat, and had not the Mariners immediately thrown out Bores the two Knights had been drowned.

Don Bellianis seeing this, and that these Monsters would endeavour to hinder his landing, and seeing that the shore was so shelving, that it was impossible for the Ship to come so near it as to land him, taking his Sword in his hand he threw himself into the Sea, where he was assaulted by these Monsters who came all about him. but he being well skilled in swimming, did so bravely behave himself that in despite of them he got to land, killing one of them at every stroke he struck. By his example the Numidian Prince followed him, but with very great peril of his life, for he was marvelously assaulted, but at last having killed many of them with his sword, he got to shore.

The Knight of Hope seeing this, resolved to do the like, but he failed in his Enterprize; for many of these Monsters came about him, and in despite of him bit him in many places, and notwithstanding he struck at them with his sword, yet it did no more execution upon them than if he had struck upon an Anvil, for his sword had not the vertue in it to withstand Enchantments, wherefore by the advice of the Damsel he came back again to the Ship, where he and all the rest were forced to stay, not being able to land.

Thus these two Knights by the help of their pure-cutting Swords got on shore, but they were unarmed, wherefore they caused them in the Ship to throw their Armes out as far as they could towards the shore, where they went and took them up and armed themselves: But there was no way how they could get their Horses on shore, at which they were much troubled: but Don Bellianis seeing that the Castle was not far off, hoped he should have no great occasion of them; wherefore commending them in the Ship to wait their coming thither again, they departed and marched right on to the Castle: When they came near it, they saw that it was marvelous strong, being seated on a Rock, and though they walked round about it, they could not find any way to enter into it. at last they espied a Cave, but the entrance into it was like a Well, for it was down right, and they supposed it to be a Well, but that there was no water in it: Hereat thinking that that was the way into the Castle, they cut down one of the tallest Trees thereabouts, and

and Don Bellianis causing the Numidian to hold the one end of it, was let down into the Cave, but it reached not to the bottom, wherefore he was forced to take a great leap, and so he fell to the ground sore bruised with the fall, and before he could well get up he was assaulted by two great hideous Serpents, who ran upon him & trampled him under their feet, but he soon arose, and wounded them most pitcously, whereupon they again came upon him, and gave him such lashes with their monstrous tayls that it cracked his Armour, but he waiting his opportunity cut off their tails, so that they could not offend him that way and they making a hideous noise, coming on him to be revenged, he cut off both their Heads at one blow. After he had done this, he walked on, and perceiving some light went further, and saw before him a Court-yard, and in it a Fountain, at the foot whereof were two mighty Dragons, who no sooner saw him approaching, but they run to assault him: He taking his Buckler in his hand, and fast grasping his sword, cut the wing of one of them, which caused him to make a hideous noise, and the beast finding himself wounded, ran upon Don Bellianis and catching hold on him drew him on the ground, and with his Tailons grasped him so hard, that he was very much wounded, and the other likewise caught hold on him with his teeth, and bit him by the thigh: at which he finding himself in great peril, arose, from the ground, and thrust his sword down the throat of one of these Monsters, cleaving his heart in twain so that he fell down dead. The other Dragon was now got upon the back of our Knight and pulled him down backwards, but he nimbly got from the ground, gave the Dragon such a blow that he cleaved his Head in two.

When he had done this he sat down, being so faint with the loss of blood that he could hardly stand, after he had taken the air a little he walked about the Court-yard and there he found a Basket and a long Rope tyed to it, wherefore pondering with himself what use that should be for, he believed that with it he might draw the Numidian Prince up into the Castle, and so walking about he saw a Pair of Stairs which went up to the Battlements of the Wall of the Castle, where he being come saw the Prince walking about the Garden, prying whither he might find any place to get into the Castle, Don Bellianis seeing this called to him, and told him if that he would come in to him, he would help him up by that Rope and Basket, to which he readily assented, and so

so lifting of it down, he drew him up accordingly.

When they were come down into the Court-yard, he perceived that Don Bellianis had not been idle, for he saw the two Dragons that were slain, at which they much admired, and so they passed forward, when coming to a great gate they saw a small Horn, which one of them having sounded the Gates immediately open: but as they went to enter, there was two mighty Gyants opposed themselves to forbid them, and taking up their mighty Battle-Ares. laid many strokes on the two Knights but they who were undaunted repaid them with many weighty blows: and Don Bellianis being angered that as yet he could not see to what end all this should come, with one blow cut off the Gyants leg, and so he fell to the ground, at which he went to him and cut off his Head.

Having so done he went to assist Numidia, but he saw that he had likewise killed the other Gyant: for being fresh, he laid about him so that he had slain him without receiving any wound, but one in the arm.

Thus these two friends having finished this Combate, went forth and entered into a brave Hall paved with Marble and supported with severall Pillars of Jasper: walking about here they saw a Door that let them into a Garden where were many pleasant Walks, among the rest one led them to a Vault, at the door of which they saw an Inscription thus written:

They who shall have so great prowess as to kill all the Guards, and Pass hither, shall yet fail in their expectations, unless the Fire that is here preserved be Put out; which being done, this Enchantment shall end.

The Knights having read this, were somewhat satisfied that they knew what would put an end to this Adventure, and therefore they resolved to use their utmost power to accomplish it: but they knew not how to enter this Cave, the door being very strong: searching further they saw another door belonging to the same Cave, and a Well hanging thereto, which they rung and then the door opened, and there they saw a small Fire in the middle of the Cave: As soon as they were entered they were assaulted

assaulted in marvellous manner, but they could not see by whom: they felt many mighty strokes, so that sometimes they were driven to fall down on their knees, but they could not see any body that gave them, and it was in vain to use their Swords, for they cut nothing but the Air, at which they both marvelled. And the Numidian Prince understanding by the Inscription that they had read, that the quenching of that Fire gave an end to the Enchantment, he left Don Bellianis and went out of the Cave to the Fountain which they had seen in the Court-yard, and taking off his Helmet, intended to fetch some Water from thence, but when he was come near the Fountain, and went to dip his Helmet therein for Water, there issued out of the Water a fierce Crocodile, and flying in his face wounded his head, so that he bled exceedingly: at which being amazed, he drew his Sword and had a great Combate with the Crocodile, but in the end the Crocodile remained dead, and he dipped his Helmet into the Fountain and took some Water from thence and dashed it to the Cave, where he found Don Bellianis sitting with those Fantoms, he gave many blows, and slew them: and when he saw of them, but he himself was so weakened that he was well nigh out of breath. Thus the Numidian arrived in the Cave, and following close to his friends, seeing Courage, Wit, proceed to the Fire, for he had gotten that which he sought for: and when he saw Don Bellianis went forward, and the Numidian followed him to the door, and when he was come to the Fire he threw the water therein, which he had in his Helmet, but there happened much Lightning and Thunder, and immediately they found themselves in the plain fields, no sign of any Cave or Garden: only the Castle remained, and with the Enchantment the Enchantment to be ended, and then the Castle, where when they came the door of the Castle was opened, and they were entering into the Hall saw another door, which contained them into another room, where they met the Sorcerer standing in great haste: he said that the Sorcerer of that great skill: but when he heard that they had quenched the Fire, he was greatly amazed, and not knowing what to do, he fled: and they pursued him, and they knew to the ground and then, that it was the end of

had been a prisoner, he was now by the bounty of Heaven free, and thereupon the Prince of Numidia pulled off his Helmet, which the Souldan seeing ran to him, knowing him, and said, Ah good Cousin Balasano, how much am I indebted to you for this great travel that you have undertaken for my Delivery: But Balasano answering, replied, Good Uncle, all my endeavors had been fruitless, had you not been assisted by this good Knight, to whom you are much beholden, and so is your daughter: else she had kept you company.

The Souldan hearing this, went to Don Bellianis, and lifting him from the Ground, said: Indeed good Knight, he who brought me hither, told me that if I would not consent that he should dispose of my Daughter, he would ere long force her to keep me company, and we should end our wretched lives together, but I resolved rather to suffer any Torment than to consent to so great an evil as the delivery of my Daughter to him, trusting that the Heavens would be so good to her as to preserve her out of his hands, and rather choosing to have perpetual imprisonment than that she should be given into the power of any person: If I would have consented to this, I had long ere this been delivered, but thanks be returned to Heaven in that they have been so courteous, as to send you to deliver me without such hard conditions: and thereupon he asked them both his Daughter's name, and his Country, and all the rest of the Story: asking them how far he was off from his Court, he not knowing thereof, for he had continued in a Trance all the while coming thither, both by Land and by Sea, and did not come to himself till he was placed within the Castle.

To which questions he was answered how that it was many days Journey from Babylon, but if he was ready to go with them, they had brought a Ship of his own to carry him into his own Country: At which he was glad, and therefore they having looked round about the Castle, departed therefrom, and as they were walking in the Water-side, they perceived the two new Knights coming towards them, who when they had heard the great Thunder and Lightning which was at the ending of the Enchantment, they supposing some such thing happened

once

once more to land, which they did with great ease: for all those Monsters that had formerly opposed them, were at the end of the Enchantment vanished away, at which they much marvelled, and so coming on Land, went directly towards the Castle, but when they saw the Souldan in company of the two Knights, they were amazed, and falling on their knees they humbly kissed his hands, and then Balasano telling him who they were, he greatly rejoiced. Thus they returned and went to the Sea-side where they soon embarking themselves, set sail and departed on their way to Babylon.

CHAP. XXI.

How the Souldan of Babylon in company of the Knight of the Golden Image, the Knight of the Bear, the Knight of Hope, and the Knight of the Flaming Sword, travelling towards Babylon, met with an Adventure, whereby they understood of the danger of the Princess Florabella, and how they arrived in Babylon.

So long sailed the great Personages on the Sea, that in the end they all came to shore, and landed in the Kingdom of Armenia, where providing themselves of necessaries to travel, they set forwards for Babylon: They travelled through all the Kingdom of Armenia, without any adventure, and came into some part of the Empire of Trebizond, when one day several Troops of Knights overtook them, Don Bellianis being desirous of novelty, put forward from his company, and joining himself with them, desired to know whether they were going: To which question, the knights looking on Don Bellianis, said, Good Knight, I had thought you could not be ignorant of the ill and shameful Empress in quest to make against Babylon: Don Bellianis hearing of this, was wonderful desirous to know the truth of this story, and therefore he thus replied: Truly Sir Knights, I am a stranger to this Country, being but lately come into these parts, where I may you give your

Self the trouble to give me a particular account of this matter. Know then Sir Knight, that the other, that you are now in the Countrey of the Emperour of Trebizond, which is now governed by an Emperour called Morello, who hath not long ruled the same: for it is not yet above six months since his Father dyed, and till his Father dyed he spent the greatest part of his time in travel; in seeking out strange Adventures to get honoz and Menon, and under the Name of The Black Knight he brought to pass many a hazardous Adventure: At the time of the decease of his Father, he was in the Court of the Souldan of Babylon, and there under that title, though unknown, he exercised many deeds of Knighthood and thereby got great fame, but hearing of the death of his Father, he left that Court and returned home, where he was received by all his Subjects with much content and joy: but during his being at Babylon, he beholding the matchless Beauty of the Princess Florisbella, Daughter to the Souldan, he fell deeply in love with her, but durst not discover the same, because there hath been much Wars between their two Fathers, but after he was come home, and had been some time Crowned, he opened his mind to some of his Nobility, they liked well thereof, and knowing that the said Princess is sole Heir to the Crown, did well approve of the Match whereby these two Empires might be joyned, he therefore resolved in his mind to send Ambassadors to ask the said Princess in Marriage of her Father, which was done accordingly, but when they arrived at the Souldans Court, they found that the Souldan was absent, having been lost some time before, and the Court was in great sorrow for his absence: however the Ambassadors delivered their Embassies to the Emperours and her Council, who returned Answer, that they could not by any means dispose of their Princess without the consent of her Father. But they importuned the Council further, and the Princess her self being asked the question, she made the same excuses at first, but the Ambassadors in the end importuned her for her absolute Answer, which she gave them in these words: I am content, for he very boldly told them, that though her Father were returned, yet should he always continue in this opinion, that

that she would never accept their Passer for her Husband: With which Answer they at last returned, being very sorry that their Embassie turned to no better effect.

Arriving at Trebizond, and returning this Answer to their Passer, he was at first much troubled, but in the end understanding of the absence of the Souldan, he resolved to make use of the present opportunity to be revenged, as well for the wrongs his Empire had sustained by the Souldan, as for the new affront so lately put upon him, and thereupon he immediately commanded that a great Army should be levied, and sent Commissioners into all parts of his Empire to raise all the Force he could suddenly, intending forthwith to travel towards Babylon, and spoil the Dominions of the Souldan. And this, Sir Knight, is the occasion of these Troops so sudden marching, for we are going to the General Rendezvous at Trebizond.

The Knight having given this Declaration to Don Bellianis, left him and went forwards, and he stayed behind in a very deep melancholly, considering the Estate of his fair Princess, but however he was somewhat joyful that he had this occasion of serving her, hoping to do such acts for the defence of the Empire, that the Souldan would be thereby induced to bestow his daughter upon him. In this consideration he was, when the Souldan and the rest of the company overtaking him, asked him what was the occasion of his leaving them, and what was his large Discourse with the Knight: To which he soon replied, and recounting the whole matter to the Souldan, gave him the greatest amazement in the World.

In much trouble did they ride the rest of the Journey, being all disturbed at the late news, but the Souldan was very much pleased in that he was freed himself from his imprisonment, that he might in person be able to resist his enemies, and help his country, resolving that he would lose his Empire, rather than consent to the Marriage of his Daughter without her own assent. This gave Don Bellianis some satisfaction, in that he knew if the Princess had the liberty to dispose of her self, that he should be ascertained to have her.

And therefore he desired the Souldan to trouble his mind as little as he could, for, said he, as I have been instrumental in restoring you your liberty, so I shall not fail to do all that lies in my power to rid you of your enemies, and I have so good friends in the World, that if occasion serves I shall be able to raise such a power as shall easily overthrow the designs of your enemies to their confusion, and your own Honor. In these discourses spent they the most of the time that they travelled, and the Souldan was forced so disguise himself, till he came into his own Countrey, lest he being known by any of his enemies, should be taken and kept Prisoner: but it was not long ere he arrived in his own dominions, and then he travelled the more boldly but he as yet saw no preparations for War, at which he much wondered: but the Emperor of Trebizond had been so sudden, that News of his Expedition was hardly yet arrived to the Court: When they came within one days journey of the Court, they saw some preparations for the War, and the Souldan met with many of his Knights, who knowing him were exceeding glad for his deliverance, and that at such a time when as there was most need for him. Thus the nearer he approached the court, the more company he gathered, so that by that time he came to Babylon, he had above forty thousand Knights in his company, which gave him much content and joy: but that was not half so pleasant to him, as the sight of his own City, where he was no sooner entered but the Inhabitants had notice thereof, some running to inform the Emperors hereof, and others running to meet him, still enquiring which was the Knight that delivered him, and having known him, great was the praises they gave them. In this manner they made thorough the City, and arriving at the Court, they was met by the Emperors, her Daughter the Princess Florisbella, the Princess Margarosa, and many other Gentry, and great Personages, and so great was the content of the people, at the return of the Souldan and his company, that they went exceedingly for joy. The Souldan alighting from his horse, went first and embraced the Emperors most lovingly, and then the Princess his Daughter, who received him on her knees, but he raising her up kindly saluted her.

Don

Don Bellianis was now on his knees before the Emperors, humbly desiring to kiss her hand. but she knowing how much she was engaged to him would not permit that, but she raising him from the ground most lovingly saluted him, giving him many thanks for the great pains he had taken for her: calling him the Restorer of Babylon. and bestowed many thanks upon him when he had received his welcome from the Emperors, he went to the Princess her Daughter, and falling on his knees, humbly kissed her hands, but she soon raised him from the ground reiterating all the thanks that her Mother had already given him. To which discourse he replied, and said: What since she had been pleased to admit him to the honor of being her Servant, he questioned not but he should be able to overcome any Enterprize how difficult soever, and since there was an occasion given him of expressing his dutious service to her, he was resolved to do such acts as might render him worthy of the esteem she had of him, or in the prosecution of them, lose his life as testimony of the duty he owed her.

Thus he discoursed with her, and then he went to the Princess Margarosa to receive those welcomes that she had prepared for him. which were in affect the same he had received before of the Emperors and her Daughter: and thus taking her by the hand the Souldan doing the same to the Emperors, and the Namidian Prince to the Princess Florisbella, they walked into the great Hall of the Palace, where being come the Ladies helped to disarm them, which when they had done and had clothed themselves in rich Dainties, they sat them down to repose themselves: many of the Nobility came into the Presence to congratulate the return of their Sovereign, and to kiss his hands and thank the Knight of the Golden Image for the great good he had done them, in restoring their Prince to them in such time when they most stood in need of his presence.

But Don Bellianis returning them thanks, told them that without the assistance of the Prince of Namidia he had not been able to have performed that Enterprize, but however what power he had, he should willingly at all times employ in defence of the Souldan and his Countrey, they were glad to hear these expressions.

preffions from him, doubting that now he had performed this adventure, he would depart; but understanding that he was resolved to stay and assist them in the Wars, they humbly supplicated the Souldan that he would be pleased to order Don Bellianis to be General of such Forces as should be raised to go against Trebizond : To which the Souldan soon consented, but he would not accept of so great a charge except the Prince of Numidia might be joyned in Commission with him: To which they at last consented, and it was ordered as soon as a sufficient Force should be ready, he should advance towards the Enemies countries, and the Numidian Prince should stay at the Court to guard the City, and obey such further orders as should be necessary. In these consultations they continued most of that evening, till it was time for every one to go to rest, at which time he commanded his Dwarf to give him notice of the departure of the Princesses to their Lodging, because he was very desirous to have some conference with them, which the Dwarf did so effectually, that he brought Word that the Princesses were both together in the Lodging of the Princess Florisbella; wherefore he sent him to the Princess Matcarosa, to know whether he should give them a trouble of a visit in that place, the acquainting the Princess her Cousin therewith, they so ordered it, that she dismissed all her Damselfs but one who was acquainted with her Rove, and so telling the Dwarf that his Master might come when he pleased, the Dwarf returned with this answer to his Master, who being glad thereof departed out of his own Lodging room into that of the Princess, which he accordingly did, as shall be declared to you in the next Chapter.

C H A P. XII.

How Don Bellianis went to the Chamber of the Princess Florisbella, and of the discourse they had there; and how the next day he departed towards Trebizond with fifty thousand men.

The Dwarf had no sooner delivered his Message, but Don Bellianis repaired to the Chamber of the Princess Florisbella, whither when he was come, he kindly saluted her and the Princess Matcarosa her Cousin; which having done, they all seated themselves, and the Princess his Mistress thus began to him :

My Knight, since I have admitted you to be mine, it is necessary that you give me ordinary satisfaction of telling me the order of your proceedings in this Adventure; and since I have not yet heard the particulars thereof, I pray let me have the knowledge of them from your own mouth.

Madam, reply'd Don Bellianis, the actions that I have done in this occasion are so inconsiderable, that it is not fit that your ears should be troubled with matters of so small moment; but since it is your desire to give your self so much trouble, I will give you a small relation of them.

Then did he begin to tell her all the passages of that Adventure, beginning from the time that they took shipping, the happy meeting with the Sage Bellonas Damself, the rescuing her from the Spans, his desperate attempt in throwing himself into the Sea to get to Shore, his killing of those Monsters, his descending the Cave, fighting with the Serpents and Dragons, and all these other Actions which he and the Numidian Prince performed for the Releasing of the Souldan: At which recital he was so sensibly affected when he related any thing wherein he was in any peril, that the crystalline tears ran from her fair Eyes down her Cheeks in great abundance, which made him leave off his discourse, and say to her :

Madam, the trouble that I thought I should put you to in recounting these Adventures, made me desire to be excused in discoursing them to you; but if I had thought they would

have given you so sensible a displeasure, I should for once have so far disobeyed your Commands, as not to have given you an account of these past Actions.

She hearing that he had done, wiping her fair face, said: Sir Knight, the many difficulties that you have run thorough for my sake, could not chuse but make me accompany you in tears, but praised be the Gods who have delivered you from these dangers, and I hope these wars once ended, there will be no further occasion for you to endanger your person. Ah Madam, said he, if my discourse hath given you any sense of sorrow, assure your self I was much more afflicted when I had first the relation of your misfortunes about the Emperour of Trebizond, and although I did not question your Loyalty, yet I knew not what you might be compelled unto by a fearful Mother, and a Nobility without a Head: but I am to render you infinite thanks for your so resolute answer to his Ambassadors, not questioning but some considerations of me the meanness of your servants, occasioned you to return that answer.

Sir, said she, I never had any inclination for that Prince, for his person does not please me, and besides that, there is such an antipathy in my nature to any one of the Family of Trebizond, though never so well accomplish'd, that I should have refused him; but were there presented to me the most accomplish'd person for virtues and magnanimity, and were he likewise sole Potentate of the whole Earth, set in competition to you, Sir, and were you but a bare Knight-errant, my choice should quickly tell me that the love I have promised to you, is not counterfeit, but absolutely real. He hearing her in these terms, fell down on his knees; and briskly embracing her, cried out, Ah Madam, how do you undo your creature with heaping so much blessings upon him, which in all his life, although spent in your service, can never merit. The Princess Margarita seeing them in these terms commanded him to arise, and leave off these impertinent procreations; for, said she, I am confident you are both so well satisfied of each others affections, that these words are impertinent, and must needs give you both some sensible trouble. They were well knowing that she spake a great deal of reason, fell from this discourse to some other,

other, as what order he intended to take in his Expedition: To which he replied, That he intended the next day to be upon the march with those Forces that were already raised, and go meet the Enemy, if possible, in his own Quarters, and so hinder him from hurting the Countrey: To which the Princess was somewhat unwilling to give him leave to depart so soon; but he telling her that the sooner he went, it was most probable he should return the sooner, and that during his absence, he would send his trusty Dwarf with Letters to the Princess Margarita to be delivered to her, and under that pretence Answers might be sent without any suspicion: These things being concluded of, and he taking his hearty Farewel both of her and her Cousin, after many amorous Salutes, he departed to his own Lodging, and so he went to take his ordinary repose.

The next day he was up early in the morning, and the two Knights Of Hope, and The Flaming Sword, desired that they might be admitted to wait on him in this Expedition: to which request, he being sufficiently satisfied of their Valour, assented, and gave them both sufficient Commands under him, which when he had done, he sent for the Prince of Numidia, and they after some Conference together, resolved immediately to muster all the Forces that was then in the City; which they having done, found that there was eighty thousand men. And Don Bellianis resolving to be gone, divided the Forces into two parts, and took under his Command fifty thousand men, knowing that the Forces of his Companion would increase daily; and therefore commanding them all to be in readiness that Afternoon, he repaired to the Souldan, and desired his leave to depart, telling him that old Maxim in War,

That the least delay,
Spreads Palms, and scatters Roses in Rebellions way.

The Souldan after he had heard his reasons, gave consent, giving him a large Commission to raise Forces all the way he should go, and promising to send him more Aid with all the expedition that might be.

Thus this brave Partialist taking his leave of the Souldan

dan and Ladies, departed from that great City, and that evening marching ten miles to a little Town, where for that night he took up his Quarters.

CHAP. XXIII.

How *Don Bellianis* marching towards *Trebizond*, and increasing his Army, arrived at last near to his Enemies Camp.

Early the next morning did *Don Bellianis* arise, and caused the Drums, Trumpets, and all other Warlike Instruments to sound a March; which Command being accordingly obeyed, they advanced forwards, but he was much hindered in his Marches, by reason of the great quantity of Forces that still came in to him, so that before he had marched one hundred and fifty miles, his Army was one hundred thousand men compleat, at which he was very joyful; and therefore he made all the expedition possible to meet the Enemy before he should be come out of his own Kingdom. But the Emperor of *Trebizond* having carried on his business with great privacy, had gotten his Forces together, and mustering two hundred thousand men, besides many fierce and strong Knights, he was advanced with his Army very far, and was come into part of the Dominions of the Souldan of *Babylon*, before he heard the News of the Souldans being returned, which did somewhat trouble him, but however he resolved to go on, and not leave his Enterprize unattempted.

Wherefore hearing of the approaches of his Enemies Forces, he sent to see what number they were, and who had the commanding of them. The Messenger returning to him, told him that the Souldans Forces consisted of one hundred thousand men, and that they were conducted by a famous Knight, called The Knight of the Golden Image.

Hearing this news, he was somewhat discontented thereat, for he had been in the Wars between the Souldan of *Persia* and the Duke *Alfron*, and there he had both heard and seen the valiant Acts of the Knight of the Golden Image: but however he resolved to persist in his Enterprize, and like a good and hardy Knight

Knights to go forward, and endeavor to give his Enemy battle before he should increase his Forces, not questioning but the more the magnanimity of his own Valor, and that of his Knights and Knights under his Command, he should be able to encounter his Enemy with good advantage, and considering he had double his number, he might vanquish and overcome his Forces before Aid came to him: wherefore he hearing that he was within a days march of his Enemy, caused his Army the next morning to march forwards, intending that if his Enemy continued his march to join Battle with him. *Don Bellianis* likewise hearing that his Enemy came forwards, advanced apace, being resolved as well as he to give him Battle that day, if it were possible: but when they approached near to one another, their men were so wearied with that days travel, that before they could put them in any good order, & bring up the Rear of their Armies, the evening came on, so that they were both forced to alter their resolutions; and therefore they both encamped themselves in sight of one another, and all that night both Armies made great Fires, so that it was an artificial day, now and then running into one anothers Camp in small parties, and doing some harm: but the morning approaching they let the Fires go out, and *Don Bellianis* caused them all to prepare themselves for the Battle, and so they did, encouraging one another in the best sort that might be, resolving to lose all their lives, ere they would permit themselves to be overcome by their enemies. *Don Bellianis* knowing what was necessary to be done by a good General, having been in many other Battles, order'd his Army and divided his Squadrons, as shall be shew'd you in the Chapter following.

CHAP. XXIII.

How *Don Bellianis* ordered his Forces, and of the cruel bloody Battle between the Emperor of *Trebizond* and his Army, and the Forces under the command of *Don Bellianis*.

The morning being come wherein this great Battle was to be fought, *Don Bellianis* arose early, and dividing his Army

Army into three Squadrons, took forty thousand men under his own Command, twenty thousand men he ordered to be commanded by the Knight of Hope, and twenty thousand men under the command of the Knight of the Flaming Sword, and twenty thousand men more he order'd to be under the command of the Prince of Mesopotamia, and not to stir to the Battel, until there should be an absolute necessity, or that he should be commanded by himself.

Thus having ordered his Fastalions, he commanded the Heads of every Troop to come to the front of the Army, where he encouraged them by this following discourse : Gentlemen, and fellow Soldiers, the cause of this War I shall not need to inform you of, you being already satisfied in that particular, the Courages of your Enemies you likewise are acquainted with, having by often experience found that never any of your Nation was overcome by them, but that you still march'd away Conquerors, giving Laws to them rather than obeying any of their Commands.

Their presumption that your King was absent, was the chief occasion of this boldness in them, or else they would not have been so hardy as to enter your Land, and now being awaked after all this provision to turn back again without abiding the hazard of a Battel, they with much unwillingness expect you; their intentions was to force your Princess, command your Estates, dispose of your Persons, and to make all the Inhabitants of this Kingdom their Vassals, hoping to have found you in disorder, and without a Head, but thanks be to Heaven you have not only a Head to rule over you, in that your gracious Sovereign is restored, but also a General who will hazard his person to the utmost with you, and therefore I question not but you will have hearts to follow my Example; and if you see any thing of courage in me, to imitate me therein and follow my Example; and assure your selves that I resolve to conquer or die: thus hoping you have all the same courage and resolution, let us bravely fall on our Enemies.

This Speech being ended, caused a great shout throughout the whole Army, and presently every one repairing to his own Com-

Command, they marched on to assault their Enemies, who all this while were not idle; but the Emperor not forgetting what was necessary to be done, did likewise order his Battel, and divided them into four parts, one of fifty thousand men he commanded himself, the Prince of Albania commanded the like number, and two mighty Giants of his kindred, commanded the other two Squadrons.

Thus having divided his Forces, and ordered his Battel, he was likewise about to make an Oration to his Soldiers, but the noise which his Enemies made in their Approaches diverted him, and therefore causing his Trumpets and Drums, and all manner of Military Instruments to sound, he being armed at all points in the front of the Army, went forwards to receive the Babylonians. Don Bellianis being likewise in the front of his Army, seeing his Enemy approach, and believing it to be the Emperor, because he had on his accustomed black Armour, in which he had gotten great Renown, anger and jealousy so incensed him, that taking a strong Lance and couching the same, he ran full against him; and the other being also provided with the same in such brave manner, that their Lances shivered into pieces, and their horses meeting, had like to have overthrow one another: but these two brave Warriors soon recovering themselves, and drawing their Swords, assaulted one another with incredible fury: Long did their Combate endure together, so that both Armies joynd, and as well the Soldiers as the Commanders performed wonders, making an incredible slaughter: At length one of the Giants, Cousin to the Emperor, advancing with his Troop, strived at the place where the two Generals were in Combate, and resolving to dispatch Don Bellianis, cowardly came behind him, and gave him so weighty a blow on the Helmet, that he fell backwards on his horse, and he going to redouble the same, had certainly killed him at the second blow, had not the horse of Don Bellianis run away with his Master, who soon coming again to himself, and being extraordinarily enraged, perceived that it was the Giant that had used him so hardly, for he still pursued him to take away his life; which he seeing, being more enraged than any Numidian Lions hereabed of her whelps,

whelps, the fire sparkling from his eyes, let fall his Target, and taking his Sword in both hands, laid so puissant a blow on the Spant, that he did cleave him down from the head to the middle. The Black Knight seeing this, cried out, Oh ye Gods! with how much force and valor have you endued one single Knight?

Don Bellianis having done this execution, spurred on his beast, and more furiously than a baited Bull entered the Army of his Enemy, where he did kill and slay all that came within the reach of his Sword. The Black Knight did the like, till at length he was encountered with by the Knight of Hope, who in despite of his resolution to go forwards, made him slay and bravely receiv'd him: but the Black Knight being of admirable force and dexterity so handled him, that in short time he left him without sense or motion, and so he departed and went forwards, killing and slaying all that had the valor to oppose him. Thus continued he a long time, till one came to him, and told him that his presence would be very necessary in his own Army, for that the Knight of the Golden Image, and those who followed him, had put one of the Squadrons of his Army to the rout, which he hearing presently departed; and coming to the place where Don Bellianis was, he saw him perform things incredible, for he was in pursuit of many Knights, none of them having so much resolution as to turn their faces towards him, for if they did, they certainly met with their deaths.

The Emperour seeing this, was forced for the safety of his own men, to engage himself once more in Combat with him, which Don Bellianis was not at all discontented at, but renewing his forces, he likewise renew'd the fight with him. These two valiant Champions continued long in fight together, and gave to each other such violent blows, that those Forces that were there stood still and forborne fighting, to behold them: But Don Bellianis, whose match was not to be found throughout the whole Universe, being angered that the fight continued so long, gave the Emperour so mighty a blow on the arm, that he wounded him so mightily, that his sword fell out of his hand; which Don Bellianis seeing, and intending to redouble his blow,

was

was prevented: for many valiant Knights who had till then stood still, seeing their Prince in so great danger, went and succored him, and in despite of Don Bellianis carried him away to his Tent, where when his wounds were dressed, he would have entered the fight again, but his Chirurgeons would not in any wise permit it.

Thus the absence of the Emperour caused Don Bellianis and his party to prevail: but although he behaved himself with great valor, and killed many Knights and Giants, yet their great numbers still freshly coming on, in the end tired him, so that when the night approached (he having continued the Battle all that day) he withdrew his men, and contented himself with what he had done, for the next morning having taken an account of the numbers that he had lost, he found that he wanted but fifteen thousand men, when on the enemies part were slain at least fifty thousand men.

That day the Knights of Hope, and of the Flaming Sword, did perform bravely, and not having ever been in any Battle before, they by the example of their General performed excellently both in commanding and executing, and the Prince of Mesopotamia though a most valiant Knight, and much against his will, this day performed nothing, for he remained where his General had commanded him, and there was no occasion to use that force that was under his command till it was night, and then they retreated in good order to the place where he was placed, and there taking up their quarters expected the approach of the next mornings sun to renew their fight. News was soon carried every where of the good fortune of the Knight of the Golden Image, and the forces under his command, and how that in single Combat he had so wounded the Emperour of Trezibond in the arm, that he was forced to leave the fight, and of those other advantages that he had gotten, which caused many more of the Souldan of Babylons Subjects to come in unto him, and the next day there arrived a fresh supply of fifty thousand men from the Prince of Numidia; with promise and assurance that he himself would within few days be with him in the head of one hundred thousand men, and then they did

not

not question but they should be able to expel their enemies out of the Countrey.

But Don Bellianis believing that he had Forces enough already to perform that without any new Additions, resolved to try the fortune of another day with his whole Army, resolving to die or drive his enemies out of the field. In this resolution he continued, and therefore gave order that all should be in readiness to fall upon their enemies, whensoever he should command them.

On the other side the Emperour of Trebizond was much discontented at the wound he had receiv'd, but resolv'd that should not hinder him from fighting in his own person in the next Battel which he intended should be within two days, for by that time he expected a recruit of fifty thousand men which were already rais'd, and onely staid behind to expect his Command for them to advance: which Forces he sent for with this resolution, that as soon as they were come to him he would again hazard another Field-battel, but he was hindered of his purpose, for Don Bellianis according to his resolution he had already taken, did engage him and all his Forces in another Field-battel, before the arrival of his other Forces, as shall be shew'd you at large in the Chapter following.

C H A P. XXV.

How Don Bellianis fought another Battel with the Emperour of Trebizond, and how he forced him to leave the Field; and how he followed him into his own Countrey.

Two hours before day the next morning did Don Bellianis, without any noise of Trumpets, or other warlike Instruments, leave his own Camp, and with his whole Forces marched to assault his Enemies, who having kept a strict Watch took the Alarm, but before they could put themselves in a readiness, Don Bellianis and his Forces had sacrificed the lives of above twenty thousand men.

The Emperour of Trebizond being enraged at this surprisal,

soon called for his Armour, and having arm'd himself therewith and being mounted on a lusty Courser, soon revenged himself of some of his Enemies, for before he brake his Lance he dismounted above twenty knights, and being accompanied with twenty fierce Gypsies (who were appointed for his Guard by reason of the last days misfortune) they with their broad and sharp cutting Cymetars and Battel axes made a woful destruction, to what place soever they came present death followed to those that resisted them: at length they met with the Prince of Mesaporamia, who having bin idle all the last battel, was resolved to make amends in this days combat, and went with a Guard of a hundred knights, killing and forcing their way through their enemies Camp: him and his knights did the Emperour and his Gypsies assail, and between them hapned a bloody Conflict; for the Gypsies being of the best in the whole Army, had presently slain above twenty of his knights, which so enraged the Mesaporamian, that maugre all their resistance, he sent two of their black souls immediately to accompany his knights, and fiercely breaking through the midst of them, he ran against the Emperour with great advantage, for he well nigh dismounted him from his horse: for he not being provided for the encounter, was forced to catch hold of his horse neck to save himself from falling. At which assault he recovering himself, and being enraged, with his sword gave his adversary so mighty a blow on the Helmet, that he bent his head to the horses neck, and would have soon dispatched him of his life, but that the Knight of Hope came timely enough to prevent him, and so received the blow, and returned it so fiercely on the Emperour, that he was wounded on the Thigh: and by this time the Prince of Mesaporamia had recovered his senses and finding the danger he was delibered from, was first thankful to the heavens, and then revenged himself on one of the Gypsies, who was next him, whose arm he cut off, and wounded him so in the side, that his life was sacrificed to his revenge.

Thus the Battel was in this part of the field, but the Knight of the Golden Image, and the Knight of the Flaming Sword keeping company with one another, made very great havock of

their enemies, and being followed by a great party of valiant knights, gave the enemy so terrible an Onset, that after two hours contention they fled and left the field, having first left it thickly strewn with the dead bodies of the Emperors Forces. Don Bellianis pursued him so long, that in the end they came to a great River, and seeing that death was both before and behind them, they made a stand and bravely resisted him and all his Forces, where they fought so desperately, that the streams of the River which were wont to be of a chrysal hue, were now by means of the great slaughter was there made, become of a scarlet dy.

All this while the Emperoz and his Giants, with great part of his Forces, were engaged, as I told you, with the Prince of Mesaporamia and the Knight of Hope, where though they on both sides performed miracles, yet in the end in despite of all the resistance he could make, after the death of many of his Giants, and a very great slaughter of his men, was likewise forced to retreat, which he did with a great deal of sobriety, hoping that the other part of his Army was in better case than that which he commanded. But he was not long without the knowledge of what had hapned to them : and hearing that they were engaged at the River side, he then commanded some of the most valiant of the Giants to make good the Retreat with the best advantage, and the least loss they could, while he himself went in all haste to his Forces, hoping by his presence to put new courage into their breasts. When he came to them, he found that they had made a mighty resistance, and that the fight was very bloody ; wherefore that he might exercise the part of a discreet General, and bring them off with the least loss, he knowing that there was a Bridge not far off, sent to possess it : which when he had done, he commanded his Army to retire thither as fast as they could, he himself, with the most valiant knights of his whole Army making good the Rear as well as they could ; but notwithstanding all the diligence and valor that they could use, Don Bellianis and the knights with him plied their business so well, that ere they got over the River many of them lost their lives : At length

length they got to the other side of the River, and in despite of Don Bellianis and all his Forces, they cut down the Bridge, so that there was no way for him and his forces to follow them.

This being done, he left a strong Guard at the Rivers side, and then return'd to the place where the Emperoz had encamped, where they found great Treasure, for so great was their haste in their retreat, that they had not time to take any thing with them. All the Booty of the Emperors Camp he gave to the Souldiers, which gave them a great satisfaction, and caused them ever to have a great esteem of him.

This being done, he dispatched Messengers to inform the Souldan of what he had done ; not forgetting to write to his Dear Princess, the remembrance of whom made him the more desirous to put an end to these wars, that he might solace his spirits in her company. The Emperoz of Trebizond being thus forced to leave the field, and seeing that Fortune was a little contrary to him, yet being of an extraordinary courage, resolv'd still to persevere in his enterprise, and not to leave off basely, hoping in the end to attain his desires, and in order to the strengthening and recruiting his forces, he sent commands to those Forces that were behind, to await his coming to a City called Pharez, which was the first City in his Empire ; which being accordingly done, one evening leaving some horsemen at the Rivers side, he raised his Camp and departed to Pharez, and the next day those that he had left behind at the water followed him : He thus being arrived at the City, fortified it both within and without, and sent throughout his Empire to all places for help, resolving to make that place the seat of war, for else he knew that the Souldans Forces would follow him further.

The next day after their departure, Don Bellianis was informed thereof by those he had left at the water side, wherefore he marched down thither, but so what he could it was two days before he could mend the Bridge, which the Emperoz of Trebizond had caused to be broken ; which when he had done, he passed over with his whole Army, resolving to pursue his enemy, which he did accordingly : and thus in good order he marched

marched till he arriv'd near the City of Pharez, where he saw that the Enemy had made strong entrenchments without the Town, so that all he did at present was to encamp himself near them; which when he had done, he prepared to give them an assault, which he did, as shall be shew'd you in the Chapter following.

C H A P. XXVI.

How the Emperor of Trebizond being besieged in the City of Pharez, sent Ambassadors to *Albania, Georgia, Muscovia*, and several other Kings his Allies, to help him in his Wars with the Souldan of *Babylon*; and how Don Bellianis assaulted his Forces that were encamped without the City.

DON Bellianis being very desirous to do all that might be possible for the overcoming of his enemy, before any other help came to him, that he might acquire the more honor thereby, resolv'd to set upon his enemies Camp, that was without the City, and (if possible) force them to retire into the City, that he might lay a close Siege thereto, and so hinder them from going abroad for provisions. In order to which resolution, after his men had rested themselves, he commanded them to provide to assault their enemies.

On the other side the Emperoz resolv'd to abide him there; took care for fresh supplies, for he not onely sent through all his own Dominions for more help, but likewise sent Ambassadors to those Kings that were either his Friends or of his Alliance, such as were the Kings of *Albania, Georgia*, and the Emperoz of *Muscovia*, desiring them not to fail him in this occasion, and the Ambassadors who went, made such expedition, and had such good success in their Embassies, that the Emperoz had great assistance, as you shall hear hereafter. In the mean time, knowing that he had not onely a valiant, but a politick enemy to deal with, he kept strict Guards both within and without the City, lest he should be surprized.

Don Bellianis notwithstanding all the diligence he took, did surprize

prize him; for having drawn out a Squadron of fifty thousand knights, the most accomplish'd in the whole army, caus'd them to put a piece of white silk, or cloth in their Helms; that then might know one another though in the dark, and in the middle of the night, when his enemies expected no such matter, he came to the Camp, and killing the Centinels, fell in among the Emperors Forces, and slew many of them before they could arm themselves, and such was their confusion in the dark, that they without knowledge slew one another, not knowing their enemies from their friends by reason of the darkness of the night, and their not being acquainted with his stratagem. In this manner he run through the Camp, and being followed by the best of his Army, came to the walls of the City, desiring them to open, perswading the Guards that they were of their own party, telling them that they must needs speak with the Emperoz; but the Guards who had commands to the contrary, went immediately to the Emperoz and told him thereof; who arising from his bed, came to the wall, and then he very well understood that the Army was alarmed; wherefore he refused to open the Gates, not knowing whether they were of his own Army or enemies.

Don Bellianis perceiving this, and that it would be to little purpose to continue there, departed, and so returned thorough the enemies Camp, killing and slaying all that were in his way, and so being gone through the Camp and passed all the Guards, he caus'd the retreat to be sounded; which his Soldiers hearing, soon understood the meaning thereof, and so left the Camp and came to him; who when they were come, fairly retreated to their own Quarters; But Don Bellianis who had an intent to surprize the City, and failing therein, as you have heard, was somewhat vexed: but however he considered that he had done them a sufficient mischief, for he had killed above twenty thousand of his enemies, and came off with the loss of not above five hundred men.

This action gave the Emperoz a sensible displeasure, and did resolve if possible to revenge it, but he could not at present put his resolves into execution, wherefore he gave strict command

to keep double Guards; and more strict Watches, hoping in short time to have such aid that he might be able not onely to revenge that loss, but to beat his Forces out of the field: But before any Forces came to his assistance, Balcalano Prince of Numidia arrived at the Camp of Don Bellianis with one hundred thousand men, and with new Orders from the Souldan, that if the Emperour would pay the cost of the War, and disband his Forces, that then he should have peace, otherwise that they should prosecute the War against him to the utmost; such was the desire and inclination that the Souldan had for peace.

These Orders much troubled Don Bellianis, being very discontented that the War must end, and that he could not sacrifice the life of his Rival, fearing him so long as he should live, lest he should so propound the having of the Princess Florisbella, as the Souldan should accept of it, and indeed when the propositions were sent to the Emperour, he was willing to accept of them provided he might have the Princess for his wife, otherwise he would stand to the utmost hazard of the war, not questioning but by the help of his Allies and Friends, but that he should not onely be able to beat his enemies out of his Countrey, but to assault them in theirs, and give them such trouble that the Souldan would be willing to propound his Daughter for a composition of the War.

This answer being returned to the two Generals, Don Bellianis and Balcalano, displeased them both, but the anger that Don Bellianis was in at this proposition was so great, that I am not able to express it; for rising from the place where he sat, he delivered this answer to the Messenger:

Go tell thy Master, that so long as the Souldan of Babylon has Subjects in his whole Empire, that he shall never compel him to such baseness as the prostituting his most Royal Daughter to one so base and unworthy: and were all the Treasure of the Souldan exhausted, all his Subjects slain, and none left in his whole Empire to defend him, yet I would command such an Army from other parts in defence of the Royal Princess *Florisbella*, as should not onely be able to expel thy Master from the Souldans Dominions, but also to destroy him, and all his in the very heart of his
own

own Kingdom. And tell thy Master, that since he hath neglected the gracious and favourable Propositions of the Souldan, that he now expect no more, but prepare himself for all the misfortunes that a cruel and bloody War can bring him: And tell him, that I the *Knight of the Golden Image*, do resolve when next I meet him, to bereave him of his life or lose my own in the attempt, and hereupon I bid him mortal battel.

This was the Answer of Don Bellianis, and it was spoken with so much fierceness, that the very fire issued out of his eyes for anger, and he could hardly utter his words for the inward vexation that he took at the Demands of the Emperour. Thus the Messenger being returned, Don Bellianis and Balcalano resolved both to assault him on the next day, and use their utmost endeavors to gain the City, and thereupon they provided all things ready for an Assault.

CHAP. XXVII.

How Don Brianel Prince of Macedon was married to *Aurora* Queen of *Antioch*, and of the Tilts and Tournaments that was held at the Wedding, and of an Adventure that happened there.

WE will now for a while leave the two Princes of Grece and Numidia, and all their Companions and Armies in their field, encamped before the City of Pharez, as you have heard in the foregoing Chapter, and turn back to Antioch where we left the Prince Don Brianel of Macedon, Don Clarineo of Spain, and Don Lucidamore of Thessaly, Don Contumeliano of Phenicia, and Florispiano of Swevia, who attended there to assist at the Solemnization of the Wedding.

There was so great joy for the return of the Queen, that most of the Nobility of the Countrey resorted to Antioch to see her, and to tender her their dutiful Allegiance, which she graciously accepted; and they still stayed to continue the Triumph that should be at the Wedding. The day being come, and all things provided, the Queen and Don Brianel were married in great pomp, and she that day was most richly attired, so that
p not with-

notwithstanding all her sorrows in her travels, she appeared to be one of the most handsome Princesses in the world : Dinner being ended, every one resorted to the tilt-yard, which was near the Palace, where a Scaffold was erected, and on that was placed two Chairs of State for the King and Queen to sit and behold the Tournaments and Feats of Chivalry that was to be performed.

Don Clarineo, Don Lucidamore, Don Contumeliano, and Florispiano, and a young Knight called Trion, or the Knight of the Wolf, who was Son to Damartino the late Governour, were the Challengers, who undertook to Joust, and keep the Field against all comers for six days, and accordingly they being armed at all points, entered the Lists, and commanded the Trumpets to sound, and the Herald to proclaim, that if there were any adventurous Knights that would in honor of the King and Queen break a Lance, they were there ready to receive him; which was no sooner done, but there came a Knight armed in white Armour, who taking a Lance entered the Lists, and expected the sound of the Trumpet that he might begin his Course: the Knight of the Wolf did the like, and they bravely meeting brake their Lances in the encounter, and so passed on; at the next encounter the Knight of the Wolf had so good fortune, as to overthrow the other Knight out of the Saddle, and passed on being unshaken, and expected another Assault, when presently another Knight armed in Azure Armour entered the List, and doing his obeisance to the King and Queen, expected the encounter, which was so fierce that he lost both his stirrups, and the horse of the Knight of the Wolf was on his buttocks, but he soon made him rise and so went bravely on, when taking another Lance, and resolving to be revenged of his late disgrace, he ran so fiercely against the Knight in the Azure Armour, that he sent him from his horse to the ground with his Saddle between his legs.

After this, another Knight entered the List armed in a green Armour, and on his Shield was painted a Knight leaning on the ground under a tuft of Trees, and he went by the name of The solitary Knight: this Knight after his due reverence to the

the King and Queen, pranced about the field with great grace at last he arrived at the end of the Lists, and taking a Lance from one of his Pages, at the sound of the Trumpets began his Career, and performed so well that he made the Knight of the Wolf lose both his stirrups, he being very little shaken with the encounter: At the second course the Knight of the Wolf in revenge of the former blow, ran so fiercely that he threw the solitary Knight horse and man both to the earth: at which there was a great shout.

And thus did the Knight of the Wolf throw many Knights from their horses, so that he that day dismounted sixteen, and the night coming on they left off that sport, and retiring into the Court, they disarming themselves, fell to dancing: In which exercise they were as perfect as the other, so that they are as fit for Venus as Mars. Much of the evening they spent in these kind of exercises, but at length they left off, and conducted the King and Queen to Bed, where the fair Princess gave to Don Brianel as full and free possession of her Body, as he had formerly given her of her Kingdom, and there he received a full satisfaction for all the travels he had sustained in her service.

Much was the content they both received, and I suppose there was but few Knights in the Court but did envy their happiness, and would have been glad to have had the company of so sweet a Bed-fellow as he enjoyed; in which enjoyment we will leave him and the rest to their several thoughts till the morning, which being come they all arose, and the Queen signified by her blushing, that she had parted from that Jewel which till then she had preferred.

They being all dressed, noon was come when they sat down to Dinner, which being done they all went to the tilt-yard to prosecute that sport they had begun, where every one being seated in the same order they were the day before, the five Champions rid about the field expecting the arrival of some adventurous Knight: they had not stayed long ere they had their desire for there entered a Knight into the field armed in black Armour, causing his horse bravely to prance about the field, perform-

ed his Duty to the King and Queen, and then taking a Lance expected the sound of the Trumpet, which being heard he put forwards, but he was encountered with such force by the Knight of the Wolf, that he was thrown from his horse, and forced to measure his length on the earth; which having done he retired and then there entered into the Lists a Knight armed with a white Armour, as a new Knight, and on his Shield he had two Keys of Gold painted very artificially: this Knight gave all the Spectators cause of admiration, for he demeaned himself very courteously, not only in his saluting the King and Queen but in his respects to all the Spectators, and taking a Lance in his hand he ran against the Knight of the Wolf so furiously, that at the first encounter he threw him to the earth, to the great amazement of the Company, who now took him for a very brave Knight. Having performed so well with the Knight of the Wolf, he faced about and expected to meet with some other Knight, and he failed not long in his expectation, for Florispiano of Swevia taking a strong and knotty Lance, at the sound of the Trumpets met him with so great fury, thinking to revenge his Companions quarrel, but he was deceived therein; for he onely brake his Lance upon his Enemies Shield without doing him any other harm, and the Knight of the Keys having likewise broke his Lance, took another, and so they began a new Career: but this second was more to the disadvantage of Florispiano than the former, for he lost both his Stirrups; but before he came to the end of the Lists he bravely recovered himself, and so they did both, and taking new Launces ran again, but to the greater misfortune of Florispiano than before, for he was now tumbled from his horse. This gave much wonder to all present to think who the Knight of the Keys was, for he was wholly unknown there, and came then by chance, as shall be told you hereafter.

The Knight of the Keys having performed so valiantly, expected another Knight to encounter him, when presently Conrumeliano Prince of Phenicia prepared himself for the Encounter: and taking a Lance in his hand went forwards to the Knight of the Keys, and said to him: Sir Knight, I have one request

request to make to you before we try our fortunes with the Lance, which is, that you would tell me your Name, and of what Countrey you are.

To which the Knight of the Keys courteously replied, Sir Knight, I am known by no other Name than the Knight of the Keys, and to tell you any other Name would little satisfy you, for I was born in a Countrey so far from hence, that it hath seldom here been heard of, and I assure you I came hither by accident, and never was in your company, nor in this place before till this day, and therefore if you have nothing else to say to me, let us proceed with our Lances. To which the Prince of Phenicia replied, I to my experience know, Sir Knight, that you do perform very well with the Lance, therefore I pray grant this Request, that if we chance both to break one of two Lances without any effect, and neither of us have any advantage, that you will proceed to the Sword, where we may have more occasion to try our valour. To this Request the Knight of the Keys consented, and so they forthwith brake off their discourse, and began their Career.

Great was the fury with which both these Champions met, and they resolving to show all their strength, brake their Lances in pieces, and so passed on; at the next encounter they resolved to perform better, and so they did, for they not onely brake their Lances, as before, but marring with their bodies with great fury, fell both to the ground. Great was the admiration at this wonderful encounter, and both the Knights were themselves much amazed, but they nimbly got on their feet, and the Knight of the Keys being angered at this misfortune, went to the Prince of Phenicia, and said: Sir Knight, it was your desire before we tried our fortunes with the Lance, that if we should have no advantage with the Lance, that we might end the Controversie with the Sword: Now since we have both had an equal misfortune, and therefore are incapable to end the difference with the Lance, let us finish it without Swords: To which the Prince of Phenicia consented. And so they drew their Swords and began a marvellous brave Combate, to the satisfaction and admiration of all the Beholders.

Beholders: they being equally resolved to make amends with their Swords for the default of their Lances, laid on many lusty strokes.

The Knight of the Keys being a young and lusty Knight, behaved himself very nimbly, giving his Adversary very many strokes, and still avoiding those of his Enemy, which so enraged the Prince of Phenicia that he should be so used before so many brave Knights his Friends and Companions, that he resolved to fasten one blow on his Enemy that should end the Combat, but he was deceived, for though it was so mighty a stroke that the Knight of the Keys was forced to lay one hand on the ground to shut himself from falling, yet he quickly recovered himself, and gave his adversary a mighty blow on the thigh, so that he was wounded there extremely: Which the King and Queen seeing, and doubting that what was begun in Jest and for Recreation, would end in earnest, and in the execution of one or both of their lives, caused them to be parted; much pitying that two such brave and valiant Knights should injure one another upon so slender an occasion. They being parted, the sport for that day ended, and every one returned to the Palace, much wondering who the Knight of the Keys was.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Who the Knight of the Keys was, and some of his Adventures, and an end of the Tournament.

IN the west part of Christendome there is an Island called Ireland, in which Island the Knight of the Keys was born, in a City called Wexford, situate near the Sea-side: his Parents being Christians at the time of his Baptizing gave him the Name of Peter. His Father was Earl of one of the Provinces of that Island, called Munster, and Brother to the King of that Island. This was the place of his Birth, where being the onely Son of his Father, he was bred up with all the diligence and care that might be, he providing Masters to instruct him in all things fit for so great a person.

At

At the age of eighteen years he being dubbed Knight, begged leave of his Father to seek Adventures: to which his Parents hardly consented, in regard he was the onely Comfort and Joy of their old Age; but his importunity prevailing, providing himself of things necessary, he caused a strong Suit of Armour to be made, and in respect his name was Peter, in remembrance of that holy Saint and Apostle, he caused two Keys to be painted on his Shield: And providing himself of all things necessary for so great a Voyage as he intended to take, he took his leave of his Parents, his Mother giving him three rich jewels at his departure, and her Blessing, and so he departed, taking shipping for England, where he arrived and performed many valiant Deeds of Arms: but his resolution being to see strange and far Countreys, he took shipping again, and crossing over the narrow Seas arrived in France, where at the Court of that King he performed brave Feats at Arms at the Marriage of one of the Noblemens Daughters.

And leaving a great fame of his Valour behind him, he travelled through all France: and arriving at Marsellis he again embarked himself, intending to sail to Constantinople, resolving there to spend some time in seeking out Adventures: but as he was sailing thither, the Ship was forced to put in at an Island called Sardinia, and being advertised that a great Feast was held there in Honor of the Kings Coronation Day, and that there was many Knights who approv'd their valors in running a Tilt, and such kind of honorable Exercises, he resolved to spend some time amongst them; which he did to his great advantage, for he so well demeaned himself that he got the sole Honor of the Tournament, and he carried himself so courteously to all, that he not onely got the good will and affection of the King and Queen, but also of their Daughter the beautiful Magdalena, who was so wounded by the little God Cupid that she knew not what to do: in vain was it to smother her affection, which she strived by all means possible to do, but could not, so that an ancient woman her Nurse with whom she had been bred, did discover that somewhat was the matter more than ordinary with her Mistress, and although she used many ways

ways to finde what should be the matter, yet she failed in all, till at length the Princess not being any longer able to smother her affection, discovered it to her Nurse, begging of her not onely to keep it concealed, but also to give her the best advice that she could.

The Nurse now knowing the Disease of her Mistress began to apply Remedies, and like a discreet person told her, that it was altogether unfit for her who was the Daughter of a King and so great a Beauty as she was, that the greatest Princes in the world might account themselves happy in the enjoyment of her, that she should set her love and affection on a simple Knight, one who was but a private person, and it was unknown whether he was nobly descended, or not.

To which the Princess soon replied, That she was confident he was not of mean Parentage, but of Princely Birth, in respect of the Princely Endowments and Qualifications that she saw he was endowed with; and therefore if she would do her any service it must be in this occasion, to find some way to discourse with him, and gain some knowledge of him from himself, for she was resolved in her love, and that it could not any ways be diverted.

The Nurse seeing this, desired her to smother her passions as well as she could, that the King and Queen might not discover any thing from her, and that she would take some speedy occasion to give her some satisfaction.

In these terms she left the Princess, who promised to be guided herein by her advice, and sought opportunity to speak to the Knight, which she soon found, for he was so deeply in love with the Princess, as she was with him, and desired nothing more than to have an opportunity to speak to this old Lady, who he saw was very conversant with the Princess, and did believe was her Confident. They being both equally desirous of one and the same thing, meeting together she began to him thus :

Sir Knight, I much marvel that you keep your self so concealed for I know very well that the King, Queen, and the fair Princess *Magdalena*, would be very glad to know your Linage, and Countrey,

Countrey, especially my Lady *Magdalena*; and if you would be pleased to tell it to me, I shall inform her therein, which I know will be a great satisfaction to her.

The Knight hearing this discourse, and perceiving that it was occasioned by the Princess, gave her this Answer.

That since his departure from his Parents he had not discovered himself to any, and that the Princess should command more from him than any person in the World: but she must excuse him in this particular, onely you may certifie her in general, that I am born of Princely Parentage, and that I am her very humble Servant: And I pray Madam (said he) remember my hearty Love and Service to her, and give her on my behalf this Jewel. And thereupon he gave her one of the Jewels his Mother had given him, which the old Lady received, and so they parted.

She in all haste coming to the Princess, gave her the essence of her discourse, and the Jewel; at which she was extremely satisfied, and still was every day more and more entangled and ensnared in the bonds of Love: and thereupon she caused the old Lady to have another Conference with him. At which second Conference he told her, that if the Princess would be pleased to grant him private access to her, he would give her a satisfactory account of his Estate and Condition: the which the old Lady promised to effect, and thereupon he gave her another Jewel to present to the Princess in his behalf, which she did accordingly, and then the Princess was more satisfied than before, longing for the appointed time when he was to come: which prefixed time being come, he accordingly came to visit her, and was admitted into her Presence, where after his Civilities tendered to her, he discovered himself to her, and of what Linage he was, and not onely so, but seeing how matters went, he discovered his Love to her: at which she was not at all discontented, but told him of hers to him, to the great satisfaction of them both; and there they so ordered the matter, that they concluded to be at the dispose of one another during life, and he in testimony of his love gave her another Jewel, more worth than both the former; all which he had, as I told you some time since received of his Mother: and she in return took

took a Gold Chain from her Neck, and bestowed it upon him; the which he received in hearty good will. All this was done in private, not so much as the old Lady being present; and when they had thus done and the old Lady was come, after many farewells, though unwilling, he departed.

This business being thus concluded on, he lived long time in the Court, and still was in the same credit with the King and Queen. At length he was resolved further to try the Constancy of his Princess, and thereupon took an opportunity to speak to her, and told her that now he had been there a long time, and saw no way how to gain the good will of her Father and Mother, and therefore resolved to go home and visit his Parents. At which discourse she was much troubled, for her great love to him would not permit of any separation, but she rather resolved to leave Father and Mother, and all her friends than be without him, and therefore it was resolved that she should go with him, and he prepared a small Barque to that purpose: which when it was ready at the time appointed, he in company of his Princess entered, she taking with her a good quantity of Gold and Jewels, and so they departed and left Sardinia, with a resolution to go towards his own Countrey.

No sooner were they gone, but the Princess was missed at Court, and the King after some enquiry, hearing which way they were gone, sent several Ships after them, but it was in vain; for a Tempest had forced the Barque in which the Knight and the Princess were, quite another way, and drove them on Shore at another Island called Sicillia, where their Barque being split they got on Shore, being both glad and sorry for their good and ill fortune, where the Lady after some travel by land to find a house where to repose themselves, being weary, sat down, and drawing forth a little red Purse, showed her Knight the three Jewels he had given her: at which he was joyful that she had not left them behind; and laying it by her, she being very weary, fell asleep, and he lay looking by her; but some ravenous Fowl flying by, and seeing the red Purse, supposing it to be a piece of flesh, descended from the Sky and took it up, which the Knight seeing, and knowing what it was,

arose,

arose, looking to see whether the Fowl would fly, which did soon alight on a Tree, but he soon followed her, and disturbed her by throwing Stones at her, till he forced her to fly away with the Purse; he being more angry than before, still followed her, and she flying towards the water side, he still pursued her with Stones, which the Bird perceiving, at length let the Purse fall into the Sea, but it was in so shallow a place that he could see it lie at the bottom, but could not come at it, it being a great way in the water: he attempted many ways to come at it, at last he discovered an old Boat hard by, to which he repaired, and finding a Staff therein, he intended to push the Boat to the place where the Purse lay, to the end he might recover it: which he could not do, for the Boat coming into the strength of the stream, in despite of all he could do, he was carried a great way from the place where he took Boat, and at length he came into the main Sea, when, though too late, he would have thrown himself into the Sea, if by that means he could have got on Shore. Thus was his Princess left alone on Shore, sleeping in an unknown Land, of whose misery we shall hereafter speak more.

But now we return to him who made hearty complaints not onely for his own misfortune, but that of his Princess: And thus his Boat was at the mercy of the Sea for three days, he expecting every moment when he and the Boat should be devour'd by the Sea; but his Destiny having prepared him for better fortunes, at last he was forced by the impetuousness of the waves, on a little Island in the Mediterranean Seas, called Zante, where when he came on Shore, he praised God for his safe deliverance from the Sea, not without many tears for the loss of his dear Princess. There when he had in some manner recovered his health, which was impaired by his long fasting, he hired a small Ship to search up and down all the Islands of the Archipelago to find his Princess out, not knowing the name of the place where he had lost her: but all was in vain, for he had lost her quite another way.

Thus being crossed at his ill fortune, he at last landed at Constantinople, and then not caring whether he went, such was his

forrow for the loss of his dear Prince : His destinies after many weary Journeys, at last brought him to Antioch, where he arrived at the Triumphs held for the Solemnization of the Wedding of the King and Queen, and there he performed such knightly Deeds of Chivalry, as hath been told you in the foregoing Chapter.

The next day after the Combate between the Knight of the Keys and the Prince of Phenicia, all the Champions resorted early into the Lists, and there the two Knights desired of the King to give them leave to finish their Combate: but the King would not assent thereto, but ordered that they should both descend therefrom; and in regard there had been so much equalling in the Knights both at the Lance and Sword, neither of them should be accounted Vanquished, or Vanquisher; and that they should neither of them come into the Field all the following days of the Tournament, but that the two Knights Don Clarineo, and Don Lucidamore should keep the Field onely; which at last they all assented to, and they performed it to their great honor: for in that time they dismounted many hardy Knights but still kept the honor of the Field till all the days of the Tournament were accomplished.

CHAP. XXVIII.

How Don Clarineo, Don Lucidamore, Contumeliano, Florispiano, The Knight of the Wolf, the Knight of the Keys, did all take their Leaves of the King and Queen, and journeyed towards Babylon to meet with Don Bellianis.

These Jousts and Tournaments being ended, and most of the Nobility departed to their own Dwellings, the Knights Don Clarineo and his Companions, desired leave to depart in quest of their Brother Don Bellianis, and the King and Queen hearing that he was at Babylon, or thereabouts, knowing of the Wars that was betwixt the Souldan of Babylon and the Emperour of Trebizond, and that Don Bellianis was engaged therein, they not onely consented to their departure,

ture, but also would have furnished them with many brave Knights to have gone with them, but they refused that kindness.

The Knight of the Wolf likewise knowing their intentions, and that in their company he should be certain to get glory desired his Father Damarrino to give him leave to accompany them, which he did likewise consent unto, knowing the worth of his companions would be able to keep him from harm: thus were they accompanied and ready to go, when Peter of Ireland, the Knight of the Keys, being almost bereaved of his senses for the loss of his dear Mistress the Princess Magdalena, and being resolved to search all the World over but he would find her; and having a very great esteem for the Princes Don Clarineo, Lucidamore, and the rest of their Companions, for the great worth and valor that he saw them endow'd with, he came likewise to them, and desired them to admit him to be a Companion in their adventurous Travels: To which his request they soon consented, for they had a very great esteem for him, having seen him exercise his valor.

Thus accompanied, they came one morning to the King and Queen to take their last farewell, when the King told them that since they would not take any forces with them, he desired that if his Cousin Don Bellianis, or any of them had, or should have any occasion for Forces, he would at any time assist them with fifty thousand men, and come in the head of them him self, and give such testimonies of his good will and affection for them, that he would merit the esteem and service they had done for him. Having thus said, the Queen likewise heartily thanked them for the honor they had done her, and desired to be kindly remembered to Don Bellianis, hoping that he and they all, the Wars being ended, would take that place in their way home, whereby she should again have the satisfaction of their good companies: to which Request of hers they assented to, kissing her hands they departed, and set forthwards for Babylon.

The Knight of the Keys was very heavy and pensive, as you have heard, which gave them all some trouble, but Don Clarineo having a more particular esteem for him than the rest, so

the occasion of his melancholly : which when he had heard, he was likewise much troubled thereat, participating in the sorrows of his friend, and promised him that so soon as he had seen his Brother Don Bellianis, that he would return with him to Constantinople, and there would cause such diligent search to be made, that he would find her if she were any where in all those Seas, bowing unto him an eternal friendship; which the Knight of the Keys not only accepted, but promised the same should continue to him to the end of his life.

This discourse being ended, they passed on their Journey in somewhat more pleasant communication in such manner, that in short time they arrived near to the City of Babylon: In which travels we will once more leave them, and turn to Don Bellianis and his Companion, the Numidian Prince, and the rest of those valiant warriors that were set down before the City of Pharez.

C H A P. XXIX.

How Don Bellianis and the Prince of Numidia assaulted the Emperor and his Forces, and forced them all to retire into the City.

Great was the vexation and anger of Don Bellianis, for that he saw the Wars had held him so long from the sight of his dear Mistress the Princess Florisbella, and therefore he resolved to assault his Enemies, and force them to a Battle, and the Prince of Numidia was likewise of the same resolution: Wherefore they providing all things ready, divided their Army into two parts, which they took between them, and so with their whole Forces set upon the Enemy in their Encampments, and having given them the Alarm, followed it with so much puissance, that they soon forced them to retire to the City Walls.

The Emperor of Trebizond being advertised hereof came forth, and at the Head of fifty thousand valiant men went to meet Don Bellianis, whom he soon found and knew by the mightiness of his blows: the presence of the Emperor gave some new

new courage to his Soldiers, and he engaging with Don Bellianis caused them that were about to flee into the City, to face about and return upon their Enemies, and then there was a fierce Slaughter upon all sides.

The Prince of Numidia with a Party of fifty thousand men rode up and down the Field, to give his assistance to that party or place where there was most need: and there was one party of the Emperor of Trebizond's Foot-soldiers of about fifty thousand, who kept close together, and did much harm to his Soldiers, being commanded and guarded by ten strong Squads, whom the Numidian attempted to disperse, but they were all so resolute that he could not break through their Ranks; wherefore he attempted them a new way, and retiring from them first, ordered his Squadrons in the fashion of a Wedge, the front not being above twenty Knights, but the Rear was above five hundred men broad, and he in the Head of this party forced with his twenty Knights into the ranks of his enemies Squadron, and mangre all the resistance of the Spaniards and the rest, he went into the body of the Army, and being gone so far, the rest followed him, till at length the Rear of his Squadron opening to the right and left, and so wheeling about both ways, encompassed the Enemies Squadron, engaging them in front, Rear, Flanks and Middle, and indeed on all sides at one and the same time. He had such success that in short time he killed most of them, so that of fifty thousand men there was not left one thousand alive.

All this while the Emperor himself was fighting valiantly with Don Bellianis, where he gave and received many wounds, but there was little advantage between them, by reason they were hindered by the multitude of other Knights that fought about them. This incensed Don Bellianis, being full of wrath that he could not execute the Revenge he intended on his Enemy; but before they were parted he gave him one large wound on the shoulder, and then he coming up calling he was forced to leave him, and to be left in the Ranks of his Enemies, being much angered; the effects of which caused the death of many persons, for he seldom gave a stroke but death presently followed.

lowed. He was attended by the Prince of Mesopotamia, the Knight of the Flaming Sword, and the Knight of Hope, who did very well testifie themselves to be valiant knights, and good Pionniers in Bellonas Field: great was the slaughter where they came, but far greater where the Prince of Numidia was; for he had destroyed all his foes, and was now coming to Don Bellianis to assist him, but he needed little of his aid: for like a roaring Lion he flew like Lightening into all places of the Field.

The Emperour of Trebizond hearing of the ill fortune of his Squadron of Foot, in whose strength he put much confidence, was greatly dismayed at that overthrow, and being angered at his ill fortune, he caused a Retreat to be sounded, but it was in a very ill manner performed; for he was forced to draw all his Forces into the City, not being able any longer to keep the field leaving his entrenchments to his Enemies, and with great difficulty did he get into the City, for he was hotly pursued by his Enemies, and many of his men slain: but at length into the City he got and made fast the Gates, and then Don Bellianis, Balasano of Numidia, and all their forces being hindered from going further, were forced to stay: But coming into the place where their Enemies had encamped, they found very good booty, which gave a great satisfaction to the Soldiers, their General having given them free leave to take all they could get. This being done, they fortified themselves in their Enemies Entrenchments, the two Generals resolving not onely to continue close Siege to the City, but also to assault them there, setting Pionniers to work to undermine some part of the City-wall, that they might make a breach and so enter to them, and all the other ways that they could invent or imagine they put in practice: but the design at that time was hindered, for the City was soon after relieved by the arrival of fresh Supplies, as shall be hereafter declared to you. And now we will for a while turn back to Babylon to the Souldans Palace, and see what the Ladies did, which we will shew you in the next Chapter.

CHAP. XXX.

How the Souldan of Babylon received a Letter from Don Bellianis, who sent others to the Princesses Florisbella and Mattarosa: and of the Arrival of the Princes Don Clarimeo of Spain, Don Lucidamore of Thessaly, and the rest of their Companions at Babylon, in quest of Don Bellianis.

The Souldan of Babylon had not heard any News of the success of his Forces under the command of Don Bellianis, since the departure of the Prince of Numidia, onely such News as report gave out, and therefore much desired to be satisfied in his Affairs: however he continually raised more Forces, and kept a great Guard about him, to be ready at all times when occasion should serve to be upon the march. In these Affairs was he employed, when one day sitting in Council, an express Messenger came with Letters from the Camp, which he delivered to the Souldan, who immediately causing them to be opened, there was written as followeth.

The LETTER of Don Bellianis to the
Souldan of Babylon.

Dear Lord,

Since my arrival with your Forces I have been indifferently fortunate, for I have not onely satisfied the mindes of your own Subjects in the way that I marched, but have also received much aid by their voluntary assistance, which I accepted of according to the Orders that you sent me, and we have had some Engagement with the Enemy to a very good advantage; for we have forced him to leave your Countrey, part of which he was entred into and retire into his own with much loss and disadvantage. The Arrival of the Prince of Numidia was very importunely done, for we were then engaging the Enemy, who is so wilfully resolute, that without the aid he brought we should have had some disadvantage.

The Offers of Peace you sent were tendered to the Emperor of Trebizond, but he in hopes of Assistance from his Neighboring Kings, is still resolute to proceed in the War, unless he may have the Princess your Daughter offered up to him. Which Propositions of his we wholly declined, and such is the anger of your Subjects at his Arrogancy in propounding things so unreasonable, that rather than their Princess shall be exposed to a thing so disagreeable to her inclination, they will all lose their lives. If, Sir, you continue in this opinion (as I hope your Imperial Majesty will never condescend to a thing so base and mean, as the Prostitution of your Daughter, to have peace with your Enemy) I then question not but to force your Enemy to very good terms, and much to your advantage. If the aid the Emperor expects does come in to him, it will occasion the lengthning of the War, and you some trouble to send fresh supplies, which I question not your readiness to perform; And Sir, assure your self, that in so just a cause as this, I shall not onely hazard my own person to the utmost perils, but rather than condescend to any thing that is base, I shall be able of my self to raise such Friends as shall bring me two hundred thousand men to justify this Quarrel, and be revenged of your unreasonable Enemies: But I hope, Sir, ere any fresh Supplies come to the Enemy, that we shall be able to compel him to put an end to this War: And assure your self that all my utmost endeavors shall not be wanting in execution of this publick Affair, as hitherto I have been ready to hazard my Person in the preservation of your Majesty, and that of your Family, and I shall think my self sufficiently satisfied, if for all my trouble and travel you will do me the honor to permit me to be a servant to You and your Family, and more particularly to be admitted by your fair Daughter as a Servant to her Vertues; In expectation of which I shall account nothing dear, so as I may be admitted for her Champion, and I question not but I shall give a satisfaction to you all; which I make my resolve to do, or die

A Faithful Servant to your Imperial Majesty,

The Knight of the Basilisks.
Great

Great satisfaction did this Letter give to the Souldan, not onely for the good success that his Forces had already obtained, but for their resolution to continue constant to him: He considered that he had great cause to be thankful to the Knight of the Basilisks (for so he was called at the Court, being unknown by any other Name there:) he had been much bound to him already for delivering him and his Daughter from the Enchantment of the Tent, as it was set down in the first Book of this History, for the assistance he had given to his Cousin the Princess Aurora, in helping her to her Kingdom of Antioch; for his delivering his Cousin the Princess Mararosa, and her Brother the Prince of Numidia, from the power of the Giant Altifer and his Companions, and more especially for releasing him from the Enchantment in the Island, to the extraordinary great peril of his person, and now at last he was engaged in a long and troublesome War, and had performed very well already in it, and had sent him his resolutions to persist therein, and all the advantage he desired and propounded to himself for all these so signal Services, was onely to be admitted a Servant and Champion to his Daughter, whose Cause he was now fighting in.

These he thought so reasonable, that he immediately sent for his Daughter, and being resolved to do nothing as to her person without her consent, he told her the effect of the Knights Letter, and withal informed her with his Request, desiring her that if it were not wholly against her inclination, that she would grant the Request of the Knight.

She who was as desirous of this as he was, and had not only a good will, but an extraordinary affection for him, answered her Father, That she considered the Obligations they were all bound to the Knight of the Basilisks in were so many, and binding, that she was ready to do that, as also any thing else that her Father should desire that would give satisfaction to the Knight of the Basilisks, who she said, she believed was sent by the Gods for the preservation of her and all her Family, and was certainly the Tutelar Angel of their Country. And she further added, that were she knowing of the Birth and Parentage,

tage, and that it were equal to hers, and the good Will of her Father and Friends joyned to her own Inclination, she should do that willingly for him which the Emperour of Trebizond endeavored to force her to, so greatly was she satisfied, not onely in the Courage and Magnanimity, but also in the Vertues of the Knight of the Basilisks.

When she had said thus she held her peace, and somewhat blushed that she had so plainly discovered her affection to her Father: but she was somewhat satisfied when her Father gave her this reply, That he was wholly of her opinion, and that he questioned not but that one so well accomplished, was likewise of an Illustrious Birth; and that he would endeavor to satisfy himself in his Birth, in the mean time he advised his Daughter to write to the Knight, and give him some satisfaction, such as she should think fit: And he said, he questioned not but he was of an extraordinary Quality, for he propounded the raising two hundred thousand men to fight under him in this Service.

This was the discourse between the Emperour and his Daughter, which being ended she retired into her Closet, where she was expected by her Cousin the Princess Matarrasa, who had received Letters from Don Bellianis, one for her self, and another for her Cousin. When the Princess Florisbella came there, she found her Cousin reading of that to her self, but she quickly left off that to deliver the other to her Cousin: which she no sooner received, but she opened the Seal, and found therein written as followeth.

The LETTER of Don Bellianis to the Princess Florisbella.

MADAM,

I First crave your pardon for my silence hitherto, and give you this for excuse, that my Sword has till this time been so employed, that I had not time to exercise my Pen. My Sword hath been exercised in the destruction of your Enemies, and indeed we have

have had so good effects (the justness of our Quarrel commanding it) that your Enemies are not onely expelled out of your Kingdom, but they are in some kinde of distress in their own; for we have at last (by the help of your valiant Cousin the Prince of Numidia, and the Forces he brought with him) forced the Enemy with great loss to leave the Field and retire to the City, where we have now encompassed him. The Propositions your Father sent were not accepted of, though very reasonable, and the Emperour of Trebizond is still so presumptuous, as to desire your Person in marriage, and upon these terms he will leave the War; and this he questions not to force you to do by the help of more Forces he is raising, and by the Aid he expects from some of his Alliance: how pleasant this Proposition was you may easily judge, and that he might as well have said that we should all suffer our selves to be slain without any resistance, and I for my part should sooner have consented to that, than this so unjust command. This his presumption caused me to desire his Person, and I had a resolution to kill him, or die at our next meeting, but hitherto I have been hindered from executing this my just Resolution, but I still keep in the same Determination. Madam, this is the present condition of your publick Affairs, but I continually suffer Martyrdom in my long absence from your Divine presence: Madam, I beseech you pardon my presumption in writing so plainly to the Souldan your Father, I did it to understand somewhat of his inclination: I pray let me by your answer know his resentments thereof. Thus Madam, hoping and not questioning your Constancy, and that your inclination will still continue to make me happy, I rest

Your Eternal Servant,

Don Bellianis.

The Princess having read hers with much content, desired to know the effect of the Letter sent by her Knight to the Princess Matarrasa; which she delivered into her hands to give her that satisfaction, and in exchange took hers: the Princess Florisbella read as followeth.

The

The LETTER of Don Bellianis to the
Princess Mattarosa.

MADAM,

I Shall not trouble you with an Account of our proceedings in the War, my Letter to the Souldan, or that to my Princess will give you that satisfaction: but to tell you in general, that all things here are well, and we want nothing but your pleasing companies to divert us. Madam, I hope you sometimes have some thoughts of us, and that that friendship which hath been contracted between us, is not forgotten; and I hope you have a particular care of the Affairs of your poor Servant, whom out of nothing you have made so happy: I beseech you continue me in the good opinion of my fair Princess your Cousin, and assure her that I will ever endeavor to give her daily effects of my Duty and Service.

The Prince your Brother is in very good health, and hath performed Wonders in this War, and the young Knight of Hope is very diligent in preserving the Favor you were formerly pleased to give him, and in honor of your Name he acts marvellously, and gives great testimonies of a valiant minde, the effects of which have caused the deaths of many of your Adversaries; and indeed he is such a one as deserves an esteem from you, having your name and person in great veneration. This is all I shall at present trouble you with, yet once more I beg you to continue my Princesses esteem towards me, and in doing thereof you shall eternally oblige

Your Servant,

Don Bellianis.

The Princess having read this Letter, returned it to her Cousin, and then they conferred together what was necessary to be done. The Princess Florisbella informed her Cousin of the Discourse that had happened between her Father and her self about Don Bellianis, and said that there was nothing wanting to gain the Souldans Consent, but the discovery of Don Bellianis his Quality, and then she questioned not but her Father

then when he should be informed of his high Birth, would be very well satisfied in every thing; and therefore, said she, I think it will not be amiss for you to discourse of this matter to your Aunt my Mother, and you may take occasion to declare somewhat of Don Bellianis his Extraction, telling her that you heard it by some of his Company when you were released from the Spant Alifer.

To this they both agreed and resolved, but they had no occasion thereof; for not long after arrived at the Court the Princesses Don Clarineo of Spain, Don Lucidamore of Thessaly, and the rest of their Companions, in search of Don Bellianis, when they arrived at the Palace, they enquired for the Souldan, who was with his Council communicating to them the good News that he had received by Letters from the Knight of the Basilisks.

Being come into the Presence, Don Clarineo in behalf of himself and his Companions, told the Souldan that they came from the Court of the Princess Aurora from Antioch, who desired to be recommended to him in all humility, and had sent him a Letter, and then kneeling on his knees, he delivered the same to the Souldan, who causing the same to be opened, it contained these words.

The LETTER of Aurora Queen of Antioch,
to the Souldan of Babylon.

Most Illustrious Uncle,

MY hard misfortune in being expelled my Kingdom hath long since arrived to your knowledge, and now having so great a good as to be restored thereto, I thought convenient to inform you of the truth thereof. The Illustrious Prince Don Bellianis of Greece, and Son to the Emperor, has (by the appointment of the Gods) been the chief Instrument of my Restauration; for not only he and his Friends killed the Usurpers Gallaneo and Tramolcano, but also have caused the Souldan of Persia to give me full and quiet possession thereof, where I am now peaceably settled: And I have also joyned my self in Marriage with Don Brian Prince of Macedonia,

Macedon, and Cousin to the same *Don Bellianis*, who as I hear under the Names of the *Knight of the Basilisks* and the *Golden Image*; hath done you some Services. Assure your self, Sir, that he has not his equal throughout the whole Universe, as I by sufficient experience can testify, both for valor and vertue; and I think my self happy in his Alliance, having married into his Family. This Noble Company that are now come to you are his Brethren and Alliance, and are come in quest of their Brother and Friend. What kindness you shall do to them, I am confident they will deserve, and it shall be likewise acknowledged to be done to

Your affectionate and obliged Kinswoman

Aurora of Antioch.

Greatly satisfied was the Souldan when he had read this Letter, for now he knew that which he so much desired, the Quality of *Don Bellianis*, and seeing his two Brothers, and knowing that they were all of his Alliance, he arose from his Seat and kindly embraced them, and bid them heartily welcome, telling them that he accounted himself extremely happy in their company, and that he was more obliged to their Brother and Friend *Don Bellianis*, than to all the Persons on the Earth.

They gave him many thanks for the good esteem he had of them, and told him that they were likewise ready to serve him in what occasion soever he should employ them: and since *Don Bellianis* was absent, they desired his leave for them to depart towards him. The Souldan consented to this, but wished he desired them to take some Forces with them, which was accordingly agreed on.

Thus after this Discourse with the Souldan, he conducted them to the presence of the Emperess and her Daughter the Princess *Florisbella*, and her Cousin *Mattarosa*, and the rest of the Ladies; which pleasant sight gave a great content to all the Knights but *Peter of Ireland*, but in him it renewed his sorrow for the loss of his Princess *Magdalena*. The Emperess and

and Ladies being informed by the Souldan of the Quality of the Knights, and that they were Brothers and near Relations of *Don Bellianis*, was much pleased with their company, and giving them their hands to kiss, told them that she was very joyful to see them: the Princess *Florisbella* and *Mattarosa* did likewise kindly receive them: and the Princess *Florisbella* was not onely joyful for their arrival, but also greatly contented that now her Father was satisfied in the true Quality of *Don Bellianis*.

The Knights were all very sensible of the occasion that continued *Don Bellianis* in the Souldans service, and did truly think that it was for the sake of the Princess *Florisbella*, whom they did esteem to be the most beautiful Lady they ever saw, and therefore worthy to be served by so good a Knight.

At length after several Complements the Knights were disarmed, and after a short repast the Souldan called them to Council, wherein it was concluded, that they should depart the next day, and carry with them fifty thousand men who were all ready for the march, to go and assist *Don Bellianis*.

CHAP. XXXI.

How the Emperor of *Trebizond* was relieved by the Arrival of the Kings of *Albania* and *Georgia* with one hundred thousand men, and fifty thousand men sent by the Emperor of *Russia*, and how he appointed a pitched Battel with *Don Bellianis*, and *Baltasano* Prince of *Numidia*, and their Armies; and how the two Princes Brothers to *Don Bellianis*, and all the other Knights came with the Aid of fifty thousand men, and engaged with *Don Bellianis* and his Army against the Emperor of *Trebizond*, whom in the end they conquer and take him Prisoner: And so leaving one hundred thousand men in the Field, under the Command of *Baltasano*, *Don Bellianis* and the rest of his Friends and Alliance, with the rest of the Army, marched back with their Prisoners to *Babylon*.

In some distress was the Emperor of *Trebizond*, by reason of his being closely besieged in the City of *Pharez*, but the

the expectation he had to be relieved by his Friends, gave him some satisfaction, and still continued him in his former resolutions of not agreeing to the end of the War, unless it were on the Conditions he had formerly propounded to Don Bellianis who you know was resolved rather to die than to yield to any such Proposals, and therefore he and the Prince of Numidia endeavored all they could to gain the City, but it was so well fortified that it was very difficult: however they caused the Mines to be made to undermine the Wall, but before they had ended that, News came of the Arrival of fresh Supplies to the Emperor; whereupon they prepared themselves to resist them, and to hinder (if possible) their entrance into the City.

But the Kings of Albania and Georgia who were arrived within three Leagues of the City, and heard that they must fight their way through the Souldans Army, prepared for the Encounter, and so in good order marched on until they arrived within sight of each other, and then Don Bellianis and Baltasano with fifty thousand well approved Knights likewise advanced to meet them, where they soon encountered one another.

The two Kings of Albania and Georgia being both valiant and redoubted knights, couching their Lances went to encounter the two Generals, the Princes of Greece and Numidia, who likewise couching their Lances ran against them, and breaking their Lances without much prejudice to one another, they passed on, and so both Armies joined to mortal Battel, where great was the noise of the sound of Trumpets and all manner of other warlike Instruments, and the clashing of Armour: but greater was the terror that the two brave Generals Don Bellianis and Baltasano gave to their Enemies where ever they came; for whoever came within the reach of their well-cutting Swords, did pay dearly for that presumption. The two Kings of Albania and Georgia did likewise behave themselves like hardy Knights, and valiant and discreet Generals, for their great and valorous Deeds gave both encouragement and valor to their followers. Very bloody was the fight when News came to Don Bellianis to advertise him, that the Emperor with great Forces was come out of the City, and had assaulted his

his Camp. At which News he went to Baltasano, and advising him thereof, they concluded that the presence of one of them would be very necessary, and therefore Don Bellianis out of the desire he had to be revenged on his Enemy and Rival the Emperor, chose to go thither and leave the Prince of Numidia to continue the Fight: which being agreed on he quickly departed, and arriving at his Camp he found that the Enemy had made a valiant Assault, and that they had been as well resisted by the two valiant Knights, the Knight of Hope, and the Knight of the Flaming Sword, who were fighting valiantly in the midst of the Emperors Forces: Don Bellianis seeing that encouraged them by his presence, and so departed to find out the Emperor, who at length he overtook, and knowing him by the many hardy strokes he saw him deliver, he cried out to him, Sir Knight, you will gain more Honor by leaving these people and fighting with me, who am resolved to conquer you or die. The Emperor hearing these words, soon turned about to see who had been so hardy as to speak them: but he was soon satisfied when he saw they were uttered by the valiant Knight of the Basilisks; wherefore leaving his other enemies he came towards Don Bellianis, and so they both making their ways through the Ranks of their Armies, joined in fight together.

The Emperor heated in battel, gave Don Bellianis a mighty blow over the Helmet, but he soon requited it by returning him another on the Shoulder, which descending, wounded him on the Arm. Thus was the Fight on all sides vigorously prosecuted: But the Kings of Albania and Georgia being wholly desirous to force their way into the City, made it their whole business to get thither, and so by degrees they got ground, till at length both the Armies came in sight of one another, and then the Emperors Forces seeing that they were likely to be so well relieved, gave a great shout, and joined all their Forces together: the noise that they made gave some disquiet to Don Bellianis, who was still fighting with the Emperor, and being desirous to know what was the matter, he reached the Emperor so mighty a blow that he remained without feeling, and so

He turned his horse towards the place from whence the noise came, and then he soon discovered that the occasion of it was the arrival of the two Kings into the Army with their assistance. He presently rode furiously through all the Ranks of his Enemies, doing much execution, till he arrived at the place where the Prince of Numidia was engaged in fight with two mighty Giants; one of which he presently assailed, and with less than three strokes laid him dead at his feet, when turning about he saw that his Companion the Numidian had likewise killed the other: and so they both agreed to retire to their own Forces to see how the Fight was maintained, and so making their way by the death of many of their Adversaries, they arrived at their own Camp, where they saw the two Knights of Hope and the Flaming Sword, bravely engaged with six courageous Knights, and yet they defended themselves very valiantly: they soon joined with them to the loss of all the lives of the six Knights.

In the mean time the Emperor being free endeavored to withdraw his Forces, and so coming to the Kings of Albania and Georgia, after some Complements, he desired them likewise to draw off their Forces, which being done they all retired into the City, but with the loss of twenty thousand men, Don Bellianis and his Forces following them to the very Gates. When they were entered the City, the Emperor conducted the two Kings to the Palace, where he entertained them and gave them many thanks for their aid and assistance, and then they concluded to rest their Forces for two days, and by that time the Emperor told them he was confident he should not only have aid from the Emperor of Russia, but likewise more of his own, and so soon as they were arrived he intended to take the Field, not questioning but he should quickly force the Enemy to leave his Countrey.

Don Bellianis and the Prince of Numidia retired up to their Camp, and resolved very suddenly to give them a general Assault: but the next day the Forces of the Emperor of Russia arrived, and in despite of Don Bellianis entrenched themselves and kept the Field. The Emperor being thus well relieved, resolved

resolved now to take the Field, and give a Field-battle to his Enemies, which he concluded to do the next day: and in order thereunto, early the next morning he with one hundred thousand men under his own Conduct issued out of the City, one hundred thousand men under the Conduct of the two Kings of Albania and Georgia, and fifty thousand men under the Command of the Knight of the Tyger, kinsman to the Emperor of Russia, who had brought those Forces thither.

In this equipage the Emperor was in the Field, and on the other side the two Generals Don Bellianis and Balasano, divided their Forces only into two parts, and resolving on all sides to fight valiantly and conquer their Enemies, they bravely assailed each other: Bloody was the Fight in all places, so that soon was the Fields green Apparel turned into purple. The Generals on all sides performed wonders: the Emperor on his part did very valiantly, resolving to get the Field or never return to the City: and Don Bellianis being resolved this day to show the invincibleness of his Courage, he being accompanied by five hundred Knights, as his Guard, in despite of all opposition forced his way into the Camp of his Enemies, where with his own Arm he soon killed fifty Knights, and those who followed him imitating his Example, slew many of their Enemies.

The Prince of Numidia had likewise in another place forced his way into his Enemies Camp, and there he encountered the Knight of the Tyger, who was encompassed with ten strong Giants, but maugre all their opposition he furiously forced his way through them, and assailed the Knight of the Tyger with so mighty a blow on the head, so that he was not only astonished, but the Sword falling on the horse his head, cleaved him down right, and he fell down dead under his Master. The Giants who were near him soon assisted him, and mounted him on another horse, but it cost two of them their lives, the one being slain by the Prince of Numidia, and the other by the Knight of Hope, who was now arrived with some Forces to the place where Balasano was, and then they all joined Forces, and the Knight of the Tyger being very valiant, revenged him-

self.

Self by the loss of the lives of many of his Enemies.

Don Bellianis having run through his Enemies Camp with great fury, returned and rode up and down to finde out his Rival the Emperoz, whom at length he found out and encountered, and many fierce strokes were given to one another, the Emperoz resolving to revenge himself on Don Bellianis, showed the utmost of his skill and courage, and gave him a blow on the Thigh, so that the blood issued out thereat through the Joints of his Armoz: he was greatly enraged hereat, and gave the Emperoz another wound on the side: thus they continued fighting together, till at length the multitudes of both Parties came to assault each other parted them, and then they ranged about the field killing and destroying many knights.

It was now the Noon day, and the fight had continued eight hours, and yet there was not much advantage on either side, till they heard the sound of Trumpets, and at some distance they might perceive fresh Forces enter the field, but to which they belonged it was yet unknown: at length they arrived in sight, and then by their Colours they were known to belong to the Emperoz, and indeed they were forty thousand men under the Conduct of the Knight of Fame, Nephew to the Emperoz, who hearing of the fight made haste thither, thinking to get Honor in the Battel, but he fared not so well as he expected, as we shall declare to you anon.

Don Bellianis seeing this, quickly drew out forty thousand of his men and went to meet him, and taking a new Lance couched the same, and ran furiously against his Enemy, who did the like, but not with the same advantage; for Don Bellianis onely lost one of his Stirrups, but his Enemy came horse and man to the ground. He soon recovered himself, and being angry at his misfortune, revenged himself by the death of six knights, whom he soon killed or overthrew: thus was these two Battels joyned, but Don Bellianis soon abated some of the vigor of his Enemies, by the puissant and mighty strokes he gave them, killing ten knights ere he brake his Lance, and then drawing his Sword he soon after sent twenty knights more to accom-

pany

pany their Companions, so that now they were not so furious to assault him as they had been: He quickly made his way through all his Squadron, and having testified to them his strength and valor, returned and went to assault the Knight of Fame, who was now engaged with his Enemies: but at the arrival of Don Bellianis they soon gave way to him, and he reached him a mighty blow on the head, so that his Helmet flew from his head, and he was likewise wounded, and Don Bellianis intending to give him a second blow, was prevented; for two furious Giants opposed themselves to him: but he who was used to deal well enough with these sort of people soon let them know his valor by the cutting off one of their legs.

In the mean time the Knight of Fame had recovered another Helmet, and came to revenge himself on Don Bellianis, so that now he was engaged both by a Giant and the Knight of Fame, but he did well enough to maintain the fight with them both. In the mean time the two Kings of Albania and Georgia had engaged themselves among their Enemies, and at last they arrived where the Emperoz was engaged, but they brought him such Aid that he caused the Souldans Forces to retire, and many of them lost their lives, so that they being without any valiant Commander did in a manner fly: this gave great encouragement to the Emperoz and the two Kings, and they pursued them some way, till they saw a Body of men afar off who came on a great pace, and the nearer they approached the more they appeared, and at length they were likewise known to be Forces of the Souldans: This caused the Emperoz and those that were with him to make a stand, much wondering at this business, and not daring to go any further. They made up towards them a great pace, and meeting with some of those who fled, informed themselves of the manner of the fight, and caused them to face about and return on their Enemies.

The Emperoz seeing this was resolved to receive them, but they still made haste, and arriving near the Emperors Forces, six knights advancing forwards and couching their Lances, ran upon the Emperoz and his Forces, and with the fierceness of the Encounter they dismounted five knights that op-

posed

posed them, and the Emperoz who was the sixth, lost both his Stirrups ; they quickly passed on and ran furiously into their Enemies Squadrons, and shewed the admirableness of their valor by the mighty blows they gave, for in less than a quarter of an hour they had slain and dismounted above a hundred knights : and in this time their Forces by their example followed them, and joining with their Enemies soon compelled them, in despite of the Emperoz and the two Kings of Albania and Georgia, to retire to the rest of the Army. When they were all arrived there they gave a loud shout, and cried out, Babylon, Babylon : This noise gave a fresh Alarm to the Armies, and Don Bellianis wondering thereat, went to see the occasion, doubting that the Enemy had got more Aid : but he was soon satisfied of the contrary, for he knew the Common Soldiers by their Colours : but he was much more astonished when he saw the incomparable Deeds of the six valiant Champions, and indeed they were all unknown to him, he coming nearer to them discovered one of them by his Armour to be Cornumeliano Prince of Phenicia, wherefore he went to him, and said : Ah worthy Friend ! great paines have you taken to come thus far to my assistance : the Phenician courteously replied to him, Noble Prince, I should not think it any trouble to travel throughout the whole world to serve you, especially in so good company as I have brought with me ; then he knowing that Don Bellianis was willing to be informed who were in his company, told him that his Companions were his two valiant Brothers, Don Glarineo and Don Lucidamore, and his Cousin Florispiano of Swevia, and the two other knights were somewhat strangers, but both valiant knights ; and so they were indeed, the one being the valiant Peter of Ireland, Knight of the Keys, and the other the Knight of the Wolf, and that they had brought from the Souldan of Babylon fifty thousand men for his assistance.

Don Bellianis being very joyful hereat soon entered the fight, and was now again resolved to conquer or die, and that this day should put an end to the War : In this resolution he went to his Companion the Prince of Numidia, and informed him hereof,

hereof, and telling him that he would with a Party of Horse break through his Enemies Forces, and get between them and the City and hinder their entrance, and that he would onely desire him to prosecute the fight, assuring him that there were such valiant knights come, that he questioned not to have the Victory.

Thus did he leave the Numidian and went to execute his purpose, and so he did, and soon brake through the Forces of the Enemy. The Prince of Numidia being thus encouraged, drew up all his Forces and freshly assailed his Enemies, and in short time by the assistance of the six Champions, and the Forces they brought, he got so great advantage of his Enemies, that he forced them to retire ; which they did not do so well but that many of them were slain. Among the rest, Peter of Ireland did gloriously ; for he slew the Knight of Fame, Cousin to the Emperoz, and many knights and squants that were near him. The two Princes Clarineo and Lucidamore took the King of Georgia Prisoner, maugre the resistance of all his Guards, and the Knight of the Tyger hardly escaped with life, being very much wounded by Cornumeliano Prince of Phenicia.

The Emperoz of Trebizond seeing that by the means of this fresh Supply he should lose the Day, resolved to retire before he should be quite vanquished, wherefore he caused a Retreat to be sounded, and so retired to enter the City, but Don Bellianis who expected him, hindered him therefrom and fiercely assaulted him : greatly surprized was the Emperoz when he saw himself assaulted on both sides, wherefore he advanced forwards to see who it was that hindered his Retreat ; but he was so bravely received by his Rival, that notwithstanding his utmost endeavors he could not get off ; but after he had received many wounds by Don Bellianis, was taken Prisoner : the rest of his Forces in the mean time seeing the field lost, left him and fled in great disorder into the City.

Great was the sorrow in the City for the loss of the Emperoz, they not yet knowing whether he were alive or dead, none of the Commanders returned back but the King of Albania : the King of Georgia being taken, and the Knight of Fame being

killed,

killed, the Knight of the Tyger was brought in wounded, and thus the Night being come the horror of the day was covered.

Don Bellianis seeing the Emperors Forces were got into the City, caused a Retreat to be sounded, and so repaired to his Tent, which was set up near the City Walls, and the prince of Numidia being come to him, they delivered the two Prisoners, the Emperor and the King of Georgia, into safe custody under a strong Guard, commanded by the Knight of Hope, and then they sent for all those valiant knights who had assisted them. They quickly came to the Tent, where they were kindly embraced by the two Generals, the Prince of Numidia being very joyful to see his friend Don Bellianis his two Brothers, who had discovered themselves: they were on all sides joyful for this happy meeting, and much more in that it had been so fortunate.

The Prince Don Clarineo delivered two Letters to his Brother, one from the Souldan, and another from his Daughter the Princess Florisbella. Don Bellianis looking on that from the Souldan, was greatly abashed when he saw the Superscription to be thus: For the most accomplished Prince and valiant Knight, *Don Bellianis of Greece*: but he was astonished when he had opened it, and found therein these Lines:

*The LETTER of the Souldan of Babylon,
to Don Bellianis of Greece.*

Noble Prince,

I Must beg excuse for the mean Treatment I gave you, the cause was my ignorance of your Quality: had I known your Princely Extraction I should have used you like the Son of so great an Emperor as is the Emperor of Greece: but your Vertues and Magnanimity did well enough declare your Descent; wherefore I once again ask your Pardon, and do promise you as a requital, my true Friendship, and so soon as by your incomparable Valor you have put some end to this War, I shall desire your presence, that we may by some Action testify the Esteem we have of your Friendship. We question not but you will receive a satisfactory Answer from

from the Princess our Daughter, who testifies not onely a Respect, but some Affection for you, and assure your self that we shall not hinder it, but give her her freedom, which we suppose will be to your satisfaction. We have gained so much favor for your sake, as to have the Assistance of your Brothers and Relations, whom we have sent here with some Supplies, and do intend to send you more, if occasion be, but we hope that this will be enough, not onely to make our Enemy to be reasonable, but also to give him some sensible trouble for that he hath given us. Thus desiring of the Gods a Protection for you, We rest

Your Friend,

The Souldan.

Great was the astonishment and joy of Don Bellianis at this Letter, now concluding himself to be the happiest of all men living. Having read this Letter, he deferred the reading of the other for a more private occasion, and so again welcomed his Friends, but especially the valiant Knight Peter of Ireland, who was a stranger to him, and in whom he saw a great magnanimity. Thus leaving off Consultations till the morning, every one departed to Tents provided for them: After they were departed, Don Bellianis breaking open the Letter from the Princess Florisbella, he found in it thus written:

*The LETTER of the Princess Florisbella,
to Don Bellianis.*

S I R,

YOur Letter gave me much satisfaction, but your presence would give me much more: and now the arrival of your Brethren and Relations with a Letter from my Cousin the Princess *Aurora*, hath given that satisfaction to my Father that I was in much trouble how to do it. He is very well acquainted with your Condition, and hath desired me to accept you for my Knight which he needed not to have desired, had he known how deeply your dear remembrance is fixed in my heart: in fine, there wants nothing

nothing now but your presence to make me happy, and I question not but this will the more stir you to the destruction of your Rival, who I account for my mortal enemy; yet although I desire his ruine, I would not have it purchased with your danger, therefore as you are mine, fail not to preserve your self, and hazard not your person beyond the ordinary. I hope the arrival of these your Relations, and the Forces they bring with them will put an end to the War, that my trouble for you may end with your presence, which I continually wish for. My Cousin *Mattarosa* fails not to keep you in my remembrance, although she needs not give her self that trouble; however 'tis a pleasure for me continually to hear of you: all that I desire is, that I may see you with all expedition, that I may have the satisfaction of your Company, in the mean time I will prepare things with my Mother that shall be to your satisfaction; I pray for the future question not my Constancy, but assure your self I shall ever be

Your constant Friend,

Florisbella.

Don Bellianis having read this Letter kissed it a thousand times, and could not satisfy himself with once reading of it, so pleasant were these charming Lines, and in this satisfaction he went to rest, where though he took little by reason of the great content he had received by the Letters, yet he was up early the next morning, and mounting on his horse he viewed the Field, which was the bloodiest spectacle that ever was beheld, it being beset with the bodies of almost two hundred thousand men, whereof one hundred and fifty thousand were of the Enemies. Afterwards he retired into his Tent, where some of the Commanders and Knights were come to wait on him to know his pleasure, so he sent for the rest of the Chief of the Officers, who entering into Consultation, did resolve to leave the Field in possession of *Baltasano*, and one hundred thousand men to prosecute the War, and he and the rest would return with their Prisoners to Babylon, to know the pleasure of the Souldan. This was generally well liked of, and accordingly

ingly executed, so that the next day they departed, as they had agreed, and marched towards Babylon.

CHAP. XXXII.

How *Magdalena* Princess of *Sardinia* being left alone in the Island of *Scicillia*, made a great Complaint for the absence of her Knight *Peter*, Knight of the Key, and how she travelled into *Ireland* to find him out, where missing him she caused a Monastery to be built, resolving there to live in disguise in expectation of his return.

WE will now for some time leave the Princess *Don Bellianis* of Greece, and his Brethren and Companions, with their Prisoners and others in their return to Babylon, who marched thitherward in great content and pleasure, they being greatly satisfied in what they had done, onely *Peter* of *Ireland* still continued extremely discontented for the loss of his dear Lady the Princess *Magdalena*, to whom we will return, who as we told you was left in the Island of *Sicillia*, being very weary of her travel, slept a great while, but at length she awaked, and fetching a deep sigh, lifted up her head, and looking about her for her Knight, she could not see him; whereupon she arose from the ground, and walking about she could not finde him, at which she much wondered; and in great perplexity she made many turnings and walks about the place where she lay, sometimes she went to the water side to look that way, and then again she returned, but altogether unsatisfied; at length the night grew on and he returned not, then was she much dismayed, and fell into these grievous Lamentations:

Oh unfortunate Princess! how much unhappiness hath thy rashness caused thee already, and to what end will this turn? but yet how could I expect any blessing in my actions, having left my Parents and Friends, who it may be at this time are in as great perplexity for my departure as I am in, and it is but the Justice of Heaven that I should bear them company.

company in their Complaints : but alas they are safe and well in their own Court, and I am here in a strange place, having newly escaped the danger of the Seas, in which it had been better I had been drowned, than now to be devoured by wilde Beasts, or to expect a worse death : It had been far better for me to have lost my life in the Seas, for then I should have had my beloved Friend to have borne me company, but now I must perish alone and most miserable. Ah Knight of the Keys, what is become of thee ? whither art thou gone ? ~~Wholly~~ this was not done by thy good will, for so much barbarousness could not enter the heart of any man, as to leave me here in such an inhumane manner. What wilt thou should I condemn thee, or complain on thee, for certainly thou dost more deserve my pity than anger : it may be thou by some mischance wandering in these Woods art devoured by wilde Beasts, who have by this time entombed thee in their hungry Paws. Oh that I were certain of that, and that I knew where that beast should remain, I would go seek him out and offer my self to be devoured by him, so that I might at least accompany thee in death.

Having thus finished her Lamentation, she with extream grief fell down to the ground ; but berhinking her self that she was a Christian, and therefore was bound to preserve her life so long as she could, she arose and sought about for a place at present to ly down more conveniently to repose her self till the morning : after some travel she found a place near the water side that was somewhat commodious for that purpose, being encompassed with great Reeds, where she laid her self down expecting the morning ; which being come, she not having taken any rest, arose ; and not knowing what to do, nor whither to go, being in a great Wood, at length with much difficulty climbed up a Tree, and being come to the top looked about her, to see if she could discover any Houses or People : At length she saw some People afar off walking, being glad of that, descended the Tree and went forwards to that place, which was a Common Road ; and seeing people coming she retired into the Wood a little way, to consider with her self what was ne-

cessary.

cessary to be done. Then she resolved not to go home to her Father, but rather to travel towards Ireland the Countrey of her dearly beloved Knight, believing that if he escaped with life he would go thither, and thither she intended to go and expect him : but the habit she was in being very gorgeous and costly, she knew that it would be very inconvenient to travel in, and therefore she resolved with the first convenience to alter her Apparel : she quickly had the opportunity of putting this her resolution into execution ; for the next woman that went by was a Pilgrim, to whom she went, and desiring her to come a little out of the way they retired into the Wood, where the Princess told her that she had a request to make to her, which she desired her to grant, and that it could not be in the least to her prejudice.

The good woman seeing her in so rich Apparel, thought that it would be ill manners in her to deny her any thing, and therefore she consented to her Request : Then the Princess told her that she desired her to exchange her Apparel with her. The woman at first was unwilling, but at length she consented, and so changing their Habits, the Princess likewise gave her some money, and so they parted.

The Princess being thus accoutred, desired to know the way to the next Port Town, to which she travelled, and being come thither, she desired to imbarque her self : and enquiring for shipping she found one going for England, into which she imbarqued her self, resolving never to return to her Father, but still to travel in search of her Knight.

The Ship in short time arrived at England, and there she was exposed to a new travel through that Countrey, and then taking shipping again she went for Ireland, where when she arrived she travelled towards Wexford, the place of her dear Knights Nativity : At length she arrived there, and enquiring for the Earl his Father, found him and all his Family in much discontent for the absence of his Son.

Thus being arrived here, and resolving to abide in this place, she caused Workmen to build a small Monastery with the money she brought from her Fathers Court, and when it was

built.

builded the Dedicated it to the Honor of Saint Peter the Holy Apostle, in memory of her dear Knight.

In this place she enclosed her self, resolving to live a religious Life all her days in expectation of the return of her dearly beloved Knight. Here she got an acquaintance with the Earl and Countess, Father and Mother to the Knight of the Keys, who seeing her of so Religious a Life and Conversation, acquainted themselves with her, delighting much in her Society, and likewise did very much countenance her in her Undertakings, and oftentimes invited her home to their Habitation: to which place she sometimes went, otherwise she never departed from her Monastery, still entertaining poor sick Travellers therein. Thus did she shut up her self from all the world, while he was much afflicted for her absence, and was in continual care and trouble for her Loss.

C H A P. XXIII.

How the Earl of Munster and his Wife the Countess did believe their Son Peter to be drowned, and how they informed the Holy Magdalena thereof, and of the great Sorrow they all made.

Thus continued these Personages, the Earl and his Wife, and the Holy Magdalena, in continual care and fear, but they were all continually in hopes one day to hear of the safe Return of their Son and Friend: but they were much perplexed at an Adventure that hapned one day, which was in this manner.

Certain Fisher-men having been abroad at Sea a fishing, amongst other Fishes which they caught one hapned to be a very fair Sturgeon, at which they wondered, and at their return to Wexford they went to the Earl, and presented the Fish as a great Nobility to him: the which he thankfully received, and shewing the same to his Countess, she caused it immediately to be cut in pieces: But oh strange Accident! in the Belly of this Fish she discovered somewhat that was red, which having taken

ken out, they found it to be a red Purse of Cloth, and having opened the same there was in it three Jewels, which she earnestly beholding, knew to be the same she had delivered to her Son Peter at such time as he departed from her, when he first began his Travels.

This sight gave her great astonishment, and she going immediately to the Earl her Husband shewed them to him, and he knowing them was as much troubled, and then they certainly concluded and saw that all their hopes of the Return of their Son Peter was in vain; for they verily believed that he had been cast away at Sea, and the Fishes had devoured him: and in this opinion they remained, making great Lamentations for the loss of him, never more expecting to see him. Then they immediately put themselves and all their Family into Mourning Apparel, and hung all their House in Mourning, and ordered every thing as if he had been certainly dead, and they had seen him buried, so confident were they of the truth of this adventure. And thus continued they in great and private mourning for many days, being seen of none but their own Family. So soon as the Countess went abroad, she went to the Monastery to visit the Holy Magdalena, where when she was arrived she expressed by her outward looks and habit, the inward sorrow of her mind.

The Holy Maid being desirous to know the occasion of this, believing it to be some extraordinary matter, desired the Countess to inform her of the cause of her immoderate sorrow, the which she did with many tears, and the Holy Maid accompanied her in her tears, verily believing this to be true, and that now she should never more see her dear Knight Peter. The Countess supposing that she shed those tears out of affection to her loss, thinking to be consoled by her, was forced her self to give her some consolation, so great was her grief, but she little thought that the Holy Maid was so deeply concerned in this occasion.

After many lamentations and tears, the Countess desired the Holy Maid that she would come and visit her oftener, that they might lament together, and so she departed, leaving the

fair Magdalena in the greatest grief in the world. The Countess being gone, she retired her self into her Chamber, where throwing her self upon her Bed, she thus began: Ah unfortunate Maid, how far better had it been that thou hadst never been born, than thou shouldst be the occasion of so much grief: I was the cause that the good Knight Peter adventured himself in such manner, that he has now lost his life; and therefore it is my cause that so much grief is come to his Parents for his loss. Certainly he losing of me, hath travelled so many Countreys in searching for me, that he is now cast away at Sea and become food for Fishes. It had been much better that I had never been fair, or at least that I had never consented to have left my Parents, so to torment and afflict them; but Heaven is just and hath now deservedly sent this loss to punish me for my disobedience: Ah what shall now become of me? I shall never again see the face of my dear Knight, nor never give any comfort to my dear Parents in my sight, for (since I have been so unfortunate) here will I end my life, and for the future do better service to God for the expiation of my sins.

Thus did she lament, and thus continued she in this place in the greatest devotion in the world, never stirring out but to the Church, where she went sometimes, to accompany them in their Lamentations for the loss of their Son and her Friend, resolving that so long as she lived she would not discover her Quality and Condition to any one: and in this place we must for some time leave her, and return to her dearly beloved Peter, and the rest of the Princes and Knights who were in their way to Babylon: but we will first by the way tell you the News that came to Babylon to the Souldan and the fair Princess Florisbella.

C H A P. XXIV.

How News came to the Souldan at Babylon of the Victory obtained against the Emperor of Trebizond, and how the Souldan and many of his Court went out to meet Don Bellianis and his Companions.

The Souldan of Babylon was very joyful for the Arrival of the two Princes Claineo and Lucidamore, Mothers to Don Bellianis and the rest of the Knights their Companions, and he and all his Court had much hope that they and the Forces which they conducted to Don Bellianis, would be able to reduce the Emperor of Trebizond to better terms than had been already propounded. The Princesses Florisbella and Matarosa were greatly satisfied at the Arrival of the Knights, and did both believe that in short time they would have the company of their Knights; and therefore the Princess Florisbella endeavored to put her Affairs into such order, that Don Bellianis at his return might give her and himself the satisfaction she desired, wherefore she taking an opportunity when only her self, and Mother, and her Cousin the Princess Matarosa were together, she began to her Mother thus:

Madam, good fortune have we had, that the Gods have at so necessary a time as this, sent us so valiant Knights to defend our Empire when it was most in danger: but wisthal I am very sorry and discontented that my person should give so great an occasion, as to endanger the lives of such valiant Knights, and I would to the Gods that we could invent some way to prevent this trouble for the future.

The Empress replied, I question not Daughter, but what Forces are already gone (with the assistance of the Gods, a just Cause, and the Aid of so many brave Princes and Knights) will be able without any more trouble to bring home Aid, or at least to force the Emperor of Trebizond to such a Peace as shall be as disadvantageous to him, as he intended to us: but there is something else further to be considered of, for so long

long as you remain unmarried, you being the onely Heir of this Empire, we shall be in the like danger, either the love or ambition of some Persons will readily prompt them to give us a trouble; therefore dear Daughter, since your years of childhood are past, and you are capable of making a Choice, it would be necessary and convenient for you, amongst so many Princes and great Personages that sue for your favor, that you would choose one whom you think fit to make your Husband, that thereby all the rest may be satisfied, and we left quiet, and that your Father and I in our old age may live without this trouble.

Madam, replied the Prince, if either you or my Father would propound some one that were fitting for my Quality and Condition, I should be ready to bend my inclinations towards him, and willingly content you therein.

Madam, said the Princess Mattarosa, I suppose the Prince my Cousin would willingly satisfy your self and her Father in this particular: but if you please to hear my advice, I shall endeavor to please you both. I believe it the most necessary thing to be considered of in this Choice, to have one that shall be both valiant and able to defend this Countrey from all its Enemies: these Wars have testified that you have Enemies, and therefore it is necessary as well to prevent a future danger as to end this: there are several brave Princes and Knights engaged in this war, and out of the same one might be thought of, that might be a fit Match, and if I may with freedom speak I shall name the Person.

The Emperess who had heard her Cousin, liked well of her counsel, and therefore told her that she should willingly not only hear her, but also give her consent thereto, provided it were such a person as was every way both by Descent and Valor, deserving, and if her Daughters good will and inclination were added thereto.

The Princess Mattarosa (very well knowing that she should give no dislike to her Cousin in preceding) replied, That the person whom she thought most fit for a Husband for her Cousin was the most accomplished Person for Valor, Vertue, and

Princely

Princely Descent in the whole world, and the person that that Empire and they all were most obliged to: and, saith she, I shall not need to name him further, for this Character does sufficiently testify that it can be none other but the Prince Don Bellianis of Greece.

The Emperess replied, That truly she always had a very great esteem for that Prince, and she supposed that gratitude had caused some inclination in her Daughters mind; and says she, I am sure that he has deserved more of him than all men living: and could I finde that she would be willing to accept of him, I would not onely give my own consent to the Match, but I would endeavor to persuade the Souldan my Husband thereto, and I question not but the many Services which that good Prince hath done him, will engage him to give him that satisfaction, if he desires it.

As for that Madam, said Mattarosa, I am sure that the valiant Prince Don Bellianis is extremely amorous of my Cousin Florisbella, and that it hath been the sole cause of his coming hither, which hath been so much for the advantage of us all, he himself told me this, and I think my self not onely obliged to tell you, but to do what else for him I can.

The Princess Florisbella seeing things brought to this pass, thus answered them, Dear Mother, since it is your pleasure for me to speak in this occasion, I shall do it with all freedom, and therefore assure your self that ever since I first saw the Prince Don Bellianis, I have had a very great inclination for him, but I have smothered it till now I hear he is a Person not only fit by his worth and desert, but your esteem of him to be so, and therefore if you and my Father should be so contented, I shall think my self happy in having a person so every way accomplished for my Husband, and I question not but his worth will sufficiently plead for him to my Father.

The Emperess being highly satisfied in the Answer of her Daughter, said that she would immediately take such Orders with the Souldan, as she would not onely know his mind herein, but also if occasion be, persuade him thereto to the satisfaction of all, and so she departed from her Cousin and Daughter, leaving

leaving them in the greatest satisfaction in the world.

The Emperess went to the Souldan her Husband, and discoursed of this matter to him, who was so pleased therewith, that there was nothing wanting but the presence of Don Bellianis to put a conclusion to the matter, and therefore they all wished for an end of the war. In these days they were when a Knight armed at all points came into the presence of the Souldan, and doing his ordinary Reverence, told him that he came from the valiant Prince Don Bellianis, and his Companions, and had brought a Letter to him, and thereupon the Souldan caused it to be opened, wherein he found these words written.

The LETTER of Don Bellianis to the Souldan of Babylon.

Dread Lord,

Since my last to you, our Success in your Wars hath been very various, for the Emperor of Trebizond continuing in his wilfulness, endeavored all he could to lengthen the War, which he effected by the continual arrival of fresh Forces: but however the Justice of your Cause gave us sufficient Success; for although your Forces did rather diminish than encrease, yet we still joyned the better: At length we being wearied with the tediousness of the War, resolved though to our disadvantage, to hazard all in one Battel which we both began and continued with equal success till new Forces arriving at his Army somewhat discouraged your Soldiers; but however I resolved to put an end to the War with that one days Battel, if possible, and therefore giving your Forces fresh encouragement, by my endeavours we continued the Fight; but most fortunate was it for us that those Forces you sent under the Conduct of my Brothers and Friends, came at that time so opportunely, for it so discouraged our Enemies, and gave so much encouragement to your Soldiers, that all resolved to make this use thereof, either to conquer or die. This their Resolution they well enough performed, for after a long and bloody Battel, our Enemies

were forced out of the Field (which they had before kept) into the City, to their great loss: not onely the Common Soldiers and many brave Knights suffered and lost their lives, but the Chief Commanders also. The Emperor it was my fortune to take Prisoner; and the King of Georgia who had assisted him with fifty thousand men, was taken by my two Brethren, and the rest put to flight, so that we may conclude the War to be at an end. I have left the City with a hundred thousand men besieged by Don Baltasano, and with the rest am coming towards Babylon, to know your further Commands, which what ever they be, shall be surely executed, for since your incomparable Daughter hath had so much goodness, as to admit me to the honor of being her Servant, I find my self capable for any attempt.

I shall bring with me the Emperor, whose presumption gave her a discontent, who shall either ask her pardon for his so bold attempt, or be otherwise disposed of as you shall think fit. I thought good to send you this Messenger, that you might participate in the Contentment we all receive by this Victory, which you may account absolute, or else if you please to command it shall be quickly perfected, either to the gaining of the Empire of Trebizond, or what other Kingdoms you shall please, or else to the loss of the life of

Your humblest Servant,

Don Bellianis.

If this News was pleasing to the Souldan you may easily judge, and he soon expressed it by his Commands that a general Ringing should be made throughout his whole Empire: And he then immediately assembled his Council together, to advise what was necessary to be done; wherein it was concluded that he himself and all the Grandees of his Court, and all the Forces that were then in the City prepared for the War, should the next day march in triumph to meet the valiant Don Bellianis and his worthy Companions.

The Princess Florisbella was soon informed of this Victory, not onely by that Letter of her Fathers, but by one of her
own

own sent by Don Bellianis to her, which when she had received it, she opened and read as followeth.

The LETTER of Don Bellianis to the Princess Florisbella.

Dear Princess,

THe tediousness of the War hath given me a very sensible trouble, not for any thing of difficulty I found therein, but for my absence from your Divine Presence : but now (thanks to the Gods) we have put a Period thereto, the Justice of your Cause commanding no less ; for we have not onely sacrificed the lives of many of our Enemies to your just Anger, but I have in my custody the persons of two of the most considerable, the Emperor your Grand Enemy, and the King of *Georgia* one of his Alliance. I beg an Excuse for my not giving you a particular account of our Battell and Victory, doubting the tediousness thereof would displease you. I shall bring the Emperor my Rival into your presence, but I suppose he will not be so impudent as to persevere in his wilfulness of having your Divine Person at his dispose, nor at the least discontent you ; if I thought he would, I should hinder him there from by bereaving him of his life: It was my intention to have sacrificed his life long since to your just displeasure, and thereby have rid myself of a Rival; but he fell into my hands at such a time that I could not in point of Honor kill him, wherefore he shall come and receive his Doom from your own mouth, and I am indifferent whether you give him life or death, so you will pronounce so favourable a Sentence for me, that I may enjoy that with your good will which he would have compelled you to. Madam, I hope, and partly expect your performance of this, not for any merit or desert of my own, but out of the excess of goodness and mercy the Gods have so plentifully endued you withal. Madam I shall now cease writing till I come to your presence, but be confident of this that I shall never cease to be

The humblest of your Servants,
Don Bellianis.
The

The Princess was sufficiently satisfied in the receipt of this Letter, but she hoped for a further satisfaction in that of his presence, which she expected in a few days, and was glad she had used the late discourse with her Mother. Thus was both Court and City in great content, and the Souldan the next day went out of the City, accompanied by his Nobility and many others, to meet the Prince Don Bellianis and his Companions.

CHAP. XXV.

How the Souldan of Babylon met the Prince Don Bellianis and his Companions, and how they all arrived at the City of Babylon.

With great content and pleasure did the Souldan and all his Company ride to meet Don Bellianis and all his Companions, who were all merry and jocund for the good fortune they had in vanquishing their Enemies ; but he who was best pleased was Don Bellianis himself, in that now he was so near the presence of his Honorable Lady, at whose hands he hoped to receive so much favor, as would sufficiently satisfy him for all his pains and travel. Thus did they all ride on, when coming within half a days Journey of Babylon, a Messenger came to them to inform them that the Souldan himself in person, and several of his Grandees and Nobility, were in the way coming to meet them : At which it was they all put themselves in order to receive him, and so in very good order they marched forwards : Don Bellianis being mounted on a stately Horse came in the front, riding between his two Princely Brothers Don Clarineo, and Don Lucidamore, next to them came the four valiant Knights, Contumeliano of Phenicia, Florispiano of Swevia, Peter of Ireland, and Trion Knight of the Wolf, and all the rest of the other Knights and great Personages in good order. In this equipage and order did they march when the Souldan and his Followers met them. At the sight of whom Don Bellianis lightly leaping from his Horse marched on foot to the Souldan, who seeing him dismounted did likewise

wise alight, and Don Bellianis falling on his knee, humbly desired the Souldan to permit him to kiss his hands: but the Souldan refusing that, caused him to arise, and then the other knights being come together, the Souldan having embraced Don Bellianis with much affection in the sight of all those many worthy Personages, then in the hearing of them all he said as followeth:

Most Mighty Prince, We have great Cause to be thankful to the Gods for the Mercy they have shewed us, in sending you into this Countrey at a time when we were in so great distress; for without your presence we had all e're this time bin in so great a strait, that our fortunes, nay our very lives had been in very great hazard: there is none of us here but if he enjoys Wife, Children, or Estate, or Liberty, is obliged to you for the protection thereof, so that this whole Empire is of right belonging to you, it having been so marvellously protected, and miraculously defended by your invincible Valor. Therefore most noble Prince, as all We have or enjoy is absolutely your Right to possess, so let us know what, or how We shall make you some satisfaction: As for our own part, Our Self, Our Empress, and Our Daughter, shall be wholly at your dispose, and we shall all joyfully obey your just Desires or Commands, knowing that the Gods who have endowed you with so much Valor, have certainly bestowed on you the like quantity of Vertue; and therefore most Noble Prince, I beseech you let us know your desires, and they shall be absolutely performed and obeyed.

Don Bellianis held his peace with very much difficulty, being very unwilling to hear the Souldan go on in such Commendations of him, but withal he was unwilling to disturb him till he had done: but so soon as he saw he had ended his Discourse, he thus replied:

Most redoubted Souldan, I am very sorry that I should give your Highness so much trouble, as to come thus far to meet your poor Servants, but much more discontented and ashamed that you should here before this Noble Company heap so many commendations

dations on me who have acted the least of all this Company: but if I had done any thing worthy of note, it is no more than I am bound by the Order of Knighthood, and the Bonds of Civility and true Vertue to do; for what I have done hath been to relieve the oppressed, and nothing but Justice; with which Actions the Heavens are pleased we shou'd exercise ourselves, and for that end are we created, one bare acknowledgment is a sufficient recompense: but what I have performed has been by vertue of the Commands of that Incomparable Princess your Daughter, who hath made me so happy as to admit me to be her Servant, and in whose just quarrel I shall dare to do any thing that she shall further command me, not questioning but her goodness will give me a reward sufficient: and if you please to let me continue her Servant, and give me freedom in that, I shall esteem my self in the greatest height of happiness.

To this the Souldan replied, Prince of Greece, I am so far satisfied in my Daughters minde, that she has not onely a great esteem of your Vertues, but also an affection for your Person, and if you are pleased with her, and think the enjoyment of her Person will be any recompence for your great Labors, be confident that you may have a free possession thereof, and we shall think our selves happy that we can have so brave a Prince for our Son in Law, by whose power and magnanimity we question not but we shall be able to defend this Empire.

Don Bellianis having heard this, immediately fell on his knees, and notwithstanding all the resistance of the Souldan, kissed his hand, and gratefully embracing him, in most humble manner.

Ah Mighty Sir! What Thanks or Returns am I able to make for this so immense and most desirable Favour? were I possessed of the whole Worlds Empire, I should yet esteem my self too mean a person to enjoy so great a happiness as that of the Person of your most Incomparable Daughter, whose rare Perfections command all the Potentates in the whole World to be at her dispose: And

Sir, assure your self, that for the future it shall be my endeavors to conquer Kingdoms, and vanquish Kings, that I may lay their Crowns at her feet, as a just Tribute to her Vertues.

Having thus spoken, he arose from the ground, and retiring back a few steps, he permitted his Brothers and Companions to go forwards and be received by the Souldan, and then he himself went forwards and kindly saluted the Nobility of Babylon. Thus having done they all remounted their Horses, and in good order marched towards Babylon, but it grew so late that the Souldan resolved not to enter the City that night but to stay at a Pallace of his a league from the City: at which place they being arrived, took up their Quarters for that night and prepared for their entrance into the City the next morning; which being come, they all again mounted their horses and set forwards. This day the Prince Don Bellianis and the Souldan rode on together, and then his two Brethren, and so the rest of the Princes and Knights in order: When they came near the City, the Magistrates thereof came and presented themselves in their richest Habilliment, and made a Congratulatory Oration to Don Bellianis: and so all the way that they rode he had several Orazions and Presents made him; for which he gave them many thanks.

The two Prisoners, the Emperoz of Trebizond and the King of Georgia, came in the midst of the Army, being placed in two Chariots with Chains and Fetters of Gold, and a great Guard about them, and thus did arrive at the Pallace, where they were met by the Emperess and her Ladies. The Princes and Knights soon left their horses, and on foot advanced forwards, where Don Bellianis falling on his knees was kindly and lovingly embraced by the Emperess; but when he came before the presence of his Princess he knelt on the ground, not daring to cast one glance of his eyes upon her divine countenance. She was this day dressed in a Gown of Sky-coloured Sattin embroidered with Gold, and richly beset with Diamonds and Rubies, representing Stars in the Heavens, but her face appeared to be more glorious than the Sun when he is in his greatest lustre: her Bosom fitly represented the Milky

whip, and in all her parts there was so much excellency and divinity, that it dazzled the eyes of the Beholders. Our poor Prince was all this while on the ground, not daring either to look up or speak: but having her by one of her hands more white than the driven Snow, he most amozously kissed that, and fetching many sighs, barked it in tears. She well knowing that he was surprized, said to him, What, most Noble Prince, after having conquered many enemies, have you not confidence to behold a Lady your Friend? He then recovering himself, and looking on her face, said: Dear Princess, so much transcendent light proceeds from your divine Countenance, that I am not holy enough to look up, lest for my presumption I be stricken blinde. But considering with himself that he was observed by many in that passion, he again saluting her hand arose, and making an obeisance passed on towards the Princess's Mattress, who kindly received him: and so the rest of the Knights having performed their duties to the Ladies, he went to his Princess, and seeing the Souldan was leading the Emperess away, he likewise took the Princess by the hand and went after them: after he was come into the great Hall they disarmed themselves, and a costly banquet being prepared they all sat down; which being done, the Souldan did then declare to his Emperess and Daughter what he had promised to Don Bellianis, wherewith they were so well satisfied, that he intended forthwith to have them married; and therefore not onely caused all those Princes that were there present to continue in the Court till the Ceremony should be performed, but he likewise sent into all the adjacent Countreys to summon all the Knights to come at that time, which he intended to be within fourteen days.

CHAP. XXXVI.

How the most Renowned Prince *Don Bellianis of Greece*, Son to the Emperor of *Constantinople*, was married to the Princess *Floribella*, Daughter to the Souldan of *Babylon*; and of the Solemnity of the Wedding, and the Tilts and Tournaments then holden in honor of the same.

Great was the Preparations that were made for the Solemnity of the Wedding between the Prince of Greece and the fair Princess of Babylon, and many were the great Personages that came to Babylon to assist or attend at that Solemnity. The King and Queen of *Antioch*, *Don Brianel* and *Aurora*, with a Troop of five hundred gallant Knights came thither (as they believed they were by duty bound) to wait upon their Relations: and the King and Queen of *Pharez*, *Don Alhiron* and *Perfiana*, with another Troop of five hundred Knights likewise, came at this time to tender their love and service to the most accomplished *Don Bellianis*, and great was the resort of several other Princes and Knights, Princesses and Ladies from all parts, to see and assist at this great Ceremony, so that not onely the City, but all the adjacent Towns were filled with rich Tents, and Companies of Ladies and Knights.

Don Bellianis and his Princess *Floribella* spent much of their time in welcoming and treating these persons that came so far to honor them: and the Souldan and his Emperess were extremely joyful that they had been so fortunate as to match their Daughter to so brave a Prince, and one so well beloved, not questioning but now their Empire would be more flourishing than ever, and they should be out of all fear of the power of any of their Neighbouring Enemies.

At length the day so much expected and desired came, when all things being in readiness, those great Personages set forwards to the Temple: The fair Princess *Floribella* was led thither by the two Princes *Don Clarineo of Spain*, and *Don Lucidamore*

Lucidamore of Thessaly, both Brothers to *Don Bellianis*; and he was led thither by the Princess *Marrarosa of Numidia*, and the fair Princess *Cynthia* Sister to the Prince of *Mesopotamia*, the rest of the Princesses and Princes, Ladies and Knights, in great state and very good order attending: Being come to the Temple, and the usual Solemnities performed, they returned back again to the Palace, where a most rich and gallant Dinner was provided. The Tables being furnished with all manner of Delicacies which the Luxury of Asia could produce. After Dinner was ended, every one made haste to the place appointed for the Tournament, the Princesses and Ladies seating themselves on a Scaffold erected on one side of the Tiltpard for that purpose, in the midst of which Scaffold was placed two Thrones, on the one was seated the Souldan of *Babylon* and his Emperess, and on the other the Prince *Don Bellianis* and the incomparable *Floribella* his Wife, and the rest of the Kings and Queens, Princes and Princesses, Knights and Ladies in several places appointed for that purpose. No sooner were they all seated, but silence was commanded, and after the sound of twelve Trumpets, Proclamation was made that all such Knights as were there present, or should during the term of the Tournament arrive, should have free liberty of shewing their utmost endeavors in the Arts of Chivalry both at the Sword and Lance, provided they did conform themselves to such Orders as were appointed, or should be appointed either by the Souldan or *Don Bellianis*. And it was further proclaimed, that the Tournament should continue for four days.

The first day *Contumeliano* Prince of *Phenicia* had leave with fifty Knights to maintain and keep the Field in Honor of the new married Pair, against all Opponents. The second day was appointed for *Peter of Ireland*, with the same number of Knights. The third day for *Don Lucidamore of Thessaly*. And the fourth and last for *Don Clarineo of Spain*.

Soon after this Proclamation was made, the Prince *Contumeliano* entered the Field accompanied with fifty Knights, and after he had done his usual Reverence to the Souldan, and the

the rest, he took a Lance from one of his Attendance and passed forwards: But he was no sooner arrived at the further end of the Field, but he heard a noise of Trumpets, and after small attendance he saw a Knight compleatly armed in a white Armour, with a Bear painted on his Shield, who being accompanied with a brave Train of Knights entered the Lists, and having passed on to the place where the Souldan and Don Bellianis sat, and made his Reberence, he advanced forwards to the other end, and there prepared himself for a Course against Don Contumeliano; which Contumeliano seeing prepared himself to receive him, and so accordingly they ran against one another with such force, that their Lances flew into the Air all broken into shivers without any other disadvantage, but that of the Knight of the Bear losing his Stirrups, which he soon recovered, and by such time as he came to the end of his Course, he had selected himself on his Horse in as good a manner as he was at the first.

This equality in our Champions raised a new vigor in them, and taking fresh Lances they again engaged which should have the better: and not onely they themselves ran the second time, but also twenty of each of their Knights; but this Course was much to the disadvantage of the Knight of the Bear and his Companions; for he was thrown out of his Saddle, and with him twelve of his Company, and onely six of the Prince Contumeliano's Knights were foiled, and himself was forced to lay hold on his Horse neck.

This Course raised an anger in both the Champions, which made them and their Companions quickly remount their horses, and then it was agreed on, that at the third Course they and their whole Squadrons, which was easily divided into fifty in a Squadron, should again run with their Lances, and after that try their fortunes with their Swords. Which Agreement was quickly put in execution, and they accordingly ran against one another with indifferent equality of fortune; for there was about twenty of a party thrown to the ground, but they quickly possessed themselves of their horses, and remounting drew their Swords, and began a brave Skirmish, to the

the great delight of the Beholders, many of them being beaten from their horses by the mighty and puissant strokes which they gave and received each unto other. But there was this Provision made before the Jousts, that none should enter the Fields whose Swords were sharp, but onely whose Swords were dul'd on the edge, to the end that none should be killed, and that the Recreation of some might not be the destruction of others; however many of the Knights on both sides were with the violence of the strokes beaten from their horses, and much bruised with the falls, and the trampling of the horses killed some outright.

Thus this Skirmishing continued the space of four hours, but in the end the Honor of the Day was won by the Prince of Phenicia, the Knight of the Bear by a fall which he had received, being disabled from sitting his horse, and being carried out of the Field by several of his Knights was conveyed to his Lodgings: And then Proclamation was made, That that days Tournament should end, and so they all departed the Field and went to the Palace, where they were no sooner arrived and seated in their places, but at the sound of Musick many of them began to dance.

In this and such like variety of Recreation they continued for some hours, till it was time for every one to take their rest, and then our pair of Incomparable Lovers retired into their Lodgings, went to Bed and received the Enjoyment which they had so long wished for, and was now accomplished, to the great Joy not onely of the two Lovers, but of all their Friends and Relations: In which Content we will leave them till morning, which being come they all arose, and the fair Princess Florisbella by the crimson Dy which appeared in her lovely Cheeks, did well enough express that she had exchanged her Spaiden-head for that of a Wife: and the Prince of Greece by his outward gestures did sufficiently testify the satisfaction of his spirit in the enjoyment of his Incomparable Lady.

Now being come and Dinner ended, they did all repair again to the plate appointed for the Tournament, where the Galliant Peter of Ireland with fifty Knights did bear away the Honor of that Day.

Thus

Thus were three of the four days spent in Jousting, Tilting, Tournaments, Skirmishing, and darting, and all other manner of delightful Exercises: And the fourth day was now come and Dinner being ended, and every one seated in their several places, the Valiant Prince Don Clarineo of Spain (who as you have heard was to maintain the Field for that day) was entered the Lists at the head of fifty valiant Knights, when after the accustomed Civilities done to the Souldan and Ladies, he placed himself ready for the Joust, when presently entered a knight in black Armour, having the Figure of Envy painted on his Shield. This knight coming in a time of Birth in such an unarmour'd manner, caused great Admiration in all the Beholders: but the Actions which he did gave them greater cause of anger, for no sooner had he placed himself at one end of the Lists in the head of all his Knights, but he ran with great violence against the Prince Clarineo, intending to kill him with his Lance, for which purpose his Lance had a long Spike of Steel at the end, and was made of the strongest wood; but he missed of his aim, for he onely ran the Prince through the left arm, and there brake his Lance. All his Companions did run with the like violence, and intended the like mischief, but some of them were thrown from their horses: but they being thus armed, did much mischief to several of the Princes Knights, killing sixteen out right.

Don Bellianis and his Relations were extremely angered herewith, who were all unarmed, or at the best had onely blunt Swords according to the Agreement of the Tournament, but extremely great was the Cry, Noise, and Confusion of the Princesses and Ladies, fearing lest they should have been all destroyed in this unfortunate Skirmish. This raised the anger of our Grecian Prince to such a height, that he was ready even to run amongst the things, unarmed as he was, when suddenly he saw another Troop of above one hundred and fifty Knights enter the Field, who soon testified to whom they did belong by the strokes which they gave, for at every stroke blood followed their Swords, so that he soon knew them to be his Enemies: which he seeing, and being now so far come to himself as to consider the

the danger, he caused all the Ladies to depart, and he himself with all his Friends, ran hastily to their several Chambers to arm themselves; which they did in the best manner they could, and returning to the Field they found that above five hundred of his Friends and Knights were either slain or wounded. He soon made head against his Enemies, and assaulted them with a great deal of rage and anger, to the great help of his friends, and to the loss and discouragement of his Enemies. Many were on both sides slain by the hands of Don Bellianis and his Enemy, the Knight of Envy, who now met together and began a furious Fight, to the great amazement of all the Beholders. They were both greatly wounded and astonished at each others strength, when in the midst of their fury there appeared over their heads a great Cloud: which breaking there was seen & heard great Thunder and Lightning, which amazed all in the place, and a great Darkeness was over all the place for the space of a quarter of an hour: at the end of which there appeared a small Castle in the place of the Combat, and by it lay Don Bellianis along on the earth, and many of his Friends: There also appeared an ancient woman who taking a Bottle, put it to the mouth of Don Bellianis, and some of the Water that was in it passing into his Body he revived and arose, and looking about him saw that which was hapned, and saw the old Woman, and knew her to be Bellona the Enchantress, who desired him to go about the Field, and pull off the Helms from the heads of those Knights that lay there, that they might assist his Friends; which he did accordingly, and there they found his two Brothers Clarineo and Lucidamore, Contumeliano, and Peter of Ireland, with many others much wounded: to whom she gave some of her Water, and they presently arose in very good estate and condition, much wondering at that which had hapned. Don Bellianis seeing this, supposed that all that had happened this day had been done by Enchantment, and therefore he asked Bellona who and what this Enchantment were: and whether they were real men, or onely

To which she replied, That in general they were men, and
valiant

valiant Knights, as he and his Companions could well enough testify, that they were his Enemies, and came to disturb the peace he was in: and that they might not for the future be in a capacity to injure him further, he had provided that Castle which he showed him, and therein to be laid it was necessary they should be put: in order to which they all went about the field, and as many of the Knights their Enemies which were about fifty, as they could find yet alive, were presently put into that Castle.

This being done, Don Bellianis and his Brethren, Friends, and Knights, in the Company of the Sage Bellona, set forwards towards the Palace: being met by the Souldan, the Emperors, and Princesses. Being all seated, the Sage Bellona spake to them thus:

Most Noble Souldan and Emperors, and you other Kings, Queens, Princes and Princesses, Knights and Ladies, It is many years since I foreknew the misfortune that would this day happen unto you, and many days and nights have I spent in considering of a way to prevent this mischief, but I could not find a better expedient than what I have now executed. You are all now in good health, and the ill that was intended is now prevented, so that you may assure your selves that you are out of all danger of any present harm. What they are that thus disturbed you, you need not care to know at this time, for they are safe enough from doing you any further mischief; wherefore proceed now in your Mirth, since nothing whatsoever shall be able to disturb you.

She having spoken thus held her peace, and the Souldan and the rest gave great thanks to Bellona for the Service she had done them. Thus Reader we will make an end of this Part of this History, leaving our Princes in great quiet, and in the Third Part we shall tell you who were the Knight of Envy and his Companions, and the cause of their coming at this time; As also an end of the Wars between the two Empires of Trebizond and Babylon, and what became of the two Princes Perianco and Gramalis of Thrace in the Pleasant Island, and many other pleasant and delightful Adventures.

BRITISH
MUSEUM
FINIS.

THE HONOUR OF CHIVALRY:

OR, The Famous and Delectable HISTORY

OF DON BELLIANIS of GREECE. CONTINUING

As well the valiant Exploits of that Magnanimous and Heroick Prince, Son to the Emperor *Don Bellianco of Greece*, as of his two valiant Brothers, *Don Clarinco of Spain*, and *Don Lucidamore of Thessaly*, and several of their Princely Champions, more particularly, that valiant Prince, *Peter of Ireland*, Knight of the Keys.

Wherein is concluded the War between the Souldan of *Babylon*, and the Emperor of *Trebizond*; and several Marriages made between those Great and Royal Personages.

The Third Part.

Now newly written by *Fra. Kirkman*.

London: Printed by *Ed. Okes*, for *Fran. Kirkman*; and are to be sold at his Shop, next door to the Sign of the Princes Arms, in *St. Paul's Church-yard*, M. DC. LXXII.



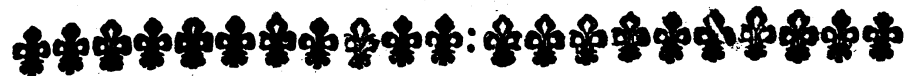
To the Reader.

THe encouragement I received by writing the Second Part of this History, hath induced me to prosecute it with a Third Part; wherein, I will assure you, I have out-done the Second, both in language, and contrivance of the Story. And I have taken more then ordinary pains in describing the ancient Kingdom of *Ireland*, and many principal Cities and Towns long since ruined. If what I have written be but pleasing to you, I may in short time pleasure you further, by writing another History of this nature; whereby you may still be pleased by



Your Friend,

Fra. Kirkman.



THE THIRD PART OF Don Bellianis of Greece:

OR,
The Honour of Chivalry.

Continuing the Valiant Exploits of that
Heroick Prince, Son unto the Em-
peror *Don Bellaneo of Greece.*

C H A P. I.

Who the Knight of *Envy* and his Companions were, and the cause of their coming. A continuation of the Triumphs for two days longer; at the end whereof is an Inchantment upon the Knight of *Envy*, and a Prophecie who is to end the Adventure: several Knights make trial, but to their damage. The Emperor of *Trebi-zond* not agreeing to several Propositions that were made him, the War is resolved upon: a Messenger being sent to *Baltazano*, he brings an answer, wherein he desires help; for that *Floreza*, Sister to the Emperor, had relieved the City of *Pharez*; whereupon 100000. men are sent away by the Souldan, under the command of the Knight of *Hope* and his Companions.

In the last Chapter of the second Part of this honourable History, an Adventure happened that was a great trouble to the Solemnities and Triumphs intended to be continued at the magnificent Wedding of the thrice Renowned and Valiant

Knight Don Bellianis of Greece, and the Peerless Princess Florisbella, Daughter to the Souldan of Babylon : for, as you may read in that place, on the fourth day of the Tournament, which was held in honour of that Wedding, it being agreed that the balliant Prince Don Clarineo of Spain, Brother to the Prince Don Bellianis of Greece, should maintain the Field for that day ; he was encountred, and assaulted by a Knight in black Armour, having the figure of Envy painted on his Shield ; who with the assistance of some balliant Knights that accompanied him, made great slaughter among the Knights that accompanied Don Clarineo ; and had not Don Bellianis himself, and several of his Friends, left the place of the Tournament, and, arming themselves, returned and assisted in the fight, much more mischief had been done by the Knight of Envy, and his Companions : but he and his Assistants being vanquished, and Don Bellianis, and his Friends, relieved by the coming of the sage Bellaneo, that hazardous Adventure was finished ; and, at the conclusion of that Chapter, it was promised, that an account should be given you, who this Knight of Envy was, and the occasion of his coming thither at that time.

Now, that you may be fully acquainted with the truth of this Adventure, it is necessary that you look back to the fifteenth Chapter of the second Part of this History ; where you may find, that on the day of the Coronation of Duke Alfron, and the Princess Persiana his Wife, Daughter to the Souldan of Persia, now King and Queen of Shyrax, that days Solemnities were obstructed, at the present, by the arrival of a Knight armed in azure Armour, and afterwards known by the name of the Knight of the Island of Pearles, (who being one of the Sons of one Gozmin, and formerly King of Shyrax, under the Souldan of Persia ; but for some traitterous enterprise dispossessed of the same by the Souldan ;) this Knight of the Island of Pearles coming at the day of the Coronation, and attending until the Herald, who proclaimed the said Duke Alfron, and his Wife Persiana, King and Queen of Shyrax, Larr, and Jarowne, and all the rest of the Territories and Dominions hereto belonging, had proclaimed it twice, according to custome, and being about to do so the last time, he then, going to the place where the King and Queen sat, told them, that he did come to contradict the Proclamation ; saying, that so long as

he

he was alive, there could not be any other lawful King, for that he was the Son of the said Gozmin ; and that, to justify his Title, he was ready to enter the Lists with any Champion that they should appoint. This, as you may remember, was a sensible trouble to the King and Queen for the present ; but Don Bellianis undertaking the combat on their behalf, and vanquishing the said Knight of the Island of Pearles, and because he would not acknowledge any other King but himself, he therefore cut off his head, and so finished the combat ; as you may read more at large in the said second Part. Now you may also read, that the said Knight of the Island of Pearles has a Brother, and he it was, that under the name of the Knight of Envy, came and disturbed the last days Triumphs at the Wedding of Don Bellianis and Florisbella.

We need not acquaint you with the cause of his coming at this time to disturb this Royal Assembly ; for you may soon judge it was to be revenged on Don Bellianis for his Brothers death. But withal he had a further design in it, for he intended either to seize on, or murder Alfron and Persiana, the King and Queen of Shyrax ; who, as he alledged, had usurped upon his right to the Kingdom ; and that being done, by the help of his Friends, to have gotten possession of the Kingdom : but he was prevented, as you have already heard. And now these Troubles being over, nothing was thought of but Joys and Triumphs ; and to that end another Tournament was proclaimed to be kept for two days more ; and Don Clarineo of Spain, who had been obstructed and disappointed by the late Adventure, was to keep the Field for the first day ; and the Knight of Hope, who was servant to Maceroza Princess of Numidia, was appointed to keep the Field the second day : wherefore, according to this agreement, Don Clarineo of Spain, with fifty Knights in his company, entered the Lists, and gave the Ladies as much satisfaction by their balliant behavior on that day, as they had received trouble on the last. And now the last day of the Tournament being come, the Knight of Hope, being armed in a white Armour, insaid with the figures of Anchors of blew, and a picture of Hope on his shield, entered the Field ; and his Lady the Princess, the more to honour him, had bestowed a rich Scarf of blew Silk, embroidered with Stars of Gold, which

he wore about his arm ; and in this equipage accompanied with fifty knights, all in the same coloured Armour, he entered the Lists, and expected his Assailants ; and now, it being the last day intended for the Solemnity of the Wedding, all the young knights of the Court resolved to try their fortunes, intending to gain Honour ; but although several of them performed very well, yet he kept the field to the last, and clearly bore away the Honour of that days Triumph, to the great satisfaction of the whole Court ; but chiefly to the great pleasure of his Princess.

And now the Triumphs being ended, and all the Court ready to rise and leave their seats, a great voice of Trumpets was heard, at which every one wondering, looked towards the place from whence they supposed the noise came ; but behold there was nothing but a great cloud, which being in some short time vanished, they saw the Castle where the Knight of Envy was ; and at the four corners of this Castle were placed four Trumpeters, who still continued sounding their Trumpets : also at the entrance of the Castle there were two Giants armed at all points, with Iron Paces in their hands, and broad cutting Faulchions by their sides ; and sit fast on this side the Giants, there was a Pillar of Jasper, and on it hung a Table, whereon was written this Prophecy.

The Adventure of Redeeming and Releasing the Knight of Envy, and his Companions, from this Castle, is reserved to be finished by the young *Syconian Lion*, and the *Grecian Whelp*, who must accidentally meet here, and, by vanquishing the Guards, deliver them : Therefore let none be so bold, as to attempt their Deliverance ; for it is to be accomplished by none but the two best Knights in the whole World, who shall here become acquainted, and, to the joy of their Parents, be reconciled, and shall be the occasion of an Universal Peace.

These were the words written on the Table ; which when Don Bellianis had read, the Trumpeters ceased to sound their Trumpets ; and he went back to his Father and Princess, to acquaint them with what he knew of this Adventure. But it was now so dark, that nothing further could be done in it, so that it was resolved to go to the Palace ; whither they being come, it was the general discourse of all the Assembly ; and it was resolved, that the

the next day trial should be made of this Adventure : wherefore the next morning being come, and spent in the Palace, and dinner being ended, all the Court set forwards to the place of the enchanted Castle ; and now none were to make trial of the Adventure, but such as should be thereto appointed by Don Bellianis ; wherefore he ordered that the first that should attempt it, should be the Knight of Hope ; who having performed so well in the last days Tournament, was in good hopes of obtaining more honour ; but he was disappointed : for no sooner was he come in reach of the first Giant, who was Guardian of the Castle, but the Giant, scorning to use any arms against him, only took him in his arms, and grasped him so hard, that he made his bones crack ; and notwithstanding all his struggling, he held him so fast and so long, that his breath being spent, he was discomfitedly thrown as far as the Pillar of Jasper. But he had not lain long there before he came to himself ; but he was so sore and weak, that he had no mind to renew the combat ; wherefore the young knights, who before were all very forward in trying their fortunes, but now, seeing the misfortune of the Knight of Hope, desisted : but however several approved good knights offered themselves to the trial of this Adventure, but Don Bellianis would not permit any single knight ; for considering the mighty force of one of the Giants, he thought it impossible for any single knight to vanquish them both ; and therefore he ordered that no less than two at once should be permitted : the first two that made trial, were the Knight of the Flaming Sword, and the Prince of Mesopotamia ; but all they could do, was to force the Giants to handle their Iron Paces, but it was to their cost ; for at the first stroke they were laid breathless on the ground. The next two that offered themselves were Contumeliano Prince of Phæacia, and Florispiano of Swevia, his Cozen ; but they also, after half an hours combat, were reduced to the same condition with the former : and now all the rest seeing the difficulty of the Adventure declined the combat ; only the two Brothers of Don Bellianis, Don Clarineo of Spain, and Don Lucidamore of Thessaly, set forwards to try their valours. These two valiant knights marched up with a confident bravery, and drawing their sharp cutting Swords, and embracing their Shields, assaulted the two Giants with two such blows

over their helmets that they made the fire fly out, and forced the two Giants to bow their heads; but they advancing their Paces, reached the knights two such blows as made them kneel down; and had they not been nimble to have risen before the blows were coullée, they had certainly perished in this encounter; but knowing the danger of the blows they should receive, they nimbly got up, and stepping on one side avoided their fury; but so mighty were the forces of these Giants, that both their Paces were forced two feet at least into the earth, and they could not at present get them out again; which the two knights seeing, came upon them with so great courage and force, that they enforced these two Giants to kiss the ground; but they soon arose, and being sensible of the blows they had received, drew out their Paces, but only laid them by them; and drawing their Faulchions, attended the approach of the two knights; who being encouraged by their last two blows, again approached the Giants, but to their cost, for they received two such blows on their Helmets, that they were cut in pieces, and their heads disarmed; and they seeing the danger they were in retired, and so went to take other Helmets: but Don Bellianis would not permit them to attempt the combat any further; which the Giants seeing, put up their Faulchions, and took up their Paces, and stood in the places and manner they had formerly done: and this was all that for that time was done, or attempted in this Adventure; for all the knights present seeing the ill success of the combat with these knights, who were known to be of the valiantest in the World, made no further attempts; only Peter of Ireland had a great desire, but Don Bellianis would not permit him.

And now this Adventure of the enchanted Castle being prosecuted as much as was convenient, and all the Triumphs of this magnificent Wedding being ended, Don Bellianis did propose to the Souldan, his Father in Law, the finishing the War with the Emperour of Trebizond, and offering his service to go in person about it; but the Souldan would not by any means consent to that; neither would the Princess Florisbella hear of any such proposition, telling him, that she had rather lose ten such Conspirers, than permit him to take so long a journey, especially in so hazardous and troublesome a War; wherefore another was

proposed; which was, that the Emperour of Trebizond, who was then in prison, should be treated with, to see if he would grant that willingly, which it was impossible for him to hinder; and thereupon Messengers were sent to treat with him, who had fair propositions to offer; for they alledging, and that with truth enough, that the Emperour was the only cause of the War, it was therefore but just and fit, that he should pay all the damage and expence of the same; and if he would do so, or leave the Souldan in quiet and peaceable possession of that part of his Dominions which he had already conquered, then he should not only have a peace, but be restored to his liberty. These were the propositions that were made to the Emperour; who as low as he was in his present misfortunes, yet he was high in his own opinion, and so in his reply; for having lost that which he chiefly aimed at, the Princess Florisbella, he was so enraged, that he cared not what he did; but replied, that his pretensions to the Princess Florisbella, being the effects of his love, he thought they were but just, and therefore he could not be justly taxed with being the only cause of the War; for if the Princess had been granted to him, the War would have ended; but since it was so, that the Princess was otherwise disposed of, and thereby he was frustrated in his expectations, he thought it was but just, that he should be restored to his liberty, and his Empire restored to him: but he thus closed, that if this would not be granted, he questioned not but that he had so many loyal Subjects in his own Dominions, and so many Friends and Allies abroad, that he should gain that by force which was denied him. This was the answer of the Emperour, which was judged to be so unreasonable, that it was concluded on all hands, that the War should be vigorously prosecuted; and to that end Letters were presently sent away to Don Baltazano, to know of him the condition of the Army under his command, and in what condition the Enemies were; that they might from thence conclude what Forces were necessary to be raised. A Messenger being dispatched to Don Baltazano, who was left with an hundred thousand men at the siege of the City of Pharez, which was fortified, and defended against him by the King of Albania, and the Knight of the Tyger, as is before declared: This Messenger was not long before he returned to the Souldan, and brought this Letter.

The Letter of *Baltazano* to the Souldan of *Babylon*.

Dread Lord, and most Honoured Uncle,

When the worthy Knight *Don Bellianis* left this place we were victorious, and no Enemies appeared against us, but such as were inclosed in the City of *Pharez*, which we also reckoned to be inconsiderable, in regard the Emperor their Lord was your Prisoner, and the King of *Georgia* was also taken, and no General left to head the Forces but the King of *Albania*, who was wounded, and the Knight of the *Tyger* in worse condition than he; but no sooner were part of your Forces withdrawn, but new Recruits came from further parts of the Country, and being led by a Virgin named *Floreza*, Sister to the Emperor, the City was relieved; and notwithstanding the frequent assaults that we have given them, yet we have not been able to carry it, so great is the courage of the Princess *Floreza*, that by her presence and prudence she kept all things in very good order, until the two Generals (the King of *Albania*, and the Knight of the *Tyger*) were recovered of their wounds; and then they had so great a respect for her, that she still continues Commander in chief: and to encourage her further, they have sent to their Countries for more fresh Forces; and so great love and respect have all the Commonalty of the Country for the Princess *Floreza*, that they take up Arms generally in all places, and have mustered in great numbers, so that we daily expect, by the addition of these Forces, that she will in short time be able to take the Field: wherefore if your Majesty intends to prosecute your Conquests here, I humbly conceive it will be necessary to raise more considerable Forces. In the mean time nothing shall be wanting to be done for your Majesties service, that is in the power of

Your Majesties Subject and Kinsman,

BALTAZANO.

This Letter being read before the Souldan and his Council, it was presently determined that an hundred thousand men should be immediately raised, and sent away under the command of the Knight of Hope, who had given such rare proofs of his valour; and that more Forces should follow with all convenient speed. Here-
upon

upon the Drums were beaten up, and those Forces which *Don Bellianis* brought back with him being recruited by the new levied Forces, they made up the number; and being all fitted with necessaries for the War, the Knight of Hope advanced; in his company marched *Trion* Knight of the Wolf, and the valiant *Peter* of Ireland, *Contumeliano* of Phœnicia, and *Florispiano* of Swevia. *Don Clarineo*, and *Don Lucidamore*, Brothers to *Don Bellianis*, likewise offered to go, but it was not permitted them at present so to do.

CHAP. II.

How *Alfiron* and *Persiana*, King and Queen of *Shyrax*, go home; and she is brought to bed of a Daughter, named *Belliana*. *Don Brianel* and *Aurora*, King and Queen of *Antioch*, likewise go home; and she is brought to bed of a Daughter, named *Aurora*. *Perianeo*, and *Don Gramalis*, had a Son and Daughter in the pleasant Island, by *Meridiana* and *Altea*, named *Gorgiana* and *Altea*, who are nursed by *Fristen*. The Princess *Floreza* issues out of the City of *Pharez*, and fights a bloody Battle with *Baltazano*; who gets the honour of the day, but is deeply fallen in love with her.

These Forces being thus sent away under the command of the Knight of Hope, in short time after *Alfiron* and *Persiana*, King and Queen of *Shyrax*, desired leave of the Souldan, and *Don Bellianis*, to depart, and travel to their own Countries, promising to raise Forces there that should be ready to assist in the War; and at the same time *Don Brianel* and *Aurora*, King and Queen of *Antioch*, likewise departed, with promise to raise Forces that should be always ready to wait upon the commands of *Don Bellianis*: and it was not long after the arrival of these Personages at their own Courts, but that the two Queens were brought to bed of two lovely Daughters; that of *Don Brianel* and *Aurora* was named *Aurora*, like the Mother; and that of *Alfiron* and *Persiana* was named *Belliana*, in honour of their great Friend *Don Bellianis*. And now we have given you an account of these proceedings of the Friends of *Don Bellianis*, we will also give you some account of those

those of his Enemies: wherefore we having so long forgotten Perianco, Son of the Souldan of Persia, and Gramalis of Thrace, we will return to give some account of them. If you turn back to the eleventh Chapter of the second Part of this History, you may find that these two valiant Knights were by the means of the said Friar conveyed into the pleasant Island, where they spent their time in all manner of delights, in the company of the Princess Meridiana, daughter to the valiant King Gorgiana of Soria, and the fair Lady Alce; and the Prince Perianco had so much freedom and enjoyment of the Princess Meridiana, that she, being with child by him, was brought to bed of a fair Son, whom they named Gorgiana, after the name of his Grandfather; and the Lady Alce likewise had a Daughter by Gramalis of Thrace, which they named Alce, like the Mother; and as this Son of Perianco proved to be one of the best Knights of his time, so this young Lady Alce was the only Paragon for Beauty throughout the whole Universe. These young Children were no sooner born, but they were taken from their Parents by the sage Friar, who promised that he would take care of their education; and at all times be answerable for them to their Parents; and in this condition we will again leave them for the present, and return to the Knight of Hope, who was on his journey to the City of Pharez, having the command of an hundred thousand men, and being accompanied by several valiant Princes his Companions. He being commanded to make an expedition in his march, did not stop to make any addition to his forces, but proceeded so far as he could; but he was not yet within reach of the City, when he was met by a messenger who brought him word that the King of Pharez was dead, and that the City was in the hands of the Enemies. The Prince Billando being informed of this, he immediately turned back, and marched towards the City, where he found the King of Pharez dead, and the City in the hands of the Enemies. The Prince Billando being informed of this, he immediately turned back, and marched towards the City, where he found the King of Pharez dead, and the City in the hands of the Enemies. The Prince Billando being informed of this, he immediately turned back, and marched towards the City, where he found the King of Pharez dead, and the City in the hands of the Enemies.

Part III. The Honour of Chivalry. 81
day; and therefore sending her such word, he again re-entred his Camp. Although this Princess had several times sent out small parties, that had assaulted him in his Trenches, and headed several parties in the City when he had assaulted it, yet he had not yet seen her; but report rendered her a brave Person, and as compleat in the outward lineaments of her body, as she had shewn her self in the bravery of her mind; and therefore the Prince Balcazano was desirous to oblige her, and resolved, if possible, to see and encounter with her in the next days Battle: wherefore that he might be ready the next morning, he kept strict guards all that night; and the time appointed being coming, he again left his Camp: but as forward as he was, the Princess was as ready as he; for she had likewise quitted the place where she had incamped that night, and was advanced towards him. She had divided her forces in three Battalions; one, which was the Van, she led her self; and under her command were forty thousand men; the second, which was the Body of the Army, was commanded by the King of Albania; and he had under him sixty thousand men; and the Rear was led by the Lieutenant General of the King of Georgia, who was a very valiant Knight, and known by the name of the Knight of the Lions; who also had forty thousand men: and the like number of forty thousand men was left in the City, under the conduct of the valiant Knight of the Tyger. Thus was she accompanied, but her Arms and Attirements were extraordinary; for she rode on an excellent horse, who was covered with white Armour; and her own was garnished with Gold, and she was set out with precious Stones; she had a Lance in her hand, and a good sword by her side, which hung there by a green scarf with Gold fringes. The Prince of Numidia was not one jot behind her in magnificence; for he was armed in a Silver Armour, which shone so bright, that it dazzled the eyes of the beholders. The Forces which he led were somewhat less than hers, but they were modelled in the same manner, being divided into three Battalions, led by three trusty and valiant Knights; he himself took no particular command, as thinking it to be more convenient to be free, that he might be every where, as an occasion served; only he had with him the said valiant Knights to attend him as his Guard; and he also had left twenty thousand men in his Camp; to guard that,

and to be as a reserve to the rest of his Army, as occasion should require. In this order, and thus prepared, did these two valiant Generals march at the head of their Armies, and, slowly advancing before their Forces, at length met. The first that encountered were the two Generals, the brave Numidian, and the gallant Floreza; who putting the Lance to her Rest failed not to encounter him, and that with such violence, hitting him on the Shield which he held out to receive her, that he was so shaken with the blow, that he was forced to catch hold of his Horses neck, to keep him from falling. He had never met with the like force in any man before, wherefore he was mightily astonished; but he being resolved before hand what to do, did not put his Lance in his Rest, but carried it so, that it flew over her head without encountering her. She soon saw the reason of his missing her, and, being angry at his generosity, turned back her Horse, and cried out, Sir Knight, although you so much contempt the forces of a Woman, yet, I hope, before I leave the Field, to make you sensible of my valour; and if you will turn back, let us again encounter. He stayed not to return her an answer; but, being followed by his Troop of one thousand Men, passed on to the Body of her Army, and then he showed, by the mightiness of his blows, that he was not guilty of any cowardise; for he had killed, or dismounted, six, before his Lance brake; and then, drawing his Sword, he at six blows sent as many more into the other World: and being angry at the blow the Princess had given him, he was resolved to revenge it on her Followers. By this time he was passed the first Battle, and was come to the second, which was commanded by the King of Albania, and him he met to his damage; for although he was a very valiant Knight, yet he gave him a wound over the arm, and the Sword falling heavily on the Horses neck, cut off his head, so that he was dismounted: but he was soon rescued by his Followers. And now our Numidian Prince thought it was time to wheel about, and see how his Army was entertained by their Enemies; and indeed full time it was for him to do so; for he found the fore-front of his Army in very great disorder, by the valiant exploits of the unmatched Floreza, who had so laid about her, that she had killed, or dismounted, above twenty, with her own hand, and had thereby made such way for her Followers, that that whole Squadron was almost put to the rout. The Prince

Prince of Numidia seeing this, fled to the Rear of them, and there caused them to face about, and in short time, by this stratagem, he had brought all those who were flying in the Van, to be in the Rear; and those in the Rear, who had not known of the disaster, were now in the Van: and he did then, in the head of these Forces, so lay about him, that he kept his Enemies, and gave his own Men the time and convenience to rally. By this means his Forces were in as good condition almost, as they had been in the beginning of the Battle; which the Princess Floreza seeing, was resolved again to assault him; wherefore commanding that an hundred of her best Knights should keep near her, and by all means keep the Numidian from passing from her, she set forwards; and being come within hearing of him, she cried out, Now, Sir Knight, since you would not make use of your Lance against me, let me see what you can do with your Sword; for assure you, Sir, that I will do my utmost endeavor against you with mine; and I hope to make you know, that I have an arm as capable and strong to wield a Sword, as it was to manage a Lance against you. He heard her well enough, but was intended to leave her, as he had done the time before; but he was hindered by those who attended her, and therefore he had the means to come up to him: when she was within reach of him, she again commanded him to defend himself; and advancing her Sword in the air, she let it fall on his Shield with such violence, that it forced him to bend his body; and she again redoubled her blow in such manner, that she wounded him on the shoulder: the smart of the wound made him alter his resolution; and seeing it was impossible to get from her without blows, was resolved to give her one, and so he went; whereupon he raised his Sword, and intending to hit her cross the top of her Helmet, to astonish her a little, his blow fell with such force, that the buckles of her Helmet breaking, that fell off from her head, and thereby she discovered the loveliest, but with all the most majestick face that Nature ever produced; all her long golden locks flew about her shoulders, and the colour of her face was so ruffled with the heat of the fight, and the anger to be thus used, that it was much like that of Roses; and indeed throughout all she seemed to present those two Goddesses, Venus and Bellona, the one in the face, and the other in all the other parts of her body. The Numidian Prince was so surprised with this unexpected, but most pleasant sight, that he stood with his Sword in his hand like a dead statue; but she soon put life in him again; for now her anger being raised to the highest pitch, she

she likewise raised her Sword, and saluted him with a powerful blow on the Helmet; which although it for the present blinded his eyes, yet his understanding was clear, and he refused to take the advantage he had against her, of assaulting her unarmed as she was; but resolving to be gone, he was likewise resolved to have some benefit of the combat; for he seizing her in his arms, caught hold of that fair green Scarf that held her Sword-scabbard, and lifting it over her head, turned his Horse, and in despite of all the resistance her Knights could make, he made his way through them, and so returned to his Army. During the time of this combat all the Forces of both Armies had the leisure to engage themselves, and that with indifferent fortunes; for as he possessed his Soldiers with a courage, so did she those under her command: and those Chiefs that they had appointed on both sides over their several Squadrons, being Persons of great conduct and valour, had worthily discharged their places. But the Army of the Prince of Numidia having been always used to conquer, were resolved to do so now too; and therefore they laid about them so valiantly, that their Enemies were forced to withdraw. The Princess Floreza seeing this, and being enraged as well at the misfortune of her self, as that of her Army, she sent away immediately to the City, to command those Forces there, under the conduct of the Knight of the Tiger, to advance; and in the mean time she used all possible diligence to rally her scattered Forces: she did so, and had put them again in the best order that time and place would permit. When she saw her fresh Forces issue out of the City, as this caused an universal joy to her and her People, so it was as much cause of sorrow to the valiant Numidian; who by this understood that the fight would be very bloody, and that he must be forced to fight it out to the last man: he was sorry to find it so, but being resolved to do all things that might be done by a good General, he sent away to his Camp, to command those Forces that he had left there to quit the Camp, and advance towards the place of Battle; but not to make their approaches so near as to be discovered by either Army, but to stay in some near convenient place, and expect his Commands. His Orders were obeyed; but before they could arrive at him, the Enemy was advancing with the recruit of fresh Forces. He had in this time marshalled his Army, and was ready to receive them, and so went on, and joined Battle: he was still holding at some small distance with a small party, and as he saw occasion, went and relieved those that stood in need of his assistance; and

and that done, he again retired to the place from whence he came, where he made his observations; and in fine, by this his good and prudent management, he saw that his Army had received the first brunt of the on-set of his Enemies Forces with valour enough, and had made a considerable resistance; and that his Enemies, having failed in their expectation, were now wearied, whilst his Men kept close to their ground; and seeing that there was no advantage on the Enemies part, he wheeled about, and went to those Forces he had ordered as a Reserve; when he came to them, he cried out, Come, Fellow-Soldiers, there is only your assistance waiting to put an end to this days work, and reap the advantage of Battle that hath been well fought; do but now show your resolutions to continue what you have been, Conquerors, and we shall soon be so. They answered him with such a shout, as demonstrated their joy and willingness to follow him: wherefore he, being at the head of this Party, flew like lightning, and immediately was up with his Enemies, who were mightily surprised with this assault. They bore it as courageously as they could, but these fresh Forces coming with fresh resolutions, to die or conquer, made their Enemies know, that they were led by one who was no novice in the art of war. The valiant Princess did all she could to hinder her Enemies from a Victory, which she saw they were resolved to have; but seeing it was in vain, she, like a prudent General, caused the retreat to be sounded. The Numidian Prince hearing of it, was resolved not to disoblige her further, but give her the satisfaction she desired: but although he, as well as she, had caused the retreat to be sounded, yet his Soldiers could not be easily brought off from the work they were engaged in, in killing and banquishing their Enemies. But now the night coming on, ~~and that for them both which they were so desirous of,~~ for it separated the two Armies; and the valiant Princess found her loss so considerable, that she thought it necessary to quit the field to her Enemies, and enter the City, being the better place of security. She put this her resolution into execution, but not so well, but that she had a great loss by it; for several believing that now they should be again inclosed within the City walls, chose rather to flee away, or fall into their Enemies hands, and so they did: and also the Camp of the Numidian was much inclosed by the plans

plunder of the field. Thus was the fortune of the Wars altered; and what this valiant Princess had been some months in gathering together, was in one day separated, or banquished. The next day, upon a view of the field, there were an hundred thousand Men slain on both sides; but it was supposed two thirds of them were of the Princesses party: but she, who began with less Forces then now she had, was not so much discouraged as to despair, but hoped for a better day; and in expectation thereof, was content with her present fortune. In order to the management of her Affairs, she sent out to raise Forces, not only in all the Dominions of her Brother, but she also sent to all her Allies, which were so many, and they so forward in her assistance, that she questioned not but, in short time, she should be in condition to take the field again: till when she made several excursions; and notwithstanding all that the Prince of Numidia could do to hinder her, yet she several times got in some Recruits, with all necessary provision; and he indeed was so concerned for her ever since that fatal day whereon he disarmed her head, that he knew not what to think of it; but in the end he discovered that the little god Cupid had wounded him so deeply, that he must be conquered, and yield to those whom he had conquered. But the relation of that, and other transactions that happened upon that account, being many and various. I shall here conclude, referring the prosecution of them to a new Chapter.

CHAP.

CHAP. III.

How the Prince of *Numidia*, being enamoured of the Princess *Floreza*, sends her a Letter to acquaint her therewith; which she civilly answereth. She and the City of *Pharez* is relieved by the arrival of *Perisano*, Knight of the *Panther*, with sixty thousand men; and he is reinforced by the arrival of the Knight of *Hope*, and an hundred thousand men. The Knight of the *Panther*, being her former Lover, now endeavors to gain her by fair or foul means. He promises to perform wonders; but attempting the Army of the Prince of *Numidia*, is beat back with loss. The Princess *Floribella* is brought to bed of a Son, named *Meridian*, and a Daughter named *Clarinda*, who are threatened by a Prophecy. The arrival of the young Princesses, *Aurora* of *Antioch*, and *Belliana* of *Smyraz*, to be bred up with the two young Princes; who being brought out on a solemnity, are carried away by a strange enchantment.

Although the Prince of Numidia had gained great advantage over the Princess Floreza in the precedent Battle, yet he could not much brag of his conquests, he himself being wounded by the eyes of Floreza, more deeply then she had wounded him in the body; but the wound on his body was sooner cured, then that he had received at his heart; for at an instant her beauty was so powerful, that it pierced his Armour, and gave him an incurable wound. He being sensible of his ill fortune, complained to the great god Mars, that he had permitted him, who was his absolute Notary, to be overcome by that little god Cupid. But considering the all-powerful charms of Venus, who oftentimes enforced Mars himself to submit to her, was resolved to be content; and since he was wounded, to endeavor a remedy. There was none capable to cure him, but she alone that wounded him, and he knew her to be his enemy; but however, believing her to be as generous, as she was fair and courageous, he took pen, ink, and paper, and writ these lines to her.

The Letter of the Prince of Numidia to the Princess of Trebizond.

Madam,

ALthough fortune declared her self to be somewhat on our side, by giving us somewhat the better against you on the last day of Battle, yet you have made the greater Conquest; and indeed, how could it be otherwise, since you come so doubly armed, not only with Sword and Lance, but also with what is more powerful then either, and is indeed more conquering then all the weapons in the World, your Fair Eyes, whose rayes are so subtilly penetrating, that they pierce the choicest Armor? the truth of this I have experienced by the effects, and must confess my self your Captive. Indeed we have the honour of keeping the Field which you quitted, and found some Trophies there which were considerable; but all to me is inconsiderable, in respect of that glorious Scarf which I obtained of you, and which I prize above all else I could have purchased. I hope, Madam, since I won it in the Field, you will give me leave to wear it as a glorious Trophy; and not to take it as other people may do, that I wear it in sign of victory over you, when as all my ambition in having the honour of wearing it, is to signify that I fight under your colours: although this may seem to be a paradox, yet assure your self of the truth of it; and setting aside the trust I have of commanding the Forces of my Uncle, I should come immediately and present my Person to be commanded by you. Madam, consider my condition with you, and consider my quality with my Uncle, and command me anything which you think is generously fit to be done, and assure your self you shall command.

Baltazano of Numidia.

This Letter was convey'd to the Princess, who receiv'd it of the Messenger with much civility; and being told from whence it came, and expecting that there was some State matters in it, she directed the Messenger to stay till the next morning, and then she would return him an answer. He waited accordingly, and the morning being come, and he receiv'ing a Letter, went presently to his Tent, where, breaking open the seal, he found these lines.

The

The Letter of the Princess Floreza to the Prince Baltazano.

Sir Knight,

YOUR Letter hath very much surprized me; for I expected somewhat in it in order to the prosecution of the old War, and you propose a new one: it were necessary that the first were finished, before any treaty of the second; for how can I think you to be my Friend, when you are in arms in my own Country against our Subjects, and have already sacrificed so many of their lives to your ambition of Empire? You may answer, that the War was begun by my Brother, and prosecuted by you as an Enemy to him: but I cannot take him to be my Friend, who is his Enemy. As for your generosity in offering your service to me, I thank you, and found you friendly, when in arms I took you for an Enemy. If you are obliged to serve, and be true to your Uncle, who hath intrusted you with his Army, I have a double obligation on the same account; for I am not only intrusted by the Emperor my Brother, but the love of, and my duty to my Country, requires my assistance of it in this extremity. As for those Trophies you won in the Field, as I cannot hinder, so I shall not forbid your using them as you please. And as you desire me to consider your condition with your Uncle, so, I think, you ought to consider of mine with my Brother, and my Country, to whom I am more obliged then you can be; otherwise, setting this aside, it may be I should be as generous as you. I confess, you might have prosecuted your Victory against us with somewhat more rigor; for you did spare, where you might have killed: but I hope, if the War continue, I may have the same advantage against you, when, you may expect, I will make the same use of it. This is all at present from her, who although she is obliged to be your Enemy, yet she will endeavor to answer your generosity:

Floreza of Trebizond.

The Prince of Numidia was highly contented with this Letter, and had great hopes of a handsome prosecution in his love; which although it was not encouraged, yet he was not bid to despair. But as he was a Lover, so he was the General of an Army, and his care was to be employed in prosecuting the War: he had some inclinations to propose of a Peace to the Princess; but he

thought it would be better to wait till the arrival of those Forces, who he heard were approaching, under the command of the Knight of Hope, which in few days came up to the Army.

It was then supposed necessary to proceed, and lay a close siege to the City; but they were hindered from doing so, by the arrival of sixty thousand men, under the conduct of Perisano, Knight of the Panther, who was one of the principal of the Nobility of Trebizond, and withal was anxious of, though not beloved by, the Princess Floreza. This Knight of the Panther was a proud ambitious Person; and had carried himself so arrogantly in the courtship of the Princess, that she had wholly refused him: but he now, supposing he should either oblige her by fair means, in bringing this assistance to her in this extremity, or else be able to compel her by force; he therefore had raised these Forces, and now came to her assistance. Although she knew his pretensions, yet she took no notice of that; but welcomed him, and told him, that the Emperor, her Brother, would acknowledge this as a very remarkable service; and, that she would endeavour, that her Brother should, in due time, recompence him. He returned this answer, that he did not, nor could not expect any recompence from him, who was himself in prison, and whom he looked upon as one out of the World; but his reward he expected from her self, whom he acknowledged his only Sovereign; and the recompence he expected, she very well knew of: and in requital of it, he questioned not but to rid her, and that Empire, of all their Enemies; that they together might reap the fruits of such a Peace as he would assuredly give her. She, hearing his arrogant expressions, answered, that she should never think otherwise of her self then as a Subject, so long as her Brother was living; and therefore to be wholly disposed by him: but if he would join with her, in opposing their Enemies, she was ready to accept him. He replied, he was come for that purpose; but withal, that she knew his mind. This valiant and discreet Princess was very much troubled at the arrogance of this vain-glorious Knight, but was resolved to dissemble her knowledge of his intentions, and, if possible, to gain the Chiefs of his Army to her dispose: but as yet, she thought it would be convenient to be silent, and see how the fortune of the War was likely to proceed; and therefore proposed to issue out of the

the City, and assault their Enemies in their Camp. The Knight of the Panther was very ready to entertain this proposition; and therefore told her, that he was obliged to execute her commands when she pleased; and promised to do great marvels on the day of Battle; but when the day came, and he and all his Forces were joined with their Enemies, yet, although he was brave and courageous enough, he found such warm entertainment in the Enemies Camp, that he was, in short time, forced to retire into the City, with the loss of ten thousand men of his party. He fearing that the War was likely to continue much longer then he expected, and believing that he should not by force gain his end, was resolved to try what he could do by treachery; and to that end, he intended to take the same course with the Officers of the Princesses Army, as she intended to do with his, by gaining them to him. And the Prince Balazano was full of uncertainties, what course to take in the prosecution of his love; for he had intelligence that the Knight of the Panther, who commanded the Forces that lately relieved the Princess, was also her Servant; but whether he was accepted, or countenanced by her, he knew not. Wherefore in these irresolutions we will at present leave him, before the City of Pharez, engaged both in Love and War, in both which he will be for some time engaged; and now we will return to Babylon, where we left the Souldan and his Empress, accompanied by their valiant Son in Law Don Bellianis, and their fair Daughter Florisbella; the two valiant Princes, Don Clarinco, and Don Lucidamore, and several other great and worthy Personages.

The Court of the Souldan of Babylon was never filled with more joy and tranquillity then on this occasion, especially when it was known, that the fair Princess Florisbella was with Child: this was very pleasing, not only to the whole Court, but to all the Subjects of this great Empire: and the time of her lying in being come, great and splendid provision was made to entertain the Princess Babe. But the joy of all was more then ordinary when she was brought to bed, not only of a brave Son, but he was accompanied by as lovely a Daughter: These two were wonderful full in their births; for, besides that the ordinary lineaments of their body were in the highest perfection, they had extraordinary marks:

marks: the Son had the perfect figure of three Crowns on his breast, lively represented; and the Daughter had as many Roses on her left arm. At the sight of these so remarkable marks, all the Court was full of discourse, what should be the meaning; for it was concluded by all, that they did admit of some extraordinary interpretation. Various were the opinions of all; and nothing being agreed upon, the Sages, and Wise Men of the Kingdom were sent to, who sent this answer.

A Prophecie.

IT shall not be many moneths before as great sorrow shall possess the Court of *Babylon*, as now it is filled with joy, and it is impossible to hinder it; the Fates having decreed, that the two Princes shall be lost, but not irrecoverably; and their second birth shall bring as much joy, as their loss had brought grief to their Parents. They are born to command as many Empires, and Kingdoms, as are represented on their bodies; and by them shall peace be given to the greatest Empires in the Universe.

This Prophecie was brought to the Court, and presented to the Souldan, and Don Bellianis, who seeing the contents of it would not be very pleasing, they therefore resolved to conceal it from the knowledge of all, trusting Fate to dispose of them, and hoping for the best. But withal, they made the stricter provision for the nursing of the two young Princes, who, with their Nurses, were placed in a Castle adjoining to the Court, and a strict Guard set to watch it night and day. By the consent of all, the young Son was named Meridian, after the name of the Souldan his Grand-father; and the Princess was called Clarinda, it being the name of her Grand-mother, the Mother of Don Bellianis. These two admirable Princes being thus named, were delivered to certain Ladies, to be nursed by them in a Castle, and under a Guard, as we have already told you; and there they continued six moneths, without being visited by any but the Father, Mother, Grand-father, and Grand-mother, and such of the Court as they permitted to go with them; and in these six moneths they were grown so large, that it was admirable to all that saw them. The Father

Father and Grand-father of these two Princes were very glad that six moneths were passed; hoping that they by taking the same care of keeping and guarding them, might hinder the effects of the threatening Prophecie. The Princess Florisbella was mightily well pleased with the thriving of her Children, but was dissatisfied at their being so strictly guarded; and had several times inquired of her Husband the cause why they could not be bred up in the Court with her. Don Bellianis still concealed the true cause of their confinements, and replied, that it was out of state; and that it would be better for the Children, while they were so young, to be bred privately than otherwise; promising, that so soon as one year was past, by which time they would be capable of knowing them, to permit them to be brought to, and bred up in the Court: and with this answer the Princess was forced to rest satisfied.

The news of the birth of these two brave Princes being spread abroad, was soon carried, not only to all parts of the Empire, but it also came to the hearing of Don Brian and Aurora, King and Queen of Anioch; who, believing they should oblige Don Bellianis and his Princess, sent their Daughter Aurora to be bred up with them in the Court of Babylon; and, by their example, Afron and Persiana, King and Queen of Shyrax, also sent their Daughter Belliana; for whose arrival at Court, great joy was made. And now the Princess Florisbella was again desirous that her two Children might be brought to Court; to accompany these two Princesses. Don Bellianis promised her, that her desire should in short time be granted; but that he must first have the consent of her Father, the Souldan, before it could be done. The Princess hearing, and understanding, that if she could have her Father's consent, her Husband would be had; she therefore became a Suitor to her Father in that behalf: He answered her, as her Husband had done, that in short time she should have her desires fulfilled. But she was so importunate with both her Husband and Father, that she caused them to promise her that on a day prefixed, which was to come within one moneth more, the two Princes should be brought to Court.

She waited the coming of that day with some impatience; and when it was come, a great Feast was provided, and Princes

were intended to be solemnize in honour of the two Princes; and all the Court went in a kind of procession to the place where they were kept. They were brought out of the Castle by their Purves, and placed in a Golden Chariot, drawn by two milk-white Horses. They were attended by several other Chariots, wherein were the most eminent of the Court; and guarded by those who had formerly been the Guard of the Castle. They being brought to Court, and dinner ended, they were in the same manner drawn in their Chariots to a place scaffolded, and raised in, where the Tournament was to be kept. All Persons here took their places according to their degrees and abilities; and the two young Princes were placed on a Scaffold where were none but themselves and their Purves, and the two young Princesses, Aurora, and Belliana: and opposite to them was the Scaffold whereon sat the Souldan and his Wife, and Don Bellianis, and the Princess Florisbella, who was very joyful at the sight of her two Children; but her joy was converted into sadness within few hours after.

All People being placed on the Scaffold, and the Combatants, who were to perform this days Triumph, being entered the Lists, they rode about, making their usual obeysances to these Princes, and so passed on to their several stations; where, at the noise of forty Trumpets, they began their career, which was performed with much gallantry; and so indeed was all the action of the day, to the great content of all the Spectators. But a little before the approaching of the night, when the Combatants were separated, there were two Chariots seen in the Air, drawn by six Griffons a piece; they came from several ways, for one came from the East, and the other from the West; and meeting in the Air, they began a furious Combat with each other, which continued for some time in the Air, to the admiration of all the beholders; but they in the end separated, and both wheeling about, alighted in the place where the Tilting had been performed: out of one of these Chariots issued a Giant, and in his hand two Lions, who went towards the Scaffold where the two young Princes, Meridian, and Clarinda, were seated; but before they could come thither, they were met and opposed by another Giant, and two fierce Leopards, who came out of the other Chariot; between these two

Giants

Giants began a fierce and cruel Combat; for they dealing their mighty broad Falchions, soon drew blood from one another: in the mean time the Beasts were not idle, for they assaulted each other with great violence; and in the end of a cruel Combat, which was begun, continued, and ended by these Giants, and Beasts, to the admiration of all the beholders, the Giant with the Lions was vanquished by the other; and a great peal of Thunder, and flash of Lightning happening, the Chariot out of which the vanquished Giant and Lions came was vanished, and so was the Giant and Lions; and the other Giant seeing himself Conqueror, taking his Leopards in his hand, went up to the Scaffold where the two young Princes were, and taking them into his arms, bore them away; and carrying them to the Chariot, he entered with them there, and the two Leopards, lying at the feet of the two Princes; immediately the Griffons flew up into the Air, drawing the Chariot after them: and thus were these two Princes born away, to the great grief and astonishment of the beholders.

CHAP. IV.

How Don Bellianis is comforted himself, and comforts his Wife, for the loss of his Children; by means of a Letter which he received from the sage Bellona, signifying her care of them. The Princes, Don Clarindo, and Don Lucidamore, in their return to Greece, meet with a Damsel, who was going to Constantinople to get relief against a Giant called *Fustagon*, who had gotten into his custody the Princess *Leonarda*, and her Father, and Lover, the Prince *Arfleo*; they hearing this news, went with the Damsel to deliver them; which they performed by the death of the Giant.

Great sorrow, confusion, and grief, did this Adventure cause to all the Court; but more especially to the Princess Florisbella, who fell from the Scaffold in a swoon, and was so bereaved of her senses, that she was put into a Chariot, and carried into her Lodgings in the Court, before she came to her self; and then her Ladies, using all convenient remedies, brought her again

to

to her senses: but she then made the greatest lamentations in the World. Neither was her Husband, Don Bellianis, less troubled then she: but as he was taking Horse, to return to the Court, a Dwarf presented to him a Letter, and departed; he opening the paper, read these words.

The sage Bellona to Don Bellianis, greeting.

K Now ye, that as it hath been the greatest of my care and study, to preserve the Honour of the House of Greece, and much more particularly your own Person, so it is not unknown to you, how often I have given you testimonies of my care in that behalf; and although sometimes, through malignity of the Heavens, and the great power and skill of my Adversary, some misfortunes have befallen you, yet they were but for a season; and the bad influence of some Planets being over, all your actions have again been prosperous enough. Even so will it happen in this late Adventure, which you may account a misfortune befallen your Children: but you may assure your self, and the Princess Florisbella, from me, that all shall turn to the best; and that I will be answerable for the Persons of your two Children, and be careful of their education; and in the place where I shall dispose them, they shall be more safe, then either in the Court of Babylon, or the Castle where you had before placed them: therefore satisfy your self for their absence, and assure your self, that the joy you shall take in recovering them again, shall make large amends for what sorrow you have received in this their supposed loss. This you may assure your self from

Your constant Friend,

BELLONA.

Much satisfaction did the valorous Prince Don Bellianis receive at the reading of this Letter, knowing that whatever the sage Bellona did undertake and promise, was true; and would turn to his advantage; and therefore he spurred on again, and coming to the Chamber where the Princess Florisbella was in this lamentable condition, and accompanied by her Father and Mother, who made as great lamentations as she, he told them, that they

might cease their lamentations and complaints, for he had already received intelligence of his Children; and to satisfy them what, he drew out the Letter he had received, and read it unto them. At the reading of this Letter, and the discourse he made upon it, and the arguments he used to convince them of the truth of it, they, in the end, rested very well contented, and were resolved to be satisfied with their condition; which although they concluded it to be a misfortune, yet since the sage Bellona had promised, and undertook for them, they questioned not but in the end of all, things would happen as she had declared.

This unfortunate Adventure being ended, and all the Princes indifferently well satisfied, the Princess Florisbella, having lost her own Children, was mightily comforted by the presence of the two young Princesses; Aurora of Antioch, and Belliana of Shyrax, whose excellent beauties were the ornament and wonder of the whole World; and although their Parents (hearing of the loss of the two Princes) did send for their Daughters, yet the Princess Florisbella made such Apologies, and used so many Arguments to retain them, that, in the end, their Parents were content they should continue where they were.

And now the two valiant Princes, Don Clarineo of Spain, and Don Lucidamore of Thessaly, seeing their Brother so well bestowed in marriage, they desired leave of him to return to Constantinople, to attend their Father. He knowing that their desires were but reasonable, and that he was in duty bound to do the same, and his own Affairs (considering the present War with the Emperor of Trebizond not being ended) not permitting him to leave the Souldan at present; he therefore gave leave unto his two Brothers to depart with what convenienty they could, promising them to follow with all convenient speed; and sending Letters by them from himself, from the Souldan, and from his Princess Florisbella, to his Father and Mother, they departed, in company of several Grecian Knights who had accompanied them thither, and who now made up a considerable train.

They being thus accompanied, travelled through all those vast Countries that separate Babylon from Greece, without meeting with any considerable Adventure; and they were now entered upon the confines of their own Country, when, one morning early,

they were overtaken by a Damsel, who seemed to be in great haste, and made pitious lamentation. These two worthy Princes, knowing that by the Order of Knighthood they were bound to assist all distressed Damsels, asked her the occasion of her haste. She answered, that she was with all speed journeying to Constantinople, to carry news thither that would not be very pleasant; and to see if she could get any remedy for a misfortune that was lately befallen. They told her, that their journey was thither also; and that they were so concerned with the Affairs of that place, that if she pleased to acquaint them with her business, they promise her their assistance. She seeing them such likely Knights, and so well accompanied, and hoping she might save her self the trouble of any further travel, answered them thus:

Know then, worthy Knights, that I belong unto a Princess named Leonarda, whose Father is a considerable Subject to the Emperor Don Bellaneo; and this Lady, being both fair and virtuous, was beloved and courted by several great Personages; but more particularly, by the virtuous Asileo, Prince of Hungary, and near kinsman to the Emperor: he had long courted her, but the Emperor having occasion to travel in search of his Son Don Bellianis, took the Prince Asileo with him; and in the time of his absence, amongst others that courted my Mistress, Fustagon, the fierce and cruel Giant, pretended to be chief. The Lady Leonarda did never admit of any courtship from this fierce Lober; but he living in a Castle, near to that where she dwelt with her Father, and sometimes riding abroad, he would take some opportunities of seeing her, and sending his love to her. She, who was resolved to have none but the Prince Asileo, refused Fustagon, and all others; and notwithstanding his many Letters and Presents, wholly refused him. But he, being very amorous of her, was resolved to have her, either by fair means, or compulsion; and to that end he laid many plots, how to surprize her: but she, being kept with her Father, in his Castle, which was defended with many Knights of his retinue, he had not the opportunity of surprizing her by force; but at length he, waiting all opportunities, found one, to execute his villanous design. For news being brought that the Emperor Don Bellaneo, and the Prince Asileo, with several others, were returned to Constantinople from Persia; the Father

Father of the Princess Leonarda, out of dutiful respect to the Emperor, thought it necessary for him to go to Constantinople, and welcome him home: accordingly he, and most of his retinue, went thither; but no sooner was he set forwards on his journey to the Emperor's Court, but the wicked Fustagon, waiting his opportunity, gained possession of the Castle where Leonarda was; and first attempting her by fair means, and finding that ineffectual, he at length forced her to leave her own Castle, and go with him to his. I being one of her principal Damsels, attended her in that unpleasant journey; where, when we came, the poor Princess was made Prisoner, and, without any respect to her sex or condition, unkindly treated: and she refusing to accept him for a Husband, he told her, that then she must resolve to permit him to enjoy her, or else he would compel her by force. She gave him the best words she could at present, hoping for relief from her Father, and the Prince Asileo; who soon after had notice of her misfortune, and therefore both left the Court, and travelled thitherwards to relieve her. But this cunning Villain, Fustagon, suspecting some such matter, and believing that if he could get the Father, or Lober, into his power, that then he might accomplish his ends upon the Princess; he therefore put himself in the way that they were to come; and having a parcel of Knights, as wicked as himself, who had promised to assist him in his wicked design: such was the misfortune of my Princess, that he met, fought with, vanquished, and took Prisoners both her Father and Lober; and having them in his possession, sorely guarded, carried them to his Castle, and presented them to the Princess; telling her, that now, if she would not grant to his desires, and agree to marry him, he would cause them both to be murdered before her eyes. She was mightily perplexed at her great misfortune; and all that she could gain of this Monster was, to give her a month's time to consider of this matter, promising then to give him a positive answer. And this she did, in hopes to be relieved by some of her Father's Subjects; but they failing her, she made such shift, as she got me out of the Castle, commanding me to go with all speed to the Emperor's Court, to get assistance from thence.

And thus, continued this Damsel, have I given you a brief, but true account of my Princess's misfortunes, and the cause of my

my happy journey; and therefore if you are willing to assist me in this enterprize, make no delays, but face about, and I will conduct you to the place where all these unfortunate People are kept.

The two Princes, Don Clarineo, and Don Lucidamore, needed not many arguments to induce them to assist in so just a cause; not only the defence and assistance of all Ladies in general obliging them thereto, but that in particular, of a Lady their Father's Subject, whom they very well knew; and their near and dear Kinsman, Don Arfileo, for whose assistance and deliverance they knew themselves very much obliged: and were very joyful, that, after so long an absence from their own Country, they might now, at their return, be instrumental in doing any thing that should be worthy of them; wherefore they soon faced about, and bidding the Damsel put on, they and their whole Troop followed her. And now being upon their way, they inquired several things of her; as first, how far it was thither: To which she replied, not above one days journey. Then, how this Giant, Fustagon, was accompanied: and how they might get into his Castle: To this the Damsel replied, that he had two hundred knights in his company within the Castle, and had twice that number in places not far distant; and that several wicked knights did every day come in to him to his assistance, all which he entertained, fearing and expecting Forces from my Ladies Father's Subjects, or from the Emperour, to come against them: and therefore he is so well provided with knights within and without; and the Castle is so well fortified, that it will be a very difficult enterprize to gain it by force; wherefore it will be better, in my opinion, said she, for some to get in by policy, and so surprize it. The Damsels counsel was very well approved of; and they, now riding on, and coming within two miles of the place, again consulted what was to be done; and thereupon they resolved, to divide themselves into three Squadrons, which should all be that night, about midnight, within hearing of the sound of a Trumpet of the Castle, and then should attempt to enter; and that Don Clarineo, and five more valiant and resolved knights, would get in as Friends to Fustagon, and so let in the rest, and perform their enterprize. This being thus resolved upon, Don Clarineo, and the five other knights in his Company, marched on alone (leaving the Damsel to con-

duct

duct the rest) and wheeling about, approached the Castle, as it coming from a strange Country; and being espied by the Centries, they still came nearer; and being come within hearing, the Centries demanded who they were: and what they would have: They replied, they were Friends, and came to speak with their Lord Fustagon. When they had thus answered, they came nearer, and were come to the Castle Gate; and the Guard there seeing them so few in company, permitted them to enter; and they were presently conducted to the presence of Fustagon: When they came near him, Don Clarineo saluted him, telling him, that he belonged to a near Kinsman of his, named Barloon, who, desiring to be kindly remembered to him, and understanding that he might have some occasion for his assistance, had sent them to wait on him for that purpose; and intended himself, with larger assistance, to come to him in few days. To this Fustagon answered, that they were very welcome; but he did believe, that he should not have any occasion to trouble his Kinsman; for he hoped that the Lady Leonarda would grant his desires fairly, and then all would be well again: but, said he, since you are come, I pray stay with me two or three days, and then, if my business be accomplished, I may send you back to my Kinsman, and acquaint him how things are. They were well enough satisfied with this answer, and thereupon walked about with him in the Castle, he giving them an account of his affairs, and shewing them the strength of the Castle; this was much to their purpose, and therefore they took good heed to all things; and so they were conducted to their lodgings, where they were disarmed, and supped with Fustagon; who brought out the sorrowful Lady, Leonarda, into their company, telling her, that his Kinsman, Barloon, had sent him those knights for his assistance, and was coming with a great Train; so that he knew himself able to keep that by force, not only against all her Father's Subjects, but also against all the knights in the Emperour's Court: therefore, said he, it will be discretion in you to grant that fairly, which will be so much to your prejudice to deny, and in the end must, in despite of you, be obtained; for, concluded he, I vow solemnly, if you do not grant my request, and that within these four days, I will cause the heads of your Father and Lover to be smitten off before your eyes,

yes, and then force that from you which you cannot hinder. At the hearing of this sad sentence, the poor Lady answered him only by her tears, which she poured out plentifully before them. Supper-time being ended, and every one conducted to their lodgings, Don Clarineo went to his, and, being wholly unsuspected, his Companions went with him. And now all People, but the Centinels and Watch, being asleep, and our Knights being armed, issued out of their lodgings, and went to the Castle Gates, where they quickly slew some of the Centinels and Watch; but there was such a noise, that the whole Castle was alarm'd; whereupon one of the Knights went up to the Battlements of the Castle, and sounded a Trumpet; and Don Clarineo, and the other four, so laid about them, that they had killed most of the Guard; and possessing themselves of the keys had opened the Castle Gate, expecting their aid. The Giant, Fustagon, was not so soundly asleep, but that, at the noise he heard, he arose; and inquiring, what was the cause thereof: he was told, that the six Knights, who were entertained the day before from his Cousin Baskoon, had attempted to possess themselves of the Castle; that they had killed several of the Guards, and had possessed themselves of the keys. Fustagon, hearing this news, called presently for his Armour, doubting there was some treachery in the case; for he could not imagine, how six Knights alone should be so bold, as to attempt so hazardous and difficult an enterprise, without further assistance, which he supposed was at hand: and now he heard the sound of the Trumpet, he judged, that that was the token to be given; all this he knew, and was resolved to prevent: and therefore he, being armed and attended by a sufficient number of Knights, went to the Castle Gate, where he found our Knights were, and that they had opened it. He pressed forwards to secure it; but he was so well resisted by Don Clarineo, and his Companions, who had the convenience of a narrow place, (so that their Enemies could not come to them behind) that they not only kept them off, but laid several of them dead at their feet. But Fustagon knowing of what consequence the possession of the Gate was, commanded all his Knights to press forwards, and so they did; and would certainly have forced our Knights to lose their station, if just at that instant one of their Squadrons had not come

come in to their assistance: they seeing them approach, and knowing who they were, opened to the right and left, and permitted them to gallop in upon their enemies; which they did with so much violence and fury, that the Knights of the Castle being on foot, many of them were trodden down, and killed under their horses' feet. And now, they being entered the broad yard of the Castle, began a very valiant fight; for Fustagon seeing their number, and knowing his own in the Castle to exceed it, did not question but to vanquish and overcome his Enemies; wherefore he himself, at the head of his People, fought very valiantly; but he was soon of another mind; for it was not long after ere a second, and after that the third Squadron, entered the Castle, so that he believed it would be to no purpose to resist: however, he was resolved to do his utmost; and what he could not execute by force, to perform by policy; and therefore he retired, intending to secure himself of the Princess Leonarda, and if his Enemies would not desist, to cut off her head. With this resolution he left his Knights fighting, and went to her lodging; but not so cunningly, but that Don Clarineo, who had an eye upon him, and doubting some such desperate act, followed him: when he came to the Princesses Chamber, she was up in her night-gown, and seeing him come in all bloody, was mightily agast; but he soon taking her by the arm, led her to a large window which looked into the Court-yard, where the fight was maintained, and there he thus spake to her: Do you see, Minion, how much blood is shed on your occasion? if you have a mind to preserve your self, call to them, and that presently, and command them to leave the fight, and be gone, or else I will deliver you to them, but it shall be headless. She shrank out at this discourse; which the Knights hearing, looked up, but knew not the meaning; only Don Clarineo, who was at the very heels of Fustagon, and heard his discourse, and doubted would do as he had said, took hold of the Lady by the other arm, and drew her from her Enemy, and presented himself in her stead, saying, Come, Monster, exercise you self on Knights that are armed, and not on poor defenceless Ladies. Fustagon seeing him, advanced his Sword, and gave him a mighty blow over the head; but he soon requested him with another, so puissant, that forced the Giant to kneel on the ground: but he recovering, they began a terrible fight, which ended with the death of the Giant.

C H A P. V.

How the Giant, *Fustagon*, being slain, and all the Princes being ready to leave the Castle, they were interrupted by the arrival of several parties belonging to him; who had like to have re-taken the Castle, but that they were relieved by the Knight of the *Stars*, and others in his company; and then, all the Giants Knights being vanquished, the Castle was left to his care. The Princes travelled first to *Leonarda's* Father's, and from thence to *Constantinople*, where they were welcomed, and the Prince *Asileo* married to the Princess *Leonarda*. *Don Clarineo*, travelling in search of *Magdalena*, Princess of *Sardinia*, meets and falls in love with the Princess *Florida* of *Sicilia*, her Cousin; who being acquainted with his true name and quality, under the promise of marriage, permits him to enjoy her. He departing on his voyage to *Ireland*, she attends him, disguised like a Page, named *Florello*.

Iust as the Giant, *Fustagon*, fell breathless on the ground, *Don Asileo* entered the Chamber where the combat had been fought; for he hearing a great noise in the Castle, and the Guards which were upon him leaving him to assist their Lord, he found the means to break open his Chamber-door; and descending into the Court, and seeing the sight, he missing *Fustagon*, and inquiring for him, heard he was gone towards the lodgings of the Princesses; wherefore doubting some desperate act, he seizing on a Sword, a Helmet, and Target, went thitherward, intending to assist and relieve the Princesses, or else to lose his own life in attempting it: with this resolution he entered the Chamber, just as the Giant fell; and seeing *Don Clarineo*, his and his Ladies deliverer, he fell down on his knees to render thanks to him for that great service he had done them; but he was soon taken up by *Don Clarineo*, who, pulling off his Helmet, discovered himself to his kinsman; who soon knowing him, cried out, Oh, my good Lord! how much am I engaged to you for this great and immense favour? He would have proceeded in further discourse of that nature, but that *Don Clarineo* interrupted him, and leaving him in the company of his Lady, went down to see how causes went there; but before he went, he cut off the head of the Giant, and placing it on

on his Swords point, went amongst the Knights who were still fighting. He therefore beholding them, advanced his Sword, and cried out, What is the intent of this your wilful fighting, since behold here the Head of your greatest Enemy, which should put an end to this combat? All the Combatants beheld, and heard him; and the Giants Knights seeing the head of their Lord and Master, and withal finding themselves over-powred, threw down their weapons, and cried out for quarter; which was soon granted them. And the Castle being in all parts secured, the Giants Knights disarmed and imprisoned, the two valiant Princes, *Don Clarineo*, and *Don Lucidamore*, again went to the Princesses lodgings, where they found her not only accompanied by her Lober *Don Asileo*, but also by her Father, who was come thither to her. At the entrance of the two Princes, they would all three have fallen on their knees, but they would not permit it; but, being disarmed, sat down by them: and the Damsel who had met the two Princes, now entered, and joyfully fell down at the feet of her Lady, embracing her knees; but she, understanding that she was by her means relieved, soon took her up, and embracing her, gave her many thanks for her so good service. In the end all Persons were very well pleased; and our wearied Princes having refreshed themselves with such viands as the Castle afforded, lay down to take some rest; during which time *Don Asileo* took charge of the Castle: and considering how their condition was, and that although they had overcome all the Forces within the Castle, yet there were more without who might interrupt their quiet; he therefore, by the advice and consent of the Princesses and her Father, dispatched away certain Knights (who were taken Prisoners with them, and now released) to the Country of his Princesses Father, to acquaint his Subjects of their Victory, and to command them to attend him there immediately, in the best manner they could. These Messengers being sent away, made such dispatch, that they soon arrived at the Castle of the Princess *Leonarda's* Father, where they found a young Knight, a kinsman of hers, called the Knight of the Stars, that had gathered a considerable band of Soldiers together, with intent to relieve their Lord and Lady; and now hearing of the joyful news of their deliverance, and that they only wanted their assistance in conduct-

ing them home, they soon put themselves in a readiness to march thitherwards : and now many more, who before were fearful of the Giants power, knowing him dead, joyned themselves to this Troop, so that their Forces were very considerable. And they being upon their way, we will leave them, and return to the Giants Castle; where the two Princes, and their Companions, and Knights, having refreshed themselves, and being now met together, to consult what was necessary to be done, resolved to leave the Castle, and journey towards the Princes : but they, knowing that the Giant had Forces in the way, thought convenient to attend till the Subjects of the Prince, who had been sent to, should come. But before their arrival there, a Squadron of the Giants Knights, who were quartered abroad, came to the Castle; but not being admitted entrance, much wondered at the cause, till at length they understood it; wherefore they sent to, and acquainted the other Squadrons with the matter, desiring them to come presently to them, and they would attempt the re-taking of the Castle. At this summons all the other Forces came up, and being met together, and resolving what to do, they knowing a private and unknown way into the Castle, several of the most courageous and adventurous of them entered a Vault which led into the Castle, the rest still standing before the Castle Walls. Our valiant Princes stood upon the Battlements, expecting the assault; but they were mightily surprized and amazed, when they saw a great number of armed Knights were entered the Castle, and they knew not which way; at length they perceived that they issued out of a Vault, and therefore they went thither to stop it: but those who were already entered hindered them, and engaged in fight with the Princes, while more of their Companions entered. Those who were without the Castle, seeing our Knights to quit the Walls, understood what was the occasion of it, and that some of their Companions were entered the Castle, and had begun a fight which they intended to assist them in; and thereupon, they being provided with scaling Ladders, and other such like warlike instruments, they mounted the Castle Walls; which our Knights seeing, were forced to divide themselves, and run, part of them, thither to resist them. Thus were they engaged in two several places, and the fight became very bloody; and in the end would have

have been very hazardous to our Princes, but that they perceived a great Troop, at some distance, marching up towards them, and it was not long ere they knew them to be their Friends; for they set upon the Assailants so violently, that they caused them to leave the assault, and descend to assist their Companions; our Knights seeing this, now bent all their Forces against those who came up out of the Vault, whose numbers did not long increase, as they had done, because they staid in the field, to help their Companions without the Castle; so that our Princes seeing that their enemies were but small, and not likely now to increase, they laid so lustily about them, that they put them into much confusion; for they did not understand the condition of their Companions without, and wondered that they had no more of their assistance. The Prince Arfileo, as being chiefly concerned, performed wonders, killing several Knights with his own hand: and the Prince Clarineo again advanced the head of the Giant Fustagon on a Spear, on the Walls of the Castle: at the sight of this, both Parties, as well those within as without; seeing the head of their Chief, whom they did not believe to be dead, were so dead-hearted, that they gave way to their Enemies, and, throwing down their weapons, fled. Those who were within the Castle were taken Prisoners, and disposed amongst their Companions; and the rest without were pursued, and most of them slain by the hands of the merciless Country-men. And thus was this Adventure fully finished, to the perfect joy of all the Princes; who setting open the Castle Gates, admitted the Knight of the Stars, and all his Company, to enter the Castle. And now it was concluded that all the Princes, and the Princess Leonarda, should leave that place, and travel to her Fathers Castle; and the custody of that Castle was given to the Knight of the Stars, and some of his Companions, who were left to keep it for the Princess Leonarda, to whom it was given by the Princes Don Clarineo, and Don Lucidamore, who promised so to undertake with the Emperor their Father, that she should have a grant of that, and all other Possessions of the Giant Fustagon. And thus having secured every thing in the Castle, by a sufficient power which they left, and taking a considerable Guard with them, they departed, and in short time arrived at the Castle of the Princess Leonarda's Father;

Father; who made them very welcome, and promised to attend them to Constantinople, to the presence of the Emperor. Few days stayed this Company to refresh themselves, and then they set on; the Company consisted of the old Prince, and his Daughter, the two Princes, Don Clarineo, and Don Lucidamore, and Don Arsileo, and several good Knights in their Company: and during this journey, Don Arsileo enjoyed so much pleasure in the company of his beloved Lady, that he thought himself very well rewarded for all the pains he had taken, and the hazards he had underwent for her; and to make his joyes the more compleat, not only she, but her Father also promised, that at his arrival at Constantinople, if the Emperor consented, he should be married to her. He having received this pleasing answer, desired his Cousins, Don Clarineo, and Don Lucidamore, to assist him with the Emperor for his consent: they promised to effect his desires. And thus did they travel till they came to that great and famous City of Constantinople, where, when they came, they were met by the noblest of the Citizens, without the City, and soon after by all the Court; and at the Court Gates, by the Emperor and Emperess. Great was the joy, on all sides, for their so happy return; for the Emperor had heard of all the Adventures at the Castle of Fustigon, and had intended to send them relief, but that he heard all was very well accomplished. The Emperess was joyfull at the sight of her Children; and after she had embraced them, she kindly received the Princess Leonarda, and her Cousin Arsileo; and she and the Emperor, understanding the love that was between them, consented to their marriage; and sent unto Hungary, to the King his Father, to acquaint him therewith. But the Emperor not questioning his consent, in regard the Lady was not only fair, but discreet and virtuous, and the addition of Fustigon's Dominions, to those of her Fathers, being added, would make her a considerable Fortune; wherefore the Wedding was agreed to be solemnized within ten days after: against which time, and as well in honour of the Wedding, as for joy of the safe return of the two Princes, Don Clarineo, and Don Lucidamore, great provision was made for several Triumphs to be then had and kept, not only in the Court, but also in the City.

The

The long wished for Wedding-day being come, great joy it was to all; but more particularly to the Prince Arsileo, and the fair Princess Leonarda, whose joyes were now compleated, and he reaped all the happiness he was capable of in the Company of so lovely, and beloved a Wife. But although the joy was universal, and the triumphs many and delightful, yet they had an end; and now our Princes had time to rest at home, for the pains they had taken abroad. But so great was the pleasure that these valiant Knights took in seeking Adventures, that it was not long ere Don Clarineo, remembering the promise he had formerly made to his friend Peter of Ireland, Knight of the Keys, to make search after his lost Lady Magdalena, Princess of Sardinia, he was therefore resolved to make a diligent search and inquiry after her; and to that end, pretending to take a short voyage about the Islands of the Mediterranean Sea, he armed and equipped a Vessel for that purpose; and being only accompanied by a Dwarf, who usually attended him, he embarked. He caused the Master of the Ship to put in at several Islands, where he went on shore, to inquire and seek after the Princess Magdalena, or to find out some other Adventure; but he, meeting with nothing that was considerable, resolved to sail to Sardinia, and inquire what news was there to be heard of her. He, being landed at the Port, rode up into the Country, and his ears were soon saluted with the pleasant noise of a Horn, and the cry of a pack of Hounds, that were in pursuit of a goodly Stag; he saw the Beast, and soon after the Company, which was large and gallant; for, upon inquiry, he understood, that there was the King and Queen, and most of the Court, and one Lady, who was more remarkable then the rest, who was called Florida, and was Princess of Sicilia. This Lady was not only beautiful, but also of a brave, gallant, and generous aspect, and so used to ride on hunting, that she sat upon her Horse in a very becoming posture. Don Clarineo was mightily taken with this Lady, and therefore rode up to her, and kept near her all the time of the hunting; and she seeing him so gallant a Personage, was as curious in beholding him. The hunting being ended, by the death of the Stag, and the King, Queen, and Princess, being about to return to the Court, our Knight turned about to leave their company: the Princess seeing that, cried out, Nay, Sir

Sir Knight: be not so discourteous to leave us; but as you have taken pains in hunting, so go with us, and participate of the prey. He, seeing he had an invitation, came up to her, and making his due reverence to the King and Queen, and then addressing himself to her, replied, That it was enough for him to have the honour of her company abroad, and not to presume any further. The King replied, That he should be welcome; his Court being always ready to receive and entertain Persons of his quality. Our Knight would not now be so discourteous as to leave them, but attending them to the Court was dismissed; and then he appeared to be one of the most personable and lovely Personages of that age; and now, if the Princess Floride had any esteem for him when in Armour, it was then very much increased: and indeed she did so look upon him, that the little god Cupid wounded her; and from her fair and sparkling eyes shot back darts that wounded the very heart of the Prince Clarineo. He very well understood her quality to be Princely, and therefore suitable to his own, and thereupon resolved to love her: and the only obstacle that arose in her breast, why she did not make the same resolve, of loving him, was, because she was ignorant of his. But she, being desirous to know it, commanded a Damsel, who attended her, to inquire it of his Dwarf. But talking time being come, he was invited by the King to sit down with them; to which he consented. The King also desired to know his Quality: but he, being resolved to conceal that, replied, That he was a Grecian Knight, of little fame, known by the name of the Knight of Cupid (he having the resemblance of that blind god on his shield.) At this answer the King was content; but so was not the Princess Florida, who earnestly desired to know his Quality; and therefore, that evening, she employed her Damsel; who although she inquired of the Dwarf, yet she lost her labour: for he gave her no other answer, then his Lord had already given the King. Don Clarineo chanced to come by, where he saw the Damsel with his Dwarf; wherefore knowing her to belong to the Princess, he had some hopes of his suit: he believing that he might gather somewhat from the servant of the mind of her Mistress, took her by the hand, and asking if she pleased to command any thing of him: she replied, No. Whereupon he asked his Dwarf, whether she had desired any

any thing of him: He, not daring to conceal any thing from his Lord and Master, presently acquainted him with the desires of the Damsel. Our Knight hearing this, told the Damsel, that his Dwarf, indeed, knew no more of him then he had said; but if her Lady desired any further knowledge of him, if she pleased to admit him to a private conference, he would satisfy her in all she pleased, and be ready to obey her in all her commands. The Damsel, making an obeysance, left him, and went to her Lady; to whom she recounted the substance of her message, and withal added, that the Knight of Cupid was a very courteous Knight. The Princess spent that night, and the next day, in consulting with her self, what to do; and at last resolved, to give him a meeting in the Garden that evening: and therefore commanded her Damsel to acquaint him, or the Dwarf, with her intentions. Our Knight, in the mean time, had made all diligent inquiry about the Princess Magdalena, but could not hear any news of her since she left the Court with the Knight of the Keys: and although the King, being much grieved for the loss of his Daughter, had made all diligent search throughout all the adjoining Countries, yet he could never hear any news of her, or of the Knight. After he had made his inquiry, and was passing through the Garden, he was met by the Princess of Sicilia's Damsel; who seeing him gave him the opportunity of saluting her. He soon inquired of her Ladies health; and, whether she was still desirous of knowing any thing of him: She replied, that, indeed, her Lady was desirous of a further acquaintance with him; and that, for her own part, she should be very willing to assist and contribute all she could thereunto. He kindly thanking her, replied, that he should be very thankful to her for any thing she should do for him, and should endeavour to recompense her kindness; and withal, as an earnest of his good will to her, he pulling a Diamond Ring from his finger gave it unto her. She kindly accepted of his present, and told him, in requital, that if he would please to meet her there that evening, about eleven of the Clock, she would come; and she hoped so to order the matter, that her Lady should come with her. He, being glad of this proposition, was very thankful; and, begging her to perform her promise, he promised not to fail on his part. She, having now very well discharged her message,

Sir Knight, be not so discourteous to leave us; but as you have taken pains in hunting, so go with us, and participate of the prey. He, seeing he had an invitation, came up to her, and making his due reverence to the King and Queen, and then addressing himself to her, replied, That it was enough for him to have the honour of her company abroad, and not to presume any further. The King replied, That he should be welcome; his Court being always ready to receive and entertain Persons of his quality. Our Knight would not now be so discourteous as to leave them, but attending them to the Court was disarmed; and then he appeared to be one of the most personable and lovely Personages of that age; and now, if the Princess Florida had any esteem for him when in Armour, it was then very much increased: and indeed she did so look upon him, that the little god Cupid wounded her; and from her fair and sparkling eyes shot back darts that wounded the very heart of the Prince Clarineo. He very well understood her quality to be Princely, and therefore suitable to his own, and thereupon resolved to love her: and the only obstacle that arose in her breast, why she did not make the same resolve, of loving him, was, because she was ignorant of his. But she, being desirous to know it, commanded a Damsel, who attended her, to inquire it of his Dwarf. But eating-time being come, he was invited by the King to sit down with them; to which he consented. The King also desired to know his Quality: but he, being resolved to conceal that, replied, That he was a Grecian Knight, of little fame, known by the name of the Knight of Cupid (he having the resemblance of that blind god on his Shield.) At this answer the King was content; but so was not the Princess Florida, who earnestly desired to know his Quality; and therefore, that evening, she employed her Damsel; who although she inquired of the Dwarf, yet she lost her labour: for he gave her no other answer, then his Lord had already given the King. Don Clarineo chanced to come by, where he saw the Damsel with his Dwarf; wherefore knowing her to belong to the Princess, he had some hopes of his suit: he believing that he might gather somewhat from the servant of the mind of her Mistress, took her by the hand, and asking, if she pleased to command any thing of him: she replied, No. Whereupon he asked his Dwarf, Whether she had desired any

any thing of him: He, not daring to conceal any thing from his Lord and Master, presently acquainted him with the desires of the Damsel. Our Knight hearing this, told the Damsel, that his Dwarf, indeed, knew no more of him then he had said; but if her Lady desired any further knowledge of him, if she pleased to admit him to a private conference, he would satisfy her in all she pleased, and be ready to obey her in all her commands. The Damsel, making an obeysance, left him, and went to her Lady; to whom she recounted the substance of her message, and withal added, that the Knight of Cupid was a very courteous Knight. The Princess spent that night, and the next day, in consulting with her self, what to do; and at last resolved, to give him a meeting in the Garden that evening: and therefore commanded her Damsel to acquaint him, or the Dwarf, with her intentions. Our Knight, in the mean time, had made all diligent inquiry about the Princess Magdalena, but could not hear any news of her since she left the Court with the Knight of the Keys: and although the King, being much grieved for the loss of his Daughter, had made all diligent search throughout all the adjoining Countries, yet he could never hear any news of her, or of the Knight. After he had made his inquiry, and was passing through the Garden, he was met by the Princess of Sicilia's Damsel; who seeing him gave him the opportunity of saluting her. He soon inquired of her Ladies health; and, whether she was still desirous of knowing any thing of him: She replied, that, indeed, her Lady was desirous of a further acquaintance with him; and that, for her own part, she should be very willing to assist and contribute all she could thereunto. He kindly thanking her, replied, that he should be very thankful to her for any thing she should do for him, and should endeavour to recompense her kindness; and withal, as an earnest of his good will to her, he pulling a Diamond Ring from his finger gave it unto her. She kindly accepted of his present, and told him, in requital, that if he would please to meet her there that evening, about eleven of the Clock, she would come; and she hoped so to order the matter, that her Lady should come with her. He, being glad of this proposition, was very thankful; and, begging her to perform her promise, he promised not to fail on his part. She, having now very well discharged her message,

message, returned to her Lady, whom she acquainted with all passages: and she thanked her for her discreet management, promising her a reward: but when she looked on that Ring which the Prince had given the Damsel, she, considering the richness of it, concluded, that he must be a Princely Person that could give so costly a Jewel on so small an account; and from thence concluded a good omen to her affairs.

The time appointed being come, our two Lovers failed not to be at the place appointed, he alone, and she attended with her Damsel. The Prince, seeing her approach, stepped forwards, and, falling on his knee, kissed her hand; and thus began: Madam, how great a favour you have done to me, I am not unsensible of; and I shall for the future endeavor, by my utmost service for you, to acknowledge, although I shall never be able to requite the kindness you do me at this present: Therefore, I beseech you, Madam, if you have any particular service to employ me in, do but command, and I shall readily obey you. She, hearing him make a stop, replied, Sir Knight, I am not ignorant of my duty to those of your quality; and that I ought to be courteous to all strange Knights, but more especially to such as resemble you, and are so obliging as you seem to be: but before I can make payment of one debt, which I owe you for your courtesie, I am desirous to be indebted to you for another, which I hope you will not refuse me. Madam, replied he, there is nothing within the compass of my power, but I shall readily obey you in; therefore, I pray speak, and I shall obey you. Then, Sir, said she, I pray, think it not strange, if I desire to know of you the present occasion of your travels; and withal, to acquaint me with your true quality and condition. Madam, said he, there is nothing else that I had a desire to conceal from you, only these two things; but since you have my promise to satisfy you, I shall do it, and that freely and sincerely, although I should run a very great hazard thereby: Therefore, Madam, as to your first request, I am a Friend unto a Knight, who was sometime since well known in this Court, by the name of the Knight of the *Keys*, who so far gained the good will of the Princess *Magdalena*, that she, leaving her Parents, went with him towards his Country of *Ireland*: but so great was their misfortune, that he never arrived there since; but by misfortune losing her, he travels about the World in search of her: and I, being his particular Friend, according to a former

former promise to him, have searched several Countries for her; but hitherto in vain; wherefore, hoping to hear of her in her Father's Court, I am come hither for that purpose. And now, Madam, continued he, I have given you an answer to your first demand, what is the occasion of my present travels; and I hope you will take it as an answer to the second, because I have told you, that I am a Friend to the Knight of the *Keys*. Truly, replied she, you have given me full satisfaction to my first request; and I am as well as you sorry, that you cannot accomplish your desire in hearing news of my dear Cousin the Princess *Magdalena*, whose loss hath sensibly grieved me; but have some kind of hopes, that she may be heard of, because I did believe, she and the Knight of the *Keys* did perish together; but since he is alive and well, I have good hopes, that one day we shall find her so too. But, Sir, although you have given me great pleasure and satisfaction in answering my first desire, yet I shall not rest there; but desire you to answer my other more particularly, and I question not, but I shall be as well, if not better, pleased with the knowledge of your true quality: wherefore, I pray, refuse not to give me the satisfaction I expect. Our Knight, seeing the importunity of the Princess, and partly guessing at the reason of it, replied thus: Madam, since it must be so, I will be contented to obey you; provided you likewise promise me, not to declare your knowledge of me to the King, Queen, or any of the Court; but to carry your self to me, as if you had not been acquainted with my quality. The Princess, being very earnest to know this secret, promised all he desired: whereupon he thus replied; Madam, although my many occasions have, for the greatest part of my life, kept me in remote Countries, yet, I suppose, you have heard of me by my name, when I shall tell you, that I am called *Clarineo of Spain*, and am Son unto the Emperor *Don Bellaneo of Greece*. Oh, my Lord! (replied the Princess) how will you pardon the disrespect I have had of you? and thereupon would have thrown her self on her knees, and have kissed his hand; but he, seeing her intent, held her in his arms; kindly saluting her; and so they placed themselves on a bench there adjoining, where, when they were seated, the Prince thus began: Madam, I hope the knowledge of my name and quality will not prejudice me in your opinion; for I had rather be the meanest Knight in the World, and be esteemed by you, than be Master of the greatest Empire, and not

in your favor. Ah, my Lord (replied she) if I had a great esteem for you, which I cannot but acknowledge, before I knew your quality, it is now much more increased, since I better know you ; but, I doubt, the knowledge hereof will be to my disadvantage, there being so great a distance in my quality from yours. Further she would have proceeded in her discourse, but doubting she had discovered too much already, she held her peace ; and he, not being ignorant in the affairs of Love, seeing what condition she was in, made her no answer, but what she received by caresses, and strict embraces, which he gave her.

Although they spake again, it was but to discover that to one another which they well enough knew already ; which was, their love to one another ; and that they discovered more with their eyes, then their tongues were able to express. But he, knowing it was convenient and necessary, promised her a lasting love : and she confessed that hers was very violent ever since she first saw him. And now, my Lord, (said she) I have made this confession to you, what use will you make of it ? will you leave me ? or how will you dispose of me ? or order me how I shall dispose of my self. To this so passionate discourse, he replied, That she might command him what she pleased, for he would be wholly directed by her : but (continued he) if it might stand with your good liking, I would prosecute my intended voyage, in search of the Princess *Magdalena* ; and upon the first knowledge of her, or my return home, which shall first happen, I will certainly visit you, either here, or in your Father's Court, and desire you in marriage. She thanked him for this loving promise ; but withal she replied, That although he was very desirous to hear news of her Kinswoman *Magdalena*, yet there was so much hazard and danger in travelling to unknown Countries, that she could hardly give her consent to it. He replied, That he would make all possible haste of his return, and then inviolably keep his word with her. She, hearing his resolution, did not absolutely contradict him, but then desired to know, when he intended to depart ? He replied, in four days. She was unwilling he should be gone so suddenly. And thus did they spend some hours together in an Arbor in the Garden, and the Damsel still walking at some distance to spy if any should chance to come to disturb them ; but she, in the end, being weary of this employment, came to them, and

and told them, that it would be more convenient for her, and them both, to leave the cold Garden, and enter the Chamber ; for, said she, I see that you are so well agreed here, that there is no danger of your falling out there. The Prince hearing her proposition, was very well pleased therewith ; and desired the Lady, to let it be as her Damsel had directed. She answered, and consented, by her silence ; and so they went on. Being entered the Chamber, they sat down on the side of the bed, and there they renewed their protestations of an inviolable love, which should last till death. And now, having said all that could be on that occasion, the Prince was desirous to proceed further with her ; the opportunity of the time, place, and her great and ardent affection to him, perswaded him, that she would not refuse him ; wherefore he again began with kissing and embracing her, and used all those amorous actions that might induce her to be kind to him ; so that in the end she meltingly fell into his arms, and, as being wholly overcome by him, she permitted him to take his full content and pleasure with her. The Damsel was not far off, but had retired into an adjoining Chamber, where she lay till she thought this love-passion was over, and then she came out to them, telling them, that it was time for them to part, and him to be gone, for the day then approached, and it would be dangerous for him to stay there any longer. She understanding that the Damsel said true, and doubting the worst again, conjured the Prince to constancy, and had a further promise of marriage, which he protested should be at the furthest when he had ended the search of the Princess *Magdalena* ; and thereupon he gave her a Ring, before the Damsel, as a pledge of his faith, and as a token of the promise he made her ; and then, sending out the Damsel to see if any body were in the Garden, he took a solemn farewell of her ; and the Damsel returning, and telling him that the coast was clear, he left his Lady, and departed to his Lodging. And now our Lovers had proceeded thus far, they were more enamored of each other then they had been ; and during the time of his stay, he spent all the nights with her : and the fatal day being come of their separation, they both seemed to be very much disturbed ; but she, being resolved to put a project she had in her head into execution, was the better satisfied, and made provision accordingly.

He again promised to obey her in all things, and not to fail in any thing he had promised her; and now the very hour of his departure being come, and that he had taken his leave of the King and Queen, and also of her, telling her, that he should within one hour set sail; and so he left her. She, in prosecution of her intention, having put all things into readiness before, discoloured her face, and made that somewhat brown that was before very fair and clear; and putting her self into a Suit and Coat, habited like a Page, and turning up her own Hair, which was as yellow as the Gold, or rather as radiant as the Sun-beams, she put on a Periwig of another colour, and so disguised her self, that she was hardly knowable to her self; and putting a parcel of rich Jewels, and some Coin, into her pocket, and a Letter, which she had written, into her hands, she went to the Sea-side, where she had not waited long before he came. She had so perfect a confidence, that he did not at all distrust her; but she, coming up to him, delivered a Letter to him; which he opening, read these words.

The Letter of the Princess *Florida*, to the Prince *Clarineo*.

Sir,

As a trial of your Love, and an effect of your Promise to obey me in all things, I make bold to request this of you, to entertain this *Denzel* into your Service; I dare warrant his Fidelity. And although you are supplied with a faithful Servant already, yet, I pray, accept of this from me, who hath commission from me, only sometimes to put you in mind of

Your faithful and constant Friend,

FLORIDA.

Don Clarineo, having read the Letter, looked steadfastly on the Messenger, and she as firmly upon him; but he made no discovery: but thus he said, Most amiable Youth, how welcome you are to me, my usage of you shall testify; and you shall always find that in me, as if

Part III. The Honour of Chivalry. 47
if my beloved Princess were present. Good Sir, (replied the disguised Lady) your only acceptance of me into your Service is all I desire; and if I can serve you in any thing, assure your self of my Fidelity to my utmost ability.

This discourse being ended, he presently went aboard, and carried his Page Florello with him, for so had she named her self; and the wind serving, they hoisted up sails, and departed. When night came, the Prince not only caused his Page to lie in the Cabin, but also in the same bed with him: he was very unwilling at the first, but it being the Prince's absolute command, he obeyed. But although they lay together all the term of the voyage, yet did not the Prince suspect his sex and quality; but he passed with him, and all others in the Ship, for a Boy. And thus did they travel up and down all those Seas, and searched several Islands, but to no purpose, till at length to Ireland they came, as shall be declared in the next Chapter.

CHAP. VI.

How the Knight of *Cupid* travelled into *England*, went to the famous City of *London*, and from thence to *Windsor*, where a Combat was to be fought; for that a Countess was accused of Adultery by one of her Damsels, who was hired thereunto by the Countess's Brother in Law. The King ordering that the Damsel should provide a Champion to fight on her behalf, she had a fierce Giant; and the Countess being unprovided of a Champion, the Knight of *Cupid* undertook the Combat on her behalf: he fights with, and kills the Giant; and thereupon the Damsel, confessing the accusation to be false, is burnt; and the Countess's Brother in Law is banished. How the Knight of *Cupid* had in vain sought for the Princess *Magdalena* in *England*, and, taking shipping at *Westchester*, travelled into *Ireland*.

Thus did the Prince *Clarineo* travel from one Country to another, in searching for the Princess *Magdalena*, wishing by all means to find her, that he might return to his beloved Princess *Florida*; who although she was very near him, yet he was

was ignorant thereof: but it was great joy and comfort for them to h, in regard she did always see him, and converse with him, and their discourse being, for the most part, about her. And now, our Prince having sailed to the western parts of the World, he arrived at England, and there he landed, resolving to visit most of the considerable parts of that Kingdom; and therefore he caused three Horses to be disembarked, for himself, his Squire, Florello, and his Dwarf; and ordering his Vessel to sail about most part of the Island, and meet him at Westchester, which is the nearest Seaport Town in England to Ireland, whither he also intended to travel, and see if in the Country of his Friend, Peter of Ireland, he might hear any news of the Prince's Magdalena. He and his Attendants being thus mounted on horse-back, they rode on towards the great and famous City of London, where the King of that Country kept his Court; being come thither, the King, and all the Court, were just then removing to the ancient Castle of Windsor, for the trial of a Cause that was there within few days to be ended by Combat; the occasion of which Combat was this:

A Countess of that Kingdom having three Children by her Husband, he died, leaving her a Widow; and she seized upon the Estate for the use of her Children, they being as yet but young: The Earl, her Husband, had a Brother, who was very desirous of having the Children in his keeping, because he might, under that pretence, receive the Rent of his Brother's Lands; but to this the Countess would in no wise agree. Wherefore her Brother in Law was so angry, and being of a wicked and perverse nature, being ambitious of Honour, and covetous of the Estate of his Brother, he had contrived a way how to gain all the Estate to himself; wherefore he, by great presents in hand, and many fair promises of greater matters, drew into confederacy with him a Damsel, who had lived many years with his Sister in Law; and her he caused to give out, that the three Children of her Lady were not begotten by the Earl her Husband, but by another who kept her company; by this means proving her Lady to be an Adulteress, and the Children Bastards. He seemed, at first, to be surprized at this strange discourse, which he himself had framed; but, as he said, his Brother's Honour being in question, he caused the wicked Damsel to be carried before the King; where

she not only justified this report, but made oath of the same; whereupon the Countess was sent for, but all the answer she could give, was in the denial of the fact, with asseverations and tears. The King hearing the case, and intending, like a good Prince, to do justice, took this order; that, by a day prefixed, the Damsel should provide a Champion, who should maintain and justify what she had said; and that the Countess should likewise provide her Champion, to fight with the other in vindication of her honour; and that if the Damsel's Champion should be vanquished, the Damsel should be burnt alive; and if the Countess's Champion should be vanquished, she and her Children should be bereft of all the Estate of her dead Husband, and left to seek their fortunes where they could. This was set down by the King as absolute. Now the time of this Combat approaching, the King was going to Windsor, which was the place appointed where it should be fought. The Earl's Brother did before hand believe what would be the King's order in the matter; and therefore he had provided a Champion for the Damsel, who was a monstrous great Giant, bred up in the Isle of Man, a Country thereto adjoining. The Damsel being thus provided for, was out of all care and fear of further harm: but the Countess could not procure any to undertake her cause, (though all men believed her virtuous) so great was the terror every one had of this monstrous Giant. And now was the time very near come, when the Combat was to be fought; and all Persons concerned, and a very great Assembly of People were come together to Windsor. Our Prince Clariceo, now known by the name of the Knight of Cupid, went among others, and was very much concerned on the Countess's behalf; for he could not hear of any Champion that she was provided with. He had some discourses with his Squire Florello upon this occasion, telling him, that he wondered at the cowardice of the English Knights, that would not undertake this Giant; adding, that if the Countess had no Champion, he himself would undertake her cause. Florello hearing this, and doubting some such matter, replied, I question not, my Lord, but that the Countess is wronged, and that she hath bad fortune to have so monstrous an Enemy, and none to undertake him; but wicah, I think it would be deemed rashness in you, who are wholly a stranger to her, to indanger your life.

in a Combat so hazardous. The Prince replied, That he was bound, by the order of Knight-hood, to assist all Ladies, especially those that were distressed; and that he could not exercise his valour better then on this account: and (continued he) I should not be worthy of my Lady *Florida*, if, for her sake, I shall not assist those that resemble her. I, but (replied Florello) I know this, that if she were here present, she would hardly give consent that you should, upon any consideration whatsoever, put your Person into so great hazard. I question not but I should persuade her thereto, replied he; and to the end that you may hereafter acquaint her with this affair, we will go together to the Countess, and see in what condition she is, and accordingly ingage for her. Hereupon they presently went to the Countess's Lodgings, where they were admitted. The Knight of Cupid being entred, and late down, asked her, Whether she was yet provided of a Champion? To which she replied, No; and that the next day was the day appointed for the Combat: and then, continued she, my Children will be undone, and it shall be the last day of my life; for it will be impossible for me to out-live my shame: and if all fail, I will be my own Executioner. She having ended her lamentable discourse, finished with such a deluge of tears, that drew compassion from all there present.

The Knight of Cupid seeing so many accompany her in her lamentations, and none offer to assist her in her cause, told her, That he had so much confidence in the justice of her cause and innocency, that he would undertake the Combat in her behalf. She, hearing what he had said, replied, Ah! Sir Knight, how much am I obliged to you for your kind offer, which I dare not accept of? not so much out of a sense of my own misfortune, as for fear of yours; for the Monster, who is the Champion of my Adversary, is so mighty, that he is thought to be able to encounter with four of the best and valiantest Knights in this Kingdom: therefore, Sir Knight, I should be mighty sorry to adventure you single against so vile a Monster; and then, should you miscarry, as I doubt you must, although I am innocent, I should be then concluded guilty, and you would to no purpose lose your life in my defence; therefore I think it best to conclude my self unfortunate, and not make others, who are wholly unconcerned, suffer with me. To this the Knight of Cupid replied; Madam, if you please to accept of me for your Champion, do not question any thing else.

else further; but leave all to Fate, that hath formerly strengthened me to overcome and vanquish Enemies altogether as redoubtable as this Monster. His Squire, Florello, hearing this, and being no longer able to forbear, said, Good my Lord, consider what you do; and remember, that as this Lady supposes she can have little benefit by your assistance; so (you know) the Princess *Florida* will (if you be unfortunate) receive so great a grief, that it will be the ending of her days: and so you will thereby be the occasion of the death of her your self, and do no kindness for the Countess, but rather leave her the more suspected. All that you can say (replied the Knight of Cupid) is nothing, for I question not the Victory, if there were two such Monsters; so great confidence have I (said he to the Countess) in the justness of your cause, and the assistance of that power that hath never yet failed me: therefore, if you please to accept me as your Champion, I will undertake the Combat on your behalf. The Countess, hearing his resolution, kindly thanked him; and he promised not to fail the next day to be ready Armed at all points in the field; and so they parted.

The next day being come, and the hour of the Combat approaching, and all things provided to receive the Combatants, Judges, and Spectators, the King entred, and mounted on a Scaffold, where was also the Queen, and the chiefest of the Nobles; two Judges, who were appointed to be Judges of the field, late at the King's feet. The Countess, and her three Children, being clad in mourning apparel, late by themselves; and the Damself, with the Brother of the Earl, by themselves, on another Scaffold. All things being thus ordered, at the sound of several Trumpets, the Giant entred the Lists; he was mounted on a mighty Horse, and armed with an Armour made of the Shells of several Fishes, which were harder then any Diamond: his Helmet was carried by one Knight on foot, and his Lance by another. He being entred, the cause of the Combat was proclaimed, and the King's award thereupon: that done, the Judges demanded of the Damself, If she would still justify what she had said? She replied, Yes: and thereupon produced the Giant for her Champion. The Countess was then called to, and asked, Whether, or no, she was guilty of the fact wherewith she was charged? She replied, Not guilty. And her Champion being demanded, she told

the Judges, That her chiefest Champion was the God of Justice, from whom she expected and hoped for Justice; but for any humane Champion, she was unprovided. The Giant hearing this, began to prance about, and boastingly to say, What is it that deters these cowardly Knights, that they come not forth to the Battle? Surely they all conclude her guilty, or else are fearful of my presence; but if that be the cause, if any be so bold as to undertake her cause, I will engage with any two, three, or four of them. That shall not need, proud Monster, (replied the Knight of Cupid, who was now entred the Lists) for I myself (if the Lady please) will undertake you alone; and I question not, but, the justice of her cause assisting me, to make you, in this place, repent these arrogant speeches. Young Dastard, (replied the Giant) what madness possesses your brain, to be so bold to come into my presence, whose very looks have vanquished twenty such Knights, and made them run away like sheep? You shall find it much otherwise then you expect, (replied the Knight of Cupid) as I hope, ere many hours are past: and therefore, Madam, (said he to the Countess) I hope you will admit me for your Champion, and then I will do my utmost devoir to vindicate your Honour. Alas, Sir, (replied she) I must, and do accept of you; and if you have but as good success as my cause deserves, you may (though as yet improbably) expect the better in the Combat. He made his reverence to her; and then went to the Judges, who accordingly admitted him. He had hitherto been bare-headed, and thereby discovered one of the most manly, but withal, the most pleasant countenances that had been seen; and he did somewhat resemble that blind god Cupid that was pictured on his Shield: so that all the Spectators did much pity, that one so young and handsome should endanger himself against so monstrous a Creature. He having now made his reverences to the King and Queen, rode to the end of the Lists, and took his Helmet from his Squire Florello, and his Lance from his Dwarf; and buckling on his Helmet, he, putting his Lance in his Rest, expected the sound of the Trumpets, which beginning, he spurred on amain, and encountering his Enemy on the breast, made him bend backwards; and he himself had such an encounter on the Shield, that it much bruised it, and so they passed on: but both of them finding that their Lances were yet whole, and that they had not much damaged one another, they

they again began another career, which was performed with such violence, that the Giant fell from his Horse; and the Knight of Cupid was dismounted, with his saddle between his legs. The Giant, who was fallen, soon got on his feet, and, being enraged at his misfortune, drawing his Sword, came up to the Knight of Cupid, who was hardly ready to receive him, he was so incumbered with the saddle, so that he received a mighty blow on the Helmet, that he thought all had been fire; but he coming to himself, returned the Giant so mighty a blow on the arm, that finding the way where the shells were closed, it much wounded him. He who had never found so weighty a blow from any Knight, or Giant, in all his life, was now so enraged, that seeing his blood come, he roared like a Bull, and lifting up his mighty Sword in the Air, intended to cleave the Knight in pieces; which he seeing avoided, but not so well, but that he was wounded in the leg. And now they, being both wounded, gave and received several blows, which made the blood to issue out of their wounds. Great was the wonder of the Spectators, seeing the Knight of Cupid hold out so balliantly against the Giant; who being so assured, as he thought, of the Victory, before he began, and now kept off so long, was grown mad with anger, and let fall so many blows, and so fast, that he was out of breath. This the Knight of Cupid saw, and only warded them with his Shield, or stepping aside avoided them. The Giant, although he was near tired with the continual pains he had taken, yet believing by the Knights only defending himself, and avoiding his blows, that he was near vanquished, laid on the faster, and that so long, that he was forced to retire for breath; which the Knight of Cupid seeing, he made up to him, and now, being in good heart and lusty, he poured so many blows upon the Giant, that he wounded him in several places, he being so unweildy, that he could not turn away with that nimbleness the Knight of Cupid had done; and now all were in good hopes that the Knight of Cupid would have the better of the Combat; for the Giant was so tired, that he could hardly defend himself, much less offend his Enemy; and the smart of his wounds much more tormented him. He was now therefore so much enraged, that he fell in upon the Knight, and desperately wounded him, though he received one himself; but being now near another,

ther, the Giant advanced his Sword, and intended to have cut the Knight in twain; and much hurt it must of necessity have done him, had it hit him fully; but however, he was much prejudiced by the blow: for their Swords meeting, the Giant's Sword cut the Knight of Cupid's Sword in two. Thus was our poor Knight distressed, being thus disarmed; and he had no way to help himself, but only by avoiding the blows of the Giant, who now forced him about the field at his pleasure. Much was the sorrow of all the Assembly; but that of the Countess exceeded them all: but the Page Florello, at this killing spectacle, had fallen down in the field, if the Dwarf had not caught hold of him. The Knight of Cupid, seeing the condition he was in, like a valiant Knight, did not despair; but watched all opportunities to close with the Giant, and dispossess him of his Sword; but that was not only difficult, but dangerous: wherefore he seeing a Battle-ax hanging at the saddle-bow of the Giant, resolved to possess himself of that; wherefore he retired thitherwards, and being now near the Giant's Horse, he threw the Hilt, and that part of his own Sword that remained in his hands, at the Giant's head, that he was astonished at the blow; and in the mean time seized on the Battle-ax. The Giant soon came from his astonishment, and now believing his Enemy to be quite weaponless, advanced towards him, but to his cost; for he not doubting any such matter, came so near, that the Knight of Cupid, hitting the Giant a blow with the mighty Battle-ax, cut off one of his arms, at which he roared like a baited Bull; and the Knight again following his blows, in two more laid him flat upon the earth, and so coming to him, and possessing himself of the Giant's Sword, he therewith smote off his head.

The Knight of Cupid having now, to the joy and admiration of the whole Company, killed his Enemy the Giant, and cut off his head with his own Sword, put it on the Swords point, and presented it to the Countess; saying, Now, Madam, behold! the effects of your Prayers and Tears have given me the Victory over your Enemy; and if this be not enough, let me know what is further to be done. The Countess, coming down from the Scaffold, threw her self at the Knight's feet, with many tears, embracing him: but he, taking her up, went to the King, and the Judges, who told

him, The Conditions of the Combat should be performed: whereupon the false Damsel was seized on, and a pile of Faggots being in readiness, she was carried thither to be burnt. She seeing that the end of her life was at hand, and being accompanied by some Religious Persons, they so far wrought with her, that she confessed, That the Accusation she had made of the Countess was false; and that she was hired thereto by the Countess's Brother in Law. The King, and the Judges, hearing of this, commanded her to be burnt immediately, as a punishment for her offence; and withal, banished the Countess's Brother in Law; so that, if after twenty days he should ever be seen in England, he should be hanged. And now justice being done on all sides, the Queen took the virtuous Countess, and her Children, into her company; and the King desired the valiant Knight of Cupid to go with him: the which he did, and stayed there with him several days; being all that time highly and honourably feasted and entertained by the King, and all the Court.

But some few days being passed, and he hearing no news of what he searched for, the Princess Magdalena, in order to his resolutions, he passed thro' the principal places in England, till he came to Westchester; where, meeting with his Ship, he soon after embarked, leaving the name of the Knight of Cupid spread abroad in all that Country. Being now embarked, with his trusty Squire and Dwarf, he sailed cross those Seas, and landed near the Port of Dublin, then called Ballicleagh, or the Town of Hurdles; it being, as most of all that Country is, built upon Hurdles laid upon a Bog. The whole Country of Ireland was at that time governed by one Monarch, who kept his chief residence at Dublin; but it was divided into four small Kingdoms, or Provinces, called, Leinster, Munster, Ulster, and Conaught: and over these there were several Kings, or Barons. The principal King himself, whose name was Owen Roe O'neale, governed the Province of Leinster particularly; the Governor of Munster, who was his Brother, and Father to Peter of Ireland, was named Mac Guire; the King, or Governor of Ulster, was named Owen O'Connele; and the King, or Governor of Conaught, was named Owen Mac O'Brian. These were the several Governments, and these were the several Governors of this Kingdom, whose Monar-

thy was as antient as any in the World; for it was first formed into a Monarchy by King Gælus, Son to Pharaoh King of Egypt, in the time of the Patriarch Abraham, which was two thousand years before the Incarnation of our blessed Lord and Saviour; and it continues in the same way of Government to this day, never admitting of any but a Kingly Government.

CHAP. VII.

How the Knight of *Cupid*, being arrived in *Ireland*, was set upon by four Knights whom he vanquished, and afterwards more of their Companions; but at length he being overpowered by the Multitude, and refusing to yield to the King, was well nigh slain. How he submitted to the King, who told him of Wars in his Kingdom about *Honna*, Princess of *Ulster*, who was beloved by the Prince of *Conaught*, but could not be suffered to Marry him by reason of the Giant *Flusteron*, who would compel her to be Married to him against her will. How the King with the Knight of *Cupid* went to the Wars, and after many bloody Battels, and the Destruction of many Cities, the War was ended by the sole valour of the Knight of *Cupid*, who in a single Combat slew the Giant *Flusteron*.

The valiant Knight of *Cupid* had no sooner set footing on the Irish shore, but he commanded his Horse to be disembarked, and he mounting his lusty Courser, armed at all points, and attended on by his dear Squire *Florello*, and his trusty Dwarf, who were also mounted, he advanced towards the City of *Dublin*; but long had he not travelled, but he was met by four Knights, armed at all points, who commanded him to stand: he did so, and asked their business. They replied, He must go with them to the King their Master, and take such an Oath as he would impose on him; or else leave his Horse and Arms behind him. He hearing their terms, and not being used to be compelled to any thing so unreasonable, answered, That he should not, with his good will, take any Oath, much less leave his Arms. They told him, That this he must do, or else they would compel him: and thereupon one of them drew near

near to seize on his *Wzidle*; but he who was so forward, paid for his boldness; for he gave him such a blow on the head, with the great end of his Lance, that he beat him breathless under his *Hozles* feet. His Companions seeing this, went all three to seize on him; but he turned his Horse to avoid them, and thereby they passing on, he had the leisure to put his Lance in his Rest, ready to receive them. They seeing him thus provided for them, all three ran against him; and although all three did hit him together, yet they moved him no more then if he had been a Tower: but they failed not so well, for he encountered one with his Lance, so that he was thrown over his *Hozles* crupper; and he seized on another in his arms, as he passed by, and drawing him out of his saddle, threw him on violently against the ground: and the third, who at that time escaped, was worse treated; for at the next encounter, he threw him to the ground, and his Horse upon him: and thus these four Knights being dismounted, he passed on. But they in short time recovering their Horses, and mounting again, pursued him, but at some distance, so that he was near the City Walls before they overtook him; and then they rode up to the Guard there, crying out, Stop the Traytor who hath outraged us. The Guard, which consisted of six Knights, and above twenty Halberdiers, at this cry, put themselves in a posture to seize on him; and one, who was bolder then the rest, reaching out his arm to seize on his *Wzidle*, for his presumption, had it cut off near the shoulder; for the Knight of *Cupid*, having already lost his Lance, had now only his Sword, with which he did such execution, that although they pressed all forwards together, yet he made them stand further off; and those that came within the reach of his Sword, were either killed or maimed: so that in short time all this Company were so routed, that they fled to the City Gate for refuge; and shutting it to, kept him from them. He seeing this, was forced to be content, and wait there to consider what he had to do: but he had not waited long ere the Gate was opened, and a large power was ready to receive him: and in the middle of them was one who seemed to be their Chief, who indeed was their King, *Owen Roe O Neale*; who hearing of the wonderful valour of this single Knight, was himself come in person to see him. But he not taking notice of the great quantity

of Pent, or the presence of the King, made his way towards them, who now having their King in their company, laid lustily about them, and he defended himself very courageously; but however, being overpressed with the multitude that assaulted him on all sides, he could not hinder his Horse from being slain. He finding that his Horse was killed, leaped from him, and again put himself in a posture to withstand his Enemies; and as his Horse had served him living, so now he was serviceable to him being dead; for he leaving him behind him, hindered his Assaultants from pursuing him that way. The King all this while seeing the mighty valour of the Knight of Cupid, was agast; but he had so great a power with him, that he was sure to kill him, if he pleased; but being desirous to have him alive, he cried out, Sir Knight, cease this fruitless exercise of your valour, for in the end you must certainly be slain, and surrender your self to me; who, on the word of a King, promise, that no harm shall be done to you. Our Knight, hearing this, replied, I cannot believe any one in a Country where I have been so discourteously used; and therefore I shall stand upon my own defence; and I hope before I die, yet to send a great number of your discourteous and villainous Subjects to the other World: and thereupon he still so laid about him, that the dead he had killed lay on heaps about him. The King now seeing the death of so many of his Subjects before his eyes, and finding his mercy slighted, commanded a fresh party to fall on him, and help him to pieces.

Just as the King gave this command, the Squire Florello, who had been all this while weeping at the sad condition of his Master, made way up to them, and throwing himself from his Horse, fell on his knees before the King, desiring him to stay the execution of his commands but for one minute, while he spoke with his Lord. The King, by his gestures to his People, commanded them to stay: And then Florello, approaching his distressed Master, fell on his knees before him, Intreating him for Heavens sake, and for his dear Lady Florida's, to yield to the King, who, he knew, would be merciful. By this time the fury of the Knight of Cupid was allayed; and considering, that if he should proceed in fight, he must needs miscarry; it being impossible for one single Knight to oppose an whole Kingdom; he therefore said to Florello, For her sake you named, I shall be ruled by you: and there-

thereupon he advanced towards the King, and taking the point of his Sword in his hand, he presented the hilt of it to the King, saying, I who never yet submitted to any Person throughout the whole Universe, do now commit my self into your hands and power, advising you to make such use of it, as that no other Knight-errant, for my sake, may have cause to complain of your breach of promise. The King accepted his Sword, and commanded he should be guarded to the Castle: When he was come thither, he demanded, Why he had disobeyed his first commands of being brought before him: he intending no more to him then to all others who arrived in his Courts: which was, to impose a reasonable Oath. The Knight of Cupid replied, But it seemed to me to be unreasonable to be compelled to anything, I being willing of my self to do all reasonable things: therefore, Sir, (continued he) if you please to let me know what the Oath is I am to take, I shall then resolve you, whether I think it reasonable; and if so, I shall willingly subscribe to it; but if it be otherwise, and that in point of honour I cannot do it, I will die before I yield to it. Although (said the King) the loss of so many of my Subjects, by you slain, calls to me for justice, and vengeance against you, yet I shall, as a lover of justice to you a Stranger, pardon that, so as for the future you do not disobey me. Know then, (said he) that the Oath I would have you to take, is this, *That you will not, without my leave, take up Arms for any other Prince in this Land*: and there is but justice in the case; because it is owned by all, that I am the Supreme Governor in this Kingdom. I do not contradict what you say, (replied the Knight of Cupid) but however, I desire, before I take an Oath, to be further satisfied in the meaning and reason of it. The King, being very willing to gain this Knight to his party, told him, that although the relation of the full cause was somewhat long, yet he would relate it to him, and thereupon began, This Kingdom, of which I am principal King and Governor, is also governed by three other Princes under me, whereof one is my Brother, and the other two, though allied to me, yet are at this time somewhat disobedient; for, contrary to their Allegiance to me their Sovereign, they have made War against one another, to the disturbance of my whole Kingdom; and although I have sent to them to desist, yet they are so obstinate as to proceed: and now, I being intended, according to my duty to force them to theirs; and to that end, intending to

raise Forces to go against them, have thought fit to take order, That no strange Knights that come into my Dominions, shall assist either of them, and so prolong the War; and to that end I impose this Oath.

I do believe, Sir, (replied the Knight of Cupid) that you have reason on your side; but yet I am not fully satisfied of my taking any Oath, un-til I know the cause why these two other Princes make War. That you may so, I am willing to satisfy you in every thing, replied the King. I tell you, that one of these Princes, named *Owen O Connele*, who is Governor of a Province called *Ulster*, hath a Daughter named *Honora*, who is very fair and virtuous; and, as I understand, is beloved by the other Prince named *Owen Mac O Brian*, who is Governor of another Province called *Conaught*; and, I believe, this Princess doth also love the same *Owen Mac O Brian*: but her Father is not willing (out of some former feuds and quarrels between them) to give her in marriage to him who loves her; but rather chooses to bestow her in marriage with *Flusteron*, a furious Giant, who lives on the Mountains of *Callingsford*, in the Province of *Ulster*, and is indeed but his own Subject. The young Lady is very unwilling to be married to this Giant: and her Sweet-heart, the Prince of *Conaught*, out of desire to have her himself, or at least-wise to hinder her Father from bestowing her on the Giant, hath raised an Army; and the Prince of *Ulster*, her Father, by the assistance of his intended Son in Law, hath raised another; and they have already engaged in a War: which although I have commanded them to desist from, and to leave off, yet they still proceed with such violence, that many have, on both sides, been slain; and all this whole Country, which hath for many years been governed by me in Peace, are now engaged in a bloody War, either on one side or the other; and we are likely, if some speedy course be not taken, to ruine one another: and for this end I thought fit to impose the Oath I have told you of.

The Knight of Cupid having given good attention to the King's discourse, made this answer: Sir, I must confess you have Justice on your side; and I am freely willing, not only to take the Oath you impose, but also to give you my utmost assistance in the War: but wicah, I make bold to tell your Majesty my opinion, that it is very unjust to compel the Princess *Honora* to be married to the Giant, whom she loveth not; and therefore I am unwilling to assist in any thing to compel her thereto: and setting aside that particular affair,

fair, I shall be ready to obey your Majesty in any of your Majesty's commands; and, I hope, with so good success, that I shall make your Majesty some part of amends for the loss of those Subjects who have (through their own rashness) fallen by my hand: for had they acquainted me with the matter, as your Majesty hath done, I should have been as obedient to them, as now I am unto your Majesty.

The King replied, That since what was passed could not be helped, he hoped he would not take any thing amiss on his part, and then all should be forgotten. And thereupon the Knight of Cupid, taking his Oath, had his Sword delivered to him, and was conducted to Lodgings appointed him by the King; whitherto being attended, by his Squire and Dwarf, he retired, and disarming himself, lay down to take some rest, which he had great occasion for, in respect of the great travel he had been at that day. And now the King having the Knight of Cupid in his Court, was resolved forthwith to march with his Army, and try if he could compel these two angry Princes to agree, and lay down their Arms; and therefore he soon after marched towards the famous City of *Drummore*, in the Province of *Ulster*, where then the Prince of that Province resided. Being come near the place, he sent a Messenger to command him, in his Majesty's name, to disband his Army, and suffer all to depart; and promising that if he did so, he would command the Prince of *Conaught* to do so likewise; and if he should refuse so to do, he would turn his whole force upon him, and compel him also to do the same. The Giant *Flusteron*, who was then in the Prince of *Ulster*'s Army, and reposing much confidence in his own strength, returned answer, That if he intended to be obeyed there, he must first see the Prince of *Conaught* obey him in what he said; or else they were resolved to defend themselves.

The King hearing of this proud answer, was resolved to proceed against them: and the Knight of Cupid, who had no affection for the Giant *Flusteron*, but rather inclined to the part of the Prince of *Conaught*, advised the King to assault the City, and take it by force; and thereupon, in short time after, the assault was given, and that so courageously, that notwithstanding all the resistance of the King of *Ulster*, or the Giant *Flusteron*, it was taken; and this furious Monster, seeing that he could not hold it,

was resolved, rather than any else should, to destroy it himself; wherefore he caused it to be set on fire in six several places: so that in few hours that proud and lofty City of Drummore was ruined, and still remains a sad spectacle to all Traabellozs.

The King of Ulster being forced out of this ruined City, fled, with the rest of his Army, to another City of his, called Dundalk, and there fortified himself: and the Giant, Flusteron, going to his own Territories, in the Mountains of Callingsford, gathered together a very strong party, among which he brought many furious Monsters, and with this Recruit he relieved his intended Father in Law, the Prince of Ulster, then in Dundalk; and now believing themselves strong enough, not only to oppose the King, but to meet him in the field, they went out of the City, but to their loss; for the Knight of Cupid, who commanded the War of the Kings Army, did set upon the Giant, and his Party, so vigorously, that notwithstanding all the opposition he could make, he forced them into the City. The King had many approved good Knights, and some Giants who lived on the Mountains of Wicklow, in his own Province of Lemster; but more especially one who commanded the rest, and who was indeed but little inferior to the Giant Flusteron; and these two did often encounter each other, so that the Knight of Cupid had not yet had the opportunity of trying the force of the Giant Flusteron himself, but employing his courage in other places, soon made them fly before him. And now the Enemy was again inclosed within the City, and summons being again given him to obey the King's command, and he proudly refusing, they were assaulted with the same success as before; for after a violent resistance it was taken; and now the Knight of Cupid seeing they so much delighted in firing the former City of Drummore, caused the City of Dundalk to be also fired; and thus in few days were two brave Cities ruined. And now the King of Ulster being still obstinate, and persuaded by the Giant Flusteron, or else indeed over-ruled by him, they fled from one place to another, till they came to the City of Dundrom, which being a famous Sea-port Town, was reckoned to be very secure, and there the Princess's Honors, Daughter to the King of Ulster, resided, she who had been the unhappy cause of all these Wars, which she considering of, and that she might be the cause of her Father's ruin,

con-

considered also which way to prevent it; and therefore sent to her Rober, Owen Mac O Brian, Prince of Conaught, to desire him to lay down his Arms, and leave her to the disposal of her Father; for if he obstinately persisted, she would never have him, although free to dispose of her self; and seeing his first taking up of Arms against her Father had been for her sake, to hinder her marriage with Flusteron, so she desired him, that for her sake, he would also lay down his Arms; and then she questioned not but her Father would be induced to do so too, and a Peace would follow; and she hoped then so to order affairs, as that she might content him and her self. This Prince who was still in Arms in his own Province, and only waited the motions of the two other Armies, now hearing the desires of his Princess, knew not what to resolve on; but being willing to oblige her in all he could, and not thinking it convenient to lay down Arms till the War was ended, he resolved on a third course, which was, to take part with her Father, relieve and assist him against the King, and thereby, as he hoped, oblige him to bestow his Daughter on him; and therefore away he marcheth with all his Army towards the City of Dundrom, where the King and the Knight of Cupid had besieged the King of Ulster. The news of his approach surprized the King; neither did the Prince of Ulster know what he intended: but he soon sent a Letter to acquaint him, that although he had appeared his Enemy when alone in the field; yet now, that he saw him likely to be opposed by the King, and his numerous and victorious Forces, he would join interests with him, till he had free himself of so potent an Enemy; and that then afterwards it would be time enough for them to consider of their own private quarrel, which, he hoped, would be put to a good end; and that at least, if he would not let him have the happiness of having his Daughter, yet he would not compel her, against her will, to be married to another. The Giant Flusteron hearing of this message, and supposing it might turn to his disadvantage, would not permit the Prince of Ulster to return him any answer; but told him, that he would take such order, that the King of Lemster should soon be enforced to withdraw his Forces: and the way he proposed was this; that they, being well fortified, need not fear any assault in that place; and if they should be put to the utmost extremity, they might

might escape by sea; but he did not expect any such matters, because the Prince of Conaught would hinder the King from proceeding so forwards; and he leaving a sufficient Party to secure the Princess, left the City of Dundrom, and went to his own Country, and there raising another great Party, he robed up and down, and at length entering the Province of Lemster, in the King's absence, did much mischief, burning and destroying all places where he came, thinking by this means to force the King to raise his siege, and return home to guard his own Country. But the King not knowing of this mischief, but seeing the Forces of the Prince of Conaught, sent to know, why he came thither armed: commanding him to depart, and disband his Forces. He answered, that he could not indeed deny but that he was his Sovereign, and therefore ought to be obeyed; but that withal, what he did was for self-preservation, and to serve a Mistress whom he esteemed above all; for he believed that if he should permit him absolutely to conquer his Neighbour the Prince of Ulster, and thereby his Mistress would also be destroyed, it would not be long before he served him in the same manner, and so become absolute, not permitting them their ancient Principality, to which they had as much right as he to his absolute Sovereignty; and therefore the cause why he could not obey him at present, was, because he was resolved not to sit still, and first see his Neighbour's Principality taken from him, and then his own. This was the answer he sent; whereupon the King sent away to his Brother Mac Guire, Prince of Munster, and Father to Peter of Ireland, to raise what Forces he could, and come to his assistance, resolving to compel these two Princes to obey him. The Prince of Munster knowing of the War, and doubting of the events thereof, had already raised an Army to be in readiness, and therefore was quickly on his way to his Brother before Dundrom: but in the mean time the Giant Flusteron had committed many villainies; for he had surprized the ancient City of Tredagh in Lemster, and destroying the Inhabitants, very much ruined the City itself; and now hearing that the Prince of Munster was engaged against his Party, he marches into his Country, and spoils many places there, but more particularly the Town of Rabennec, which he set on fire: and now all the Kingdom of Ireland was engaged

engaged in a War which was very bloody, and all occasioned by the wilfulness of this Monster Flusteron, who now, supposing it necessary, makes all haste possible to the City of Dundrom, and getting into it, gives an account of his villainies. By the assistance which he brought, the City was so well relieved, that it was resolved they would no longer be inclosed within the walls, but go out and face, and fight their Enemies; knowing that if the Prince of Conaught did them no good, he would not harm them by assisting their Enemies; wherefore he, making all the Forces he could, marched out of the City, and being fleshed and encouraged by the success he had abroad, hoped to have the same here in the Field: and now, being resolved to fight, he questioned not but he should conquer; and therefore was so bold, as to send to the King to desist him, and to appoint a pitched Battle three days after, or sooner, if he would. The King, hearing of his presumption, called his Council, to advise what was to be done. And there the Knight of Cupid advised the King, to agree to the Battle to be fought three days after; and in the mean time to have a Truce, so that any single Persons might be free to visit their Enemies Camp, or City. All this was agreed on by all Parties: and the Knight of Cupid having leave of the King, and power to treat as he thought fit, was resolved to treat with all Parties, and see if by his prudent management he might put an end to this War without fighting: Whereupon, the chief occasion of this War being about the Marriage of the Princess Honora, he first went to her; and there he, examining her to every thing, found that she had an absolute antipathy against, and hatred to the Giant Flusteron, her intended Husband; and that rather than have him, she would destroy her self: and that, with all, she had as great a love for the Prince of Conaught, Owen Mac O Brian, whom she would with all her heart be married to. The Knight of Cupid having heard her mind, told her, that he would endeavour that she should have her desire; and therefore he went next to her Father, Owen O Coneele, Prince of Ulster, of whom he likewise desired to know, If he had any inclination to Peace? The old Man replied, he desired it above all things, being weary of the War long time since; and that he would have left it off, if the Giant Flusteron would have permitted him. The Knight of Cupid

Cupid hearing this, told him, The occasion of the War (as he understood, was, because he would compel his Daughter to marry with *Flusteron* against her own mind. Truly (replied the old Prince) I had no inclination that she should be married to *Owen Mac O Brian*, Prince of *Conaught*, because we have been ancient Enemies, and therefore was willing the other, my Friend and Subject, should have her; and that hath occasioned this unhappy War: but I now wish that it were otherwise, and did not care if she were married to the Prince of *Conaught*, or left to whom she herself should please, so I knew how to rid my self of *Flusteron*, who is grown now too potent for me, and over-rules all my Councils. As for that, (replied the Knight of Cupid) if you please to give your Daughter free leave to marry, I question not but I shall end the War without much more blood-shed, and that you shall be well enough rid of *Flusteron*. If it may be so, I should be content, replied the old Prince, and so they parted. And now the Knight of Cupid thought it expedient to go to the Giant *Flusteron*; where when he came, he told him that he had been the whole cause of the War; and that it would be well done of him to endeavour an end of it, by permitting the Lady *Honora* to choose whom she would for a Husband. Why, whom should she choose but me, (replied the Giant, fiercely) who have best deserved her? It may be so she will, (replied the Knight of Cupid) and that it will be the best way to give her her own freedom. I shall not trust the peevish Baggage, (said the Giant) but I will have her alive or dead; and as I have, so I will always hazard my life to gain her. I would that young Princely Puppet of *Conaught* would either fight with me for her, or produce any body else that would do it, and then it should be soon seen who best deserves her. I must confess (said the Knight of Cupid) that for force and valour you may exceed him, but there are other qualities that a Lady expects above that. What should any Ladies expect, (replied the Giant) but to marry where their Parents think fit, and to obey those Husbands who can gain most from others, and thereby enlarge their own Dominions? This is your opinion, replied the Knight of Cupid; but I still advise you to let the Lady have her own choosing. Yes, if I were sure she will choose me, replied he; or else, if she will renounce all her interest to her Father's Principality, and he give me present possession of it. That were unreasonable, replied the Knight, I rather believe that the Prince of *Conaught* will pro-

produce a Champion to fight in hers and his own behalf. I should be glad to see him, (replied the Giant) and that shall be the end of the War. I will go ask him, replied the Knight, and so departed. And now, at last, going to the Prince of *Conaught*, he told him, That he had been much too blame to ingage a Kingdom in a War, out of pretence of assisting of a Lady. Then I perceive, Sir, replied the Prince, you have never been in love; for if you had, you would not value ten Kingdoms to a Ladies enjoyment. Well, but how do you think to gain her? replied the Knight; for I know that you must never have her, unless the Giant *Flusteron* be first dead, and that, I think, is somewhat difficult to be done. Truly, replied the Prince, rather than lose her, I would venture my own Person against that Monster. But do you imagine, said the Knight, that you should vanquish him? Truly, I much doubt it, replied the Prince; but I then could but die, and then all my sorrow would at once be at an end. The Knight of Cupid hearing him thus resolute, and pitying all Parties, and being desirous to make an end of this War, for the doing whereof there was but one way, told the Prince, that he would undertake the Combat on his behalf; and therefore desired him to agree to what he should direct, and then he questioned not but he should suddenly put an end to the War, to his own content. The Prince knowing well enough the great valor of the Knight of Cupid, as having heard of his fight at his first arrival in that Kingdom, and withal having seen other testimonies of his valour during the War, and believing that if he undertook the Combat, he should be successful, he therefore kindly thanked him for his generous offer, telling him, That if he would, on his behalf, enter the Combat against his Enemy, and conquer him, as he did not question, he would freely give him his Principality, only contenting himself with the enjoyment of the fair Princess *Honora*. The Knight of Cupid hearing the generous offer of the Prince, replied, That he desired no other requital, but the honour of having done him that particular service, and, as he hoped, a general good to the whole Kingdom, that was now involved in a desperate War. The matter being now agreed upon as to the main, the Prince, at the directions of the Knight of Cupid, writ this Letter.

The Letter of Challenge from Owen Mac O Brian,
Prince of Conaught, to Flusteron of the Moun-
tains of Callingsford in Ulster.

IT is not unknown to the whole Kingdom that the chief cause of these Wars hath been your pretensions and mine to the Princess *Honora*; and you and I both know, that but one of us can lawfully enjoy her to Wife; and I have often heard, that you have several times sworn, that none should have her so long as you were alive; whereupon I have often thought, that there is but one way to conclude upon Peace, and that must be very difficult and dangerous for me; however, I being now resolved to spare all further effusion of blood, as much as in me lies, do make this further offer, That I will, within these two days, expose either my own Body, or some others as my Champion, to fight with you body to body; and which soever shall remain Victor, shall have the Lady *Honora* as the Prize of his Conquest. If therefore you accept of these terms, I expect that you give sufficient Pledges for performing of the Conditions, as I on my part am willing to do. These Propositions being so reasonable, I expect your present Answer:

CONAUGHT.

This Letter was conveyed to the Giant Flusteron, who was so joyful of the news, that he told the Messenger, that his Pledges should return with him; and thereupon he went immediately to the Prince of Ulster, and told him, that the War would now in few days be ended, shewing him the Letter, and telling him, that he was resolved on the Combat, and therefore desired him to compound his Pledges for the performance of the Articles. The old Prince gladly accepted of the terms, and soon sent the Pledges, and then the Prince of Conaught sent his; and every one of the Princes, being acquainted with the terms of the Combat, sent Pledges to each other.

These news were not carried so privately, but that the Squire Florello heard thereof, and understood that his Lord, the Knight of Cupid, was to perform the Combat with this monstrous Giant; wherefore, as being sufficiently concerned in the great hazard he would

would undergo, he used all the Arguments he could to dissuade him therefrom: But so great was the Knights love of Glory, that I believe he would have proceeded, although the Squire had truly discovered himself to be the Princess Florida; for notwithstanding the many tears which were shed to dissuade him, he persisted in his resolution. And now all the Princes were joyful that there was so great a probability of ending the Wars. But when the Giant Flusteron heard who was to be his opposer, and fight against him, he so much disdain'd him, that he now ascertained himself of the Victory.

The day and hour appointed for the Combat being come, both the Combatants met in a place in the view of all the Armies, and being both ready fitted, they ran at each other with such violence, that both their Lances flew into hundreds of pieces in the Air, and they encountering with their Bodies, made one another sensible of the great strength that was in them. What they wheeling about, drew their sharp cutting Swords, and laid on most courageously. The Knight of Cupid, who was no novice in this art of fighting, gave the Giant so mighty a blow on the Shield that he cut it in two, and descending, wounded the Giant in the thigh; but he soon paid him for that blow, by returning him another, and wounding him in the shoulder. And now our Knight was in short time at the same loss here, by the same defect of his Sword, which flew in pieces, as he had been at Windsor; and the Giant struck him so furiously, that his also brake near the hilt; wherefore they seeing the disadvantage they both had, they resolved on a second way of fighting, which was with closing, and trying the strength of each others arms, the Giant supposing he should be too hard for his Enemy in that manner of fighting; but the Knight of Cupid not only cleared himself from his Enemy, but drawing a Pontard stabbed him in several places. He seeing this, was as furious as a Lion, and running to a tree that grew thereby, and plucking it up with violence by the roots, began a new fight therewith. But our Knight had by that time possessed himself of a Battle-ax, which he had hanging at his Saddle-bow, and therewith closing with the Giant, still as he had made a blow, wounded him in several places, so that he grew faint and weary; and cursing, swearing, and blaspheming, he ran about the field like a mad-

Mad-man : the Knight of Cupid still following him, in short time seeing his advantage, with one blow cut off his Legs, when, he falling on the earth, he with another blow cut off his Head from his Shoulders.

CHAP. VIII.

How the Giant *Flusseron* being slain, all Parties consented to the Marriage of the Prince of *Conaught*, and the Princess *Honora*. How the Knight of *Cupid* acquainted the Prince of *Munster*, and his Princess, of the life of their Son *Peter*; and how he found out the Princess *Magdalena*, by means of his Squire *Florello*, who also discovered her self to be the Princess *Florida*. How the War between the Souldan of *Babylon*, and the Emperor of *Trebizond*, was ended by the death of the Emperor, and the marriage of the Prince *Baltazano* with the Princess *Florella*: and of the marriage of the Knight of *Hope*, and the Princess *Mataroza*. And lastly, of the arrival of the Knight of the *Keys* in *Ireland*, at the Wedding of the Prince of *Conaught*, and the Princess *Honora*, the Knight of *Cupid*, and Princess *Florida*.

The Giant being thus slain, there was no Person dissatisfied, only some few of his particular Friends; who although they were troubled at his loss, yet at a time of so general joy, they put on as pleasant countenances as the rest. The Princess *Honora*, in few days, by the importunity of the Prince of *Conaught*, and with the consent of the Prince her Father, agreed to be married to him. And now all the several Armies were disbanded; and all who had not a design to mirth and jollity, at the Wedding which was suddenly to be solemnized, went to their particular habitations. And the Prince of *Munster*, who had a very great love to the Prince of *Conaught*, desired all Parties to go to his Court at the City of *Wexford*, desiring that the Wedding might be kept there; he promising to be at the whole expence of it, as not having had any joy, or recreation, at his Court, since the news of the supposed loss of his Son *Peter* of *Ireland*, Knight of the *Keys*; and now all Parties, at this invitation, went thither, and nothing was

was thought on but Triumphs, and Tournaments, to be held for some days, when this Wedding should be solemnized.

The Knight of *Cupid* having happily accomplished the affairs of others, now thought of his own; and being in discourse with his beloved Squire *Florello*, who had intreated him to dispatch, and return to his Lady *Florida*, had promised so soon as this Wedding was over to return to her, and cease his fruitless search after the Princess *Magdalena*; for he had inquired of the Prince of *Munster*, but could hear no news of her. But he had not as yet understood the Prince, who supposed his Son *Peter* to be dead, by acquainting him with the news of his life, and good health; wherefore he was resolved now, at the time of this general joy, to tell him the whole story, and thereby cause a particular joy to himself, that intended it only for the Fathers sake; and knowing that the Mother of the Knight would be as much joyed as the Father, he therefore one day told the Prince, that he had some news to tell him, which he believed would please him; but withal, he desired that his Wife might be present at the relation. The Prince, at this, presently taking him by the hand, led him directly to the place where his Lady was, telling her, that this fortunate Knight of *Cupid* had somewhat to acquaint them withal, which, he questioned not, would be pleasing to them, since his coming into that Country had been so pleasant to all in general. Ah! replied the Princess with a sigh, I never expect any good news again, since I had that unpleasant sight of the red Purse with the Jewels, which I gave to my unfortunate Son *Peter*. Madam, replied the Knight of *Cupid*, before I shall relate to you what I intended, I desire of you to tell me what you mean by that red Purse with Jewels, for I know somewhat of that Adventure. I shall soon satisfy you in that unfortunate story, replied she, and so began. I had (said she) a Son, named *Peter*, who was a very hopeful Person, and being Knighted, desired, as other young men do, to travel abroad in the world to seek Adventures; his Father and I, both unwillingly permitted him; and at his departure I gave him a red Purse, and in it three Jewels, giving him a charge to be careful of them: but so it is, that he in some unfortunate Sea-voyage lost them, and, I believe, his life; for the very same Purse and Jewels came since to my hands in the belly of a Sturgeon; and from thence I conclude, that he at that time perished, for I could never

never hear any news of him since his departure. And at this she concluded her discourse, with a great sigh, followed by some tears. The Knight of Cupid much wondered at the strange adventure of the Wuse; but however he soon guessed how formerly it had happened, and soon gave them a particular account of their Son Peter. The old Prince, and Princess, hearing this joyful news, were so glad, that the good Lady fell into a swoon for joy; but, by the assistance of her Damselfs, soon recovered, and would have embraced and kissed the Knight of Cupid for his good news: but he desired her to be patient, and he would relate the whole of her Sons Adventures to her; and thereupon he acquainted them of his arrival in Sardinia; his love to the Princess Magdalena; her leaving her Parents to travel with him; their shipwreck on the Isle of Sicilia; the loss of the Purse and Jewels, which occasioned the loss of the Princess; and his great pains in searching for her; in which search, said the Knight of Cupid, I am now engaged.

And thus did the Knight of Cupid finish his discourse, not only to the great joy and satisfaction of the Parents of the worthy Knight Peter, but also all the Family, all the City, all the Province, nay, all the Kingdom rejoicing thereat: and now was the Knight of Cupid much more honoured by all than he had been; more especially by the Prince of Munster, who entertained him in his own Palace, and was very desirous to know his Quality, which our Knight as yet concealed, telling him however, that he should know it before he parted.

And now the Court being filled with this good news, it was not long before it came to the ears of Magdalena, who was much joyed thereat, and thought to discover her self; but she was prevented by the Squire Florello, who, seeing Magdalena, knew her, and being admitted to her presence, thus began: I am very much mistaken if I have not formerly been very well acquainted with you; and that, if you look earnestly on me, as I have done on you, you may know me through the disguise I am now in, as well as I do you though disguised, as I am sure; you are *Magdalena*. Knowing that the Speaker was in the right, as to her disguise, she looked earnestly; but all that she could answer, was, That indeed the features of the face were known to her, but in that habit she could discover no further; but, said she, if you do know me, as you say, I pray tell me of that

know,

knowledge, and then I shall the better judge who you are also. I know, replied Florida, that you are the Princess *Magdalena* of *Sardinia*; and if you look well on me, you may also know me to be your Cousin *Florida*, Princess of *Sicilia*. At these words they joined arms and bodies, and embraced one another; and having spent some time in that pleasing exercise, the Princess *Magdalena* said, Dear Cousin, since you know me, you also know the reason of my present disguise; wherefore, I pray, tell me the reason of yours. The very same reason, replied Florida; Love is the occasion: and now you are found, my Adventures are at an end. Whereupon she acquainted her with all her particular Adventures; as, her Love to the Knight of Cupid, and her strange attending him thus disguised. And now these two Ladies became pleasant, and consulted what was necessary to be done to compleat their happiness; and therefore it was concluded, that the Princess *Florida* should, with the first convenience, discover all to the Knight of Cupid; and after that several discourses had passed between them, how they should manage their affairs, they separated. Florida soon found out the Knight of Cupid, who could not well endure her out of his company; and they coming into a convenient place, she thus began, My Lord, I hope you intend in few days to leave this place, and return to my Lady. Yes, replied he; but I would gladly find the Princess *Magdalena*, and then I would make all possible haste to see my Lady. And will you, replied she, be married to her so soon as you see her? Assure your self, replied the Knight, that the first moment I shall see her, I will be married to her, if she desires it; and I will never have any other desires but what shall please her. Well then, replied Florida, I shall tell you some news that will please you; and thus it is, I have heard of the Princess *Magdalena*, and to morrow I will acquaint you further of her. The Knight of Cupid hearing this, desired presently to be further satisfied; but Florello asked leave till the next morning to perform his promise: and that being come, they both arose; and Florello, who must now lose that name, left the Palace, and went to the Monastery; where, according to appointment, a very fair Cow, and other necessaries, according to the quality of a Princess, was provided, and Florida dressed therein: by such time as this was done, the Knight of Cupid was come, and admitted to the presence of the Princess; where

N

where

where he thus began: Madam, I was informed that you could give me some account of a strayed Princess, named Magdalena. Truly, replied she, I know somewhat of her: but there is a Lady in this place, that can give you certain intelligence of her. I beg the favour then, said the Knight, to see and speak with this Lady. What you may, said Magdalena; and thereupon coming into the Room where the Lady was dressed, took her by the hand, and, being beyled, led her out. She came near the Knight of Cupid; and stood some time beyled; and he earnestly expecting to see and speak to her: but at length she turned up her beyl, and discovered her self to be the true Princess Florida. Our Knight now looking earnestly on her, started back, as amazed, and cried out, What do mine eyes behold! I come to inquire after anothers Lady, and find my own, or one so like her, that they may be well of near kin to one another. Speak, Madam, I beseech you, said he; and satisfy my troubled spirit. You are not at all mistaken, replied the Princess; and seeing you made such farriance, I have left my Country to find you. He hearing her speak, and that in her perfect tone, ran and saluted her; and inquired how she got thither: and so many questions he asked together, that it was impossible to answer him. He told her, that a Squire whom she sent to serve him, had told him, that at that place he should hear of the Princess Magdalena; but, said he, though I should have been very joyful to have found that Lady, yet I am much more glad to see you. That Squire of yours, replied Florida, can be as good as his word. When I will soon find him, replied the Knight. But without my help you cannot, answered Florida; and with my help you may find not only him, but the Princess Magdalena also. Oh, dear Madam, said the Knight, make me so happy as to unfold these riddles. Yes, replied she; but with that, you will first, before this holy Woman here, said she, promise to perform your promise of marriage to me. With all my heart, replied the Knight; and I am very joyful that you should be promised that which will make up all my happiness: and thereupon he promised to be married to her the next day, or so soon as she pleased. He having finished his promise, she said, And now I will be as good as my word; and taking the Princess by the hand, she presented her unto him, saying, Here, behold the end of your travels, for this is the Princess Magdalena.

Magdalena. The Knight was now as much astonished at the discovery of the Princess Magdalena, as he had been at her own discovery; and kissing her hand, told her, that he now accounted himself happy indeed; in that he had not only recovered his own Lady, but performed his promise to his friend Peter: But, said he, I am beholden to my Squire Florello for all this happiness; and therefore although I am much delighted with your company, yet I shall be glad to have his, who only can resolve me of all things. I tell you, replied Florida, that you cannot without me speak with him. You tell me wonders, replied the Knight; and I shall after this rate believe, that all I have seen this day is but a dream, and that you are but my imaginary Lady. Nay, replied she, if this surprises you, I am sure that what I shall next tell you will do much more. I beseech you, Madam, said he, let me hear it, that all my wonders may be over wonders, I may well call them, and this the day of wonders to me. You desire, replied she, to see Florello, your Squire; look on me, do you see me? Yes, said he. And do you know me? Yes, said he, for my Princess Florida. And do you know Florello when you see him? said she. I think I do, said he; it is not long since I saw him. What is true, replied she; but withal I tell you, you do not know him, nor never shall again. Why? was he a Spirit? replied the Knight; if he were, he was a blessed one to me. No, said she, no more a Spirit than I am; and lest you should suppose me to be one, I give you my hand to feel. I am sure, said he, that this is flesh and blood. And so was Florello, said she; but now no more Florello, but Florida: I was he. How! Madam, said the Knight, this cannot be possible; I am amazed indeed, and confounded, and shall distrust the rest, and all to be a dream, or else conjuration. I will assure you, Sir, said Magdalena, all that hath been hitherto told you, is true; and to convince you of the truth of this last particular, which you so much doubt, behold the habit this Lady wore this morning when she came in hither; and therewith produced the clothes of Florello. Nay, then, said the Knight, I do believe all the rest; and then running to the Princess Florida, and strictly embracing her, he cried out, Oh my dear Princess, my beloved Florello, what shall I call you that have so often deceived me when I lay in bed with you, and wished for you

who was so near me, and you unkind refused to acquaint me. Well, replied the Princess blushing, let all that be forgotten; and now, I hope, you will conclude all true, and are confirmed in my love to you. A dull Fool I was, replied the Knight, that I could not all this while make this pleasant discovery: I now remember the tenderness you had for me when I fought with the Giant at Windsor; the pity you had for me, when by my rashness I had like to have thrown away my life at my first arrival in this Kingdom; and the arguments you used to dissuade me from fighting with the late Giant Flusteron here. Any of these considerations had been enough to have opened mine eyes, and discovered you: but I by that now know your great love, which, Madam, said he, I shall endeavor through the whole course of my life to retaliate, in being wholly at your dispose; and thereupon he again kissed and embraced her.

And now some time having been spent in this discovery, they all three sat down to consult what was necessary to be done: and after various propositions, it was concluded, that the Princess Magdalena should discover her self to the Prince and Princess of Munster, to the end their Son Peter hearing of it, might make the more haste home. And therefore the Knight of Cupid went that day to the Prince, and told him, that he had more good news to acquaint him withal; and his Lady being in company, he told them, that as he had brought them news of their Son, so he could quickly bring him home, by putting that Lady, the Princess Magdalena, whom he was in search of, into their custody. They both told him, that if he could do that, it would be an infallible way, and therefore he told them the whole story; that the Principal of Saint Peter's Monastery, was the Princess Magdalena; and that he was assured of this by a Lady, and Princess of his, named Florida, who was lately come into her Company. So joyed were the old Prince and Princess at this news, that they went presently to the Monastery; and after many difficulties both the fair Magdalena, they brought her, and the Princess Florida, to Court: and the same of this discovery quickly ran through all the Court and City, so that the Princess Honora came to visit them; and so did all the Princes and Princesses, Lords and Ladies of the Court; who all joyed, and were at the

the great Beauty of these two excellent Princesses, Magdalena and Florida. And the Story of the Adventures of these two Ladies was so rare and excellent, that it is remembered, and celebrated throughout Ireland to this day.

And now nothing but Triumphs were thought of against the Wedding of the Prince of Conaught, and the Princess Honora: and the Knight of Cupid intended also on that day to be solemnly married to the Princess Florida. Nothing was wanting to complete the happiness of all this Court, but the presence of the valiant Knight Peter, whom we having left in the Army, before the City of Pharez, we will go thither to him.

Many assaults did the Prince of Numidia give to the City of Pharez with different fortune, for he was not always Conqueror. And the Knight of the Panchar, in hopes to gain the affection of the Princess Floreza, behaved himself very valiantly; but he finding that his valour did not produce the desired effects, applied himself to treacherous courses, and so managed his design, that he gained the absolute command, not only of the whole City and Army, but also of the Princess Floreza. The Prince of Numidia understanding of these affairs, leaving the command of the Army to the Knight of Hope, disguised himself; and being accompanied with Peter of Ireland, and several valiant Knights, they were, as Friends to the Knight of the Panchar, admitted into the City; but although they really were Friends to the Princess Floreza, yet they approved themselves to be Enemies to him, and his designs; for the Prince of Numidia in short time so gained upon the affections of the Citizens, that the Princess Floreza was released, and the Knight of the Panchar first put into safe custody, and in short time after executed as a Traytor. And then the Princess Floreza, understanding that it was the Prince of Numidia to whom she was obliged for her deliverance, she not only acknowledged the kindness, but they agreed upon a truce for the present. and soon after, news being brought from Babylon of the death of the Emperor her Brother, a firm Peace was agreed upon, which was fully confirmed by the marriage of these two worthy Princes, Baltazaro Prince of Numidia, and Floreza now Empress of Trebizond. And now this long lasting War being finished, to the content of all Parties, they all designed and took their journey

to Babylon; where when they were arrived, they were highly welcomed, and entertained by the Souldan, and Don Bellianis, and his incomparable Princess Florisbella: and to compleat the joys of all the Court, the Knight of Hope was recompensed for his services by his marriage with the Princess Maruzza. These things being thus happily dispatched at Trebizond and Babylon, the valliant Knight Peter of Ireland, thought it high time to leave that part of the World, and trabel homewards, and in his way to search for his beloved Princess Magdalena; but although he had great trouble in the inquiry, yet it was to no purpose; till in the end he arrived in his own Country, and there he soon heard of a great triumphant Feast, that was to be in few days after held at the Marriage of Owen Mac O Brian, Prince of Conaught, and the Princess Honora, and his beloved Friend Don Clarineo and Floreza; he was surprized at the recital of his Friend Claringo's being there, but much more when he understood the joyful news of his Princess Magdalena; but however he so well contained his joy, that he won the honour of the day at the solemn Feasting held in honour of these Nuptials; and at night he discovered himself to his Father, Mother, and Lady, and their Friends, to the great joy of all, and compleated the joy of the Irish Court, by the solemnization of his Wedding to the Princess Magdalena, which was in few days after performed. And now having joyned these great Personages together to their great joy and contentment, I shall conclude this History.

FINIS.

